

# **CNC Controller Programming**

## **Manual**

**V2.42**

# Introduction

---

---

The manual may help you to quickly get familiar with the system, providing detailed information about commissioning, programming or application methods.

In this manual we have tried as much as possible to describe all the various matters concerning of the system. However, we cannot describe all the matters which must not be done, or which cannot be done, because there are so many possibilities. Therefore, matters which are not especially described as possible in this manual should be regarded as "impossible" or "not allowed".

Please favor me your instruction for shortages and inadequacies of the manual.



## Note

- ⚠ As to notes such as "Limitations" and "Usable functions", the specification provided by the machine tool manufacturer is superior to the manual. Please conduct dryrun before actual machining and confirm machining program, tool compensation volume and workpiece offset, and so on.
- ⚠ Please explain matters which are not described in the manual as "Infeasible".
- ⚠ The manual is prepared on the condition that all functions are configured. Please make a confirmation according to the specification provided by the machine tool manufacturer in use.
- ⚠ For relevant instructions for machine tools, please refer to the specification provided by the machine tool manufacturer.
- ⚠ Usable screens and functions differ with different NC systems (or versions). Please be sure to confirm specifications before use.

# ***Content***

***Introduction*** \_\_\_\_\_ ***i***

***Content*** \_\_\_\_\_ ***ii***

<b>1</b>	<b>Overview</b>	<b>7</b>
1.1	Coordinate Axis	7
1.1.1	Machine Coordinate Axis	7
1.1.2	CNC Control Axis	7
1.2	Reference Point, Machine Origin, and Machine Coordinate System	9
1.3	Workpiece Origin and Workpiece Coordinate System	10
1.4	Coordinate System and Travel	10
1.5	Positional Relationship between Coordinate Systems	10
1.6	General Programming Methods and Steps	11
<b>2</b>	<b>Program Format and Structure</b>	<b>12</b>
2.1	Program Format	12
2.1.1	Address and Command Word	12
2.1.2	Block and Block Number	15
2.1.3	General Structure of Program	16
2.1.4	File Attributes of Program	16
2.1.5	Program and Program Name	17
2.1.6	Optional Block Skip	18
2.2	Main Program and Subprogram	18
2.3	Cautions before Machining	20
<b>3</b>	<b>Preparatory Function (G Code)</b>	<b>21</b>
3.1	G Code Modal and Grouping	21
3.2	List of G codes (M)	21
<b>4</b>	<b>Auxiliary Function</b>	<b>25</b>
4.1	M Command	25
4.1.1	Default Auxiliary Function of CNC	27
4.1.2	Auxiliary Function Set by PLC	30
4.2	Table of M Command Function and Regular Status	31
<b>5</b>	<b>Spindle Function</b>	<b>34</b>
5.1	Spindle Speed Setting	34
5.2	Constant Linear Speed Cutting Control (G96/G97) (T)	35
5.3	Spindle Clamping Speed	37
5.4	C/S-Axis Switching (CTOS/STOC)	38
5.5	Spindle Orientation	39
5.6	Spindle Synchronization Control (G146/G147)	40

<b>6 Tool Function</b>	<b>46</b>
6.1 T Command in Milling System	46
<b>7 Feed Function</b>	<b>49</b>
7.1 Overview	49
7.2 Feedrate Setting	50
7.2.1 Rapid Traverse Speed	51
7.2.2 Cutting Feedrate	52
7.2.3 2nd Feedrate	55
7.3 Feed Control Mode	55
7.4 Feedrate Control	58
7.5 Adaptive Feed Control	61
<b>8 Position Command Function</b>	<b>63</b>
8.1 Command and Incremental Command Mode I (G90/G91)	63
8.2 Absolute Command and Incremental Command Mode II (X, Z/U, W) (T)	65
8.3 Inch/Metric (G20/G21)	67
<b>9 Delay Function</b>	<b>69</b>
9.1 Delay Function	69
<b>10 Coordinate System</b>	<b>71</b>
10.1 Overview	71
10.2 Machine Coordinate System	72
10.3 Workpiece Coordinate System	73
10.3.1 Workpiece Coordinate System Setting (G92)	73
10.3.2 Workpiece Coordinate System Selection G54—G59 (G54.X)	75
10.3.3 Extended Workpiece Coordinate System Selection (G54.x)	76
10.3.4 Workpiece Coordinate System Modification (G10)	77
10.4 Local Coordinate System Setting (G52)	78
10.5 Coordinate Plane Selection (G17, G18, G19)	81
10.6 Machine Origin and 2nd, 3rd, 4th, and 5th Reference Points	82
10.7 Reference Point Return (G28/G29)	83
10.8 2 <sup>nd</sup> , 3 <sup>rd</sup> , 4 <sup>th</sup> , 5 <sup>th</sup> Reference Point Return (G30)	86
<b>11 Interpolation Function</b>	<b>89</b>
11.1 Positioning (G00)	89
11.2 Unidirectional Positioning (G60)	92
11.3 Linear Interpolation (G01)	94
11.4 Circular Interpolation (G02/G03)	97
11.5 3D Circular Interpolation (G02.4/G03.4)	102
11.6 Helical Interpolation (G02/G03)	103
11.8 Imaginary Axis Specifying and Sine Interpolation (G07)	106
11.9 Polar Interpolation (G12/G13)	108
11.10 Cylindrical interpolation (G07.1)	113
11.11 Polar Coordinate Command (G15/G16)	116

<b>12</b>	<b>Tool Compensation Function</b>	<b>123</b>
12.1	Milling Tool Length Compensation (G43/G44/G49) (M)	123
12.2	Milling Tool Radius Compensation (G40/G41/G42) (M)	132
12.3	Detailed Explanation of Tool Radius Compensation	136
12.3.1	Tool Radius Compensation Action	136
12.3.2	Tool Radius Compensation Action Diagram	138
12.3.3	Compensation Direction Change During Tool Radius Compensation	144
12.3.4	When Tool Radius Compensation is not Executed	146
12.3.5	There is a Block without Movement in Tool Radius Compensation	148
12.3.6	Action Insertion in Tool Radius Compensation	150
12.3.7	Change of Compensation Value in Tool Radius Compensation	151
12.3.8	Interference Check	152
<b>13</b>	<b>Programmable Data Input (G10/G11)</b>	<b>155</b>
13.1	Programmable Data Input Command (G10/G11)	155
13.2	Workpiece Coordinate System Origin Input	155
13.3	Extended Workpiece Coordinate System Origin Data Input	156
13.4	System Parameter Data Output	157
13.5	Milling Tool Length Compensation Data Input	158
13.6	Milling Tool Radius Compensation Data Input	159
13.7	Modify Single Cutting Time	160
13.8	Coordinate Transformation	161
13.9	Feature Coordinate System Capture	163
13.10	Capture Direction Vector in Feature Coordinate System	164
13.11	Data Printout (WRITE)	165
<b>14</b>	<b>Canned Cycle for Milling System (M)</b>	<b>168</b>
14.1	Standard Canned Cycle for Milling System	168
14.2	High-speed Deep-hole Drilling Cycle (G73)	173
14.3	Reverse Tapping Cycle (G74)	177
14.3.1	Reverse Tapping Cycle	177
14.3.2	Reverse Peck Tapping Cycle	178
14.4	Fine Boring (G76)	183
14.5	Drilling Cycle (Center Drills) (G81)	187
14.6	Drilling Cycle with Pause (G82)	190
14.7	Deep Hole Drilling Cycle (G83)	192
14.8	Tapping Cycle (G84)	195
14.8.1	Tapping Cycle (G84)	196
14.8.2	Peck Tapping Cycle (G84)	197
14.9	Boring Cycle (G85)	200
14.10	Boring Cycle (G86)	203
14.11	Reverse Boring Cycle (G87)	206
14.12	Boring Cycle (Hand) (G88)	209
14.13	Boring Cycle (G89)	212
14.14	Drilling Canned Cycle Cancel (G80)	215

<b>15</b>	<b>5-Axis Function</b>	<b>216</b>
15.1	Overview	216
15.2	Tool Axis Direction (G43.4 to G43.5)	217
15.2.1	Position Specifying Mode G43.4	217
15.2.2	Vector specifying mode G43.5	219
15.3	Length Compensation on tool axis (G43.4, G43.5/G49)	220
15.4	5-Axis Bevel Machining	224
15.4.1	3-point Feature Coordinate System Setting (G68.1)	225
15.4.2	Establish feature coordinate system via Euler angle	230
15.4.3	Establish feature coordinate system with space angle (G68.3)	233
15.4.4	Establish feature coordinate system with current attitude (G68.4)	236
15.4.5	Tool axis direction control (G53.1/G53.2)	238
15.4.6	5-axis Normal Retract (G53.3/53.4)	240
15.5	5-axis 3D Radius Compensation (G41.4/G42.4)	242
15.6	5-axis Constant Feed (G94.6)	246
15.7	Tangential Following (G156/G157)	248
15.8	RTCP Parameter Switching (G145)	250
15.9	5-axis Machine Coordinate System Programming	251
<b>16</b>	<b>Extended Canned Cycle (M)</b>	<b>253</b>
16.1	Extended Canned Cycle (M)	253
16.2	Text Engraving Canned Cycle (G1025)	253
16.3	Drilling Cycle	258
16.3.1	Circumferential Hole Drilling Cycle (G70)	258
16.3.2	Holes on Arc (G71)	262
16.3.3	Holes along an Angle (G78)	265
16.3.4	Chess Type (G79)	268
16.4	Milling Cycle	272
16.4.1	SLOTS on a Circle (Type 1) (G181)	272
16.4.2	SLOTS on a Circle (Type 2) (G182)	275
16.4.3	Circumferential Slot Milling Cycle (G183)	279
16.4.4	Rectangular Pocket Milling Cycle (G184)	283
16.4.5	Circular Pocket Milling Cycle (G185)	287
16.4.6	End Face Milling Cycle (G186)	291
16.4.7	Rectangular Boss Milling Cycle (G188)	295
16.4.8	Circular Boss Milling Cycle (G189)	299
16.4.9	Milling Cycle Alarm Diagnosis	303
<b>17</b>	<b>Programming Simplifying Function (M)</b>	<b>308</b>
17.1	Mirroring Function (G24, G25)	308
17.2	Scaling Function (G50, G51)	313
17.3	Rotation Transformation (G68, G69)	317
<b>18</b>	<b>User Macro and Subprogram Call</b>	<b>320</b>
18.1	User Macro Program	320

18.1.1 Variable	320
18.1.2 Operation Command	329
18.1.3 Macro Statement	331
18.2 Macro Program Call	335
18.2.1 Argument Specification Rules	335
18.2.2 Non-modal Call (G65)	336
19.2.3 Call Macro Program with G Code	337
18.2.4 Call Macro Program with M Command	338
18.2.5 Classification of Subprogram	340
18.2.6 Application Case for Macro Program	342
18.3 Manual Subprogram Call	344
<b>19 High-speed High-Precision Function</b>	<b>346</b>
19.1 High Speed High Precision Parameter Setting	346

# 1 Overview

## 1.1 Coordinate Axis

### 1.1.1 Machine Coordinate Axis



#### Function and Purpose

In order to simplify programming and ensure the versatility of the program, a unified standard has been formulated for the naming of coordinate axes and directions of CNC machine tools. The fixed linear feed coordinate axes are represented by X, Y, Z which are referred to as the basic coordinate axes; the coordinate axes rotating around the X, Y, and Z axes are represented by A, B, and C which are referred to as the rotary coordinate axes.

#### 1) Basic coordinate axes X, Y, Z

The direction of the machine tool axis depends on the type of machine tool and the layout of each component. The relationship between the X, Y, and Z coordinate axes is determined by the right-hand rule, as shown in Figure 1-1. In this figure, the thumb points in the positive direction of X axis, the index finger points in the positive direction of Y axis, and the middle finger points in the positive direction of Z axis.

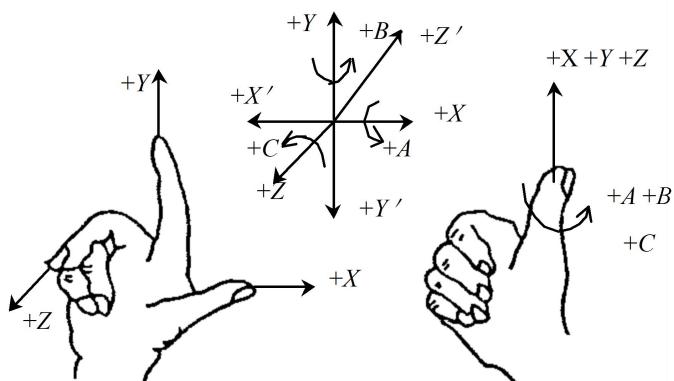


Figure 1-1 Machine coordinate axis

#### 2) Rotary axis

The circular feed coordinate axes that rotate around the X, Y, and Z axes are represented by A, B, and C respectively. According to the right-hand screw rule as shown in Figure 1-1, the thumb points to +X, +Y, +Z directions, and the index finger and middle finger point to +A, +B, +C directions of circular feed motion.

### 1.1.2 CNC Control Axis



#### Function and Purpose

The standard CNC system has 3 axes; it can control up to 5 axes by adding auxiliary axes. When specifying each machining axis and direction, use the preset coordinate letter and the set direction.

Basic controlled axes	3 axes
Extended controlled axes (total)	5 axes at maximum (including CS axis)
Basic simultaneously-controlled axes	3 axes
Extended simultaneously-controlled axes	5 axes at maximum

Axis name: 3 standard basic axes are X, Y, Z, and the additional axes can be named A, B, C, U, V, W.

**Note:** The additional axis names U, V, W can be set by the parameters, and are not related to the UVW instruction words during lathe incremental programming. For details, see the instructions on lathe incremental programming.

## 1.2 Reference Point, Machine Origin, and Machine Coordinate System



### Function and Purpose

**Reference point:** The machine reference point is a fixed mechanical point on the machine tool (For some machine tools it is determined by the travel switch and dog, and for some machine tools it is directly determined by the grating ruler zero, etc.)

**Machine origin:** The machine zero is a fixed point on the machine tool, and the CNC device uses it as a reference for position control. The machine zero is determined by the reference point and the system parameter "coordinate value of reference point in machine coordinate system".

**Machine coordinate system:** The machine coordinate system is the inherent coordinate system of the machine tool. It takes the machine zero as the origin, and each coordinate axis is parallel to the corresponding machine axis. The origin of the machine coordinate system is also called the machine origin or machine zero. In the machine coordinate system, the workpiece is always considered to be stationary, while the tool is considered to be moving.

Figure 1-2 shows a single-column vertical milling machine (or machining center). Since it is a machine tool with a rotary spindle, first user determines the Z-axis direction: the spindle axis direction is the Z-axis direction, and the direction the tool moves away from the workpiece is the Z-axis positive direction; then user determines the X-axis direction: while the operator is facing the column and the worktable is moving, relative to the workpiece the direction of the tool moving to the right is the X-axis positive direction; at last user determines the direction of the Y axis: according to the right-hand Cartesian rule, the positive direction of Y-axis is the direction tool moves to the left.

Figure 1-2 Horizontal lathe with front tool post

Taking the machine zero point as the origin, the coordinate system established with each axis of the machine tool is the machine coordinate system of the machine tool.

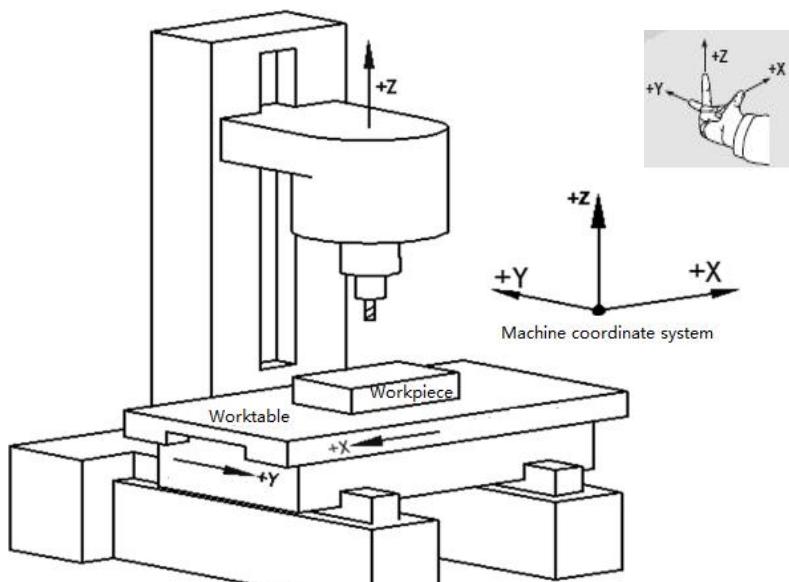


Figure 1-2 Vertical milling machine with single column

### 1.3 Workpiece Origin and Workpiece Coordinate System



#### Function and Purpose

The workpiece coordinate system is used by the programmer during programming. The programmer selects a known point on the workpiece as the origin (also referred to as the program origin), and establishes a coordinate system parallel to each axis of the machine tool, which is called the workpiece coordinate system. Once the workpiece coordinate system is established, it will remain valid until it is replaced by a new workpiece coordinate system.

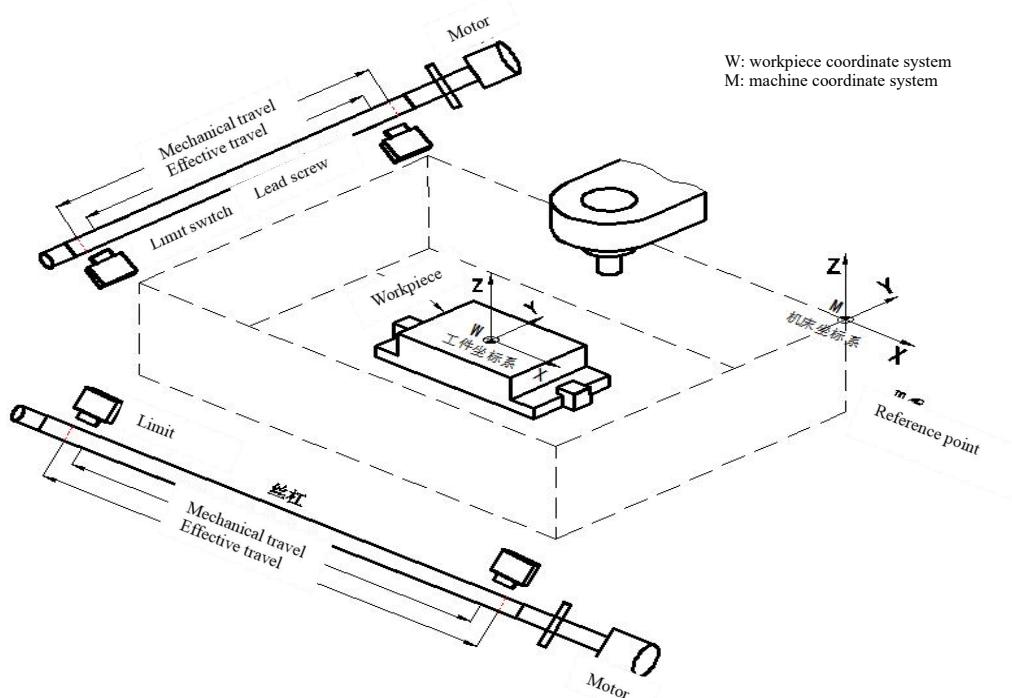
The workpiece coordinate system is determined by the programmer, and generally a position that is convenient for processing and calculation is selected.

### 1.4 Coordinate System and Travel



#### Function and Purpose

The travel of the machine tool coordinate system is divided into effective travel and mechanical travel. The effective travel is the range of tool movement which is set by CNC parameters; the mechanical travel is determined by the travel switch, and its value is determined by the manufacturer. The relationship between the machine zero (M), machine reference point (m), workpiece coordinate origin (W), effective travel and mechanical travel of the machine coordinate system is shown in the figure below.

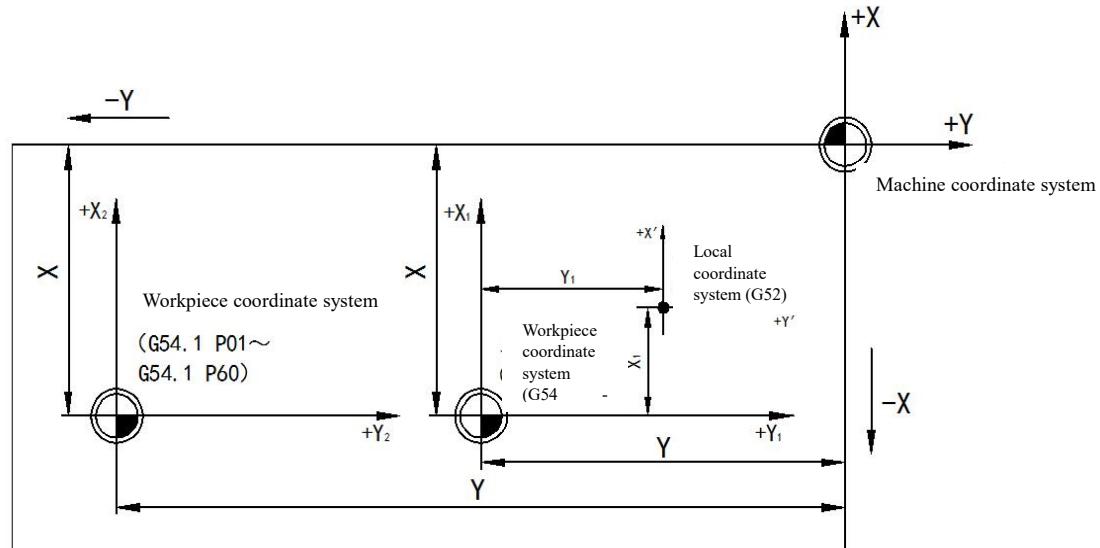


### 1.5 Positional Relationship between Coordinate Systems



#### Function and Purpose

The coordinate system set with the machine zero as the origin is referred to as the machine coordinate system. The machine tool manufacturer sets the machine zero for each machine tool. The workpiece coordinate system is the coordinate system used in workpiece processing. Generally, their position setting relationship is shown in the figure below.



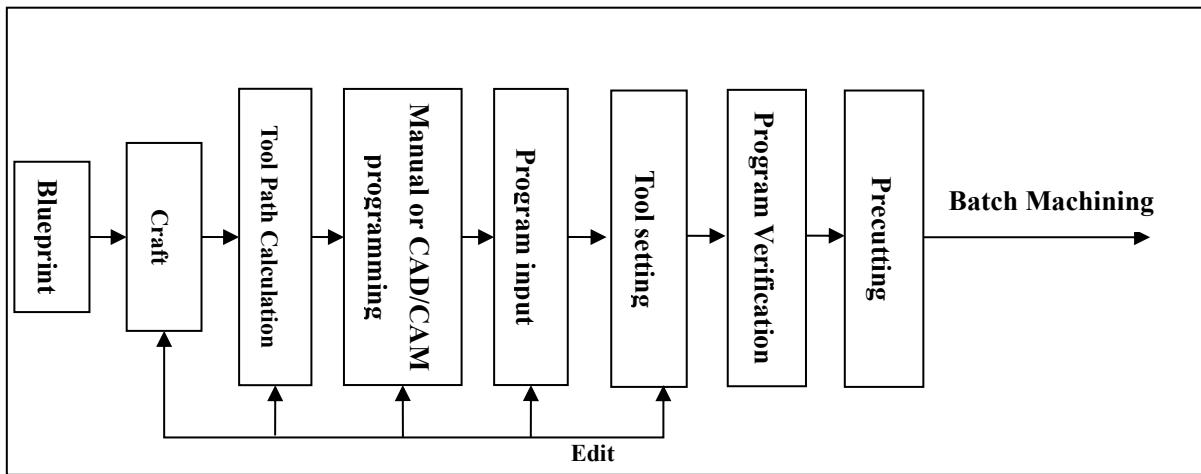
## 1.6 General Programming Methods and Steps



### Function and Purpose

Programming means that the programmer determines the processing technology of the parts based on the drawing. The processing process, process parameters, processing path and auxiliary actions required in processing such as tool change, cooling, clamping, etc. are documented as the program list in accordance with the processing sequence and the command code and program format specified by the CNC machine tool used. Then all the contents in the program list are input into the CNC controller, so that the CNC machine tool can process based on the contents.

The general methods and steps for programming and processing are as follows:



## 2 Program Format and Structure

### 2.1 Program Format



#### Function and Purpose

When providing information to a controller, the format specified is referred to as the program format. The format used by the controller is referred to as the word address format.

A program is a collection of "block" units, and a "block" is used to specify a machine action (sequence). These commands (blocks) are worked out in the order of actual tool movement. A program block is a collection of "word" units, and a "word" is used to specify a command of an operation. A word is a collection of characters (English letters, numbers, symbols), and the characters are arranged in a certain order.

#### 2.1.1 Address and Command Word



#### Function and Purpose

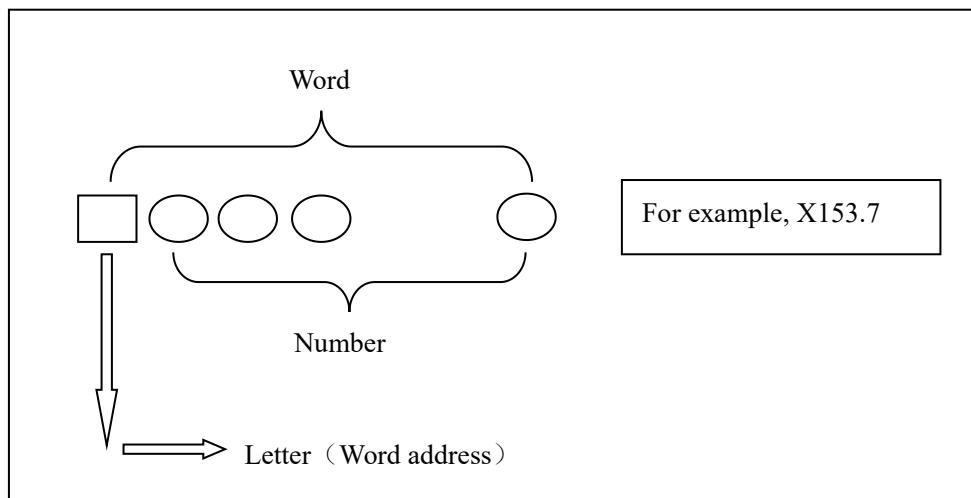
The command information used by this controller consists of letters (A, B, C...Z), and numbers (0, 1, 2...9), and symbols (+, -, /...). These letters, numbers, and symbols are collectively referred to as characters. What is expressed in this form is referred to as a code. This controller uses ISO code which is written in notepad format.



#### Description

The initial letter of a word is referred to as the address, which defines the meaning of the following numerical information. A command word is composed of address characters (command characters) and numeric data with signs (such as the word with a defined dimension) or without signs (such as the preparatory function word G code). In this controller, the word is composed of a letter (word address) and several numbers following it. (User can also add

symbols such as "-" at the beginning of the number).



Structure of word

Different command characters and the subsequent numbers in the block determine the meaning of each command word. The main command characters contained in the CNC program block are shown in Table 2.1.

Table 2.1 List of command characters

Function	Address	Meaning
Parts program No.	Letter O	Program No.: O1-4294967295
Block No.	N	Block No.: N0-4294967295
Preparatory function	G	Command action mode (straight line, circular arc, etc.): G00 to G200
Dimension word	X, Y, Z	Traverse command of linear axis: ±21474
	A, B, C	Traverse command of rotary axis: ±21474
	U, V, W	Incremental programming command of lathe: ±21474
	R	Circular radius of canned cycle
	I, J, K	Coordinates of circle center relative to the starting point for canned cycle
Feedrate	F	Feedrate: F0 to 50000
Spindle function	S	Spindle speed: S0 to 100000
Tool function	T	Tool number: T0 to 99
Auxiliary function	M	ON/OFF control on the machine side: 0 to 99
	A	Worktable indexing
Compensation No.	H, D	Tool compensation number: 00 to 99
Dwell	P, X	The dwell time: millisecond, second
Program No.	P	Sub-program number: 1 to 4294967295
Repeat times	L	The number of repetitions of subprogram, the number

		of repetitions of canned cycle
Parameter	P, Q, R	Canned cycle parameter

## 2.1.2 Block and Block Number



### Function and Purpose

The composition of the block: A program block is composed of more than one word. A group of single-step sequential commands or a line of several functional commands is referred to as a program block.

Block number: the number used to distinguish each block, which is composed of address N and the following 5 digits (1 to 99999). The block number is placed at the beginning of the block, and can be specified in any order. Any block number can be skipped except for the block number specified by the code command with special meaning. The block number can be specified for all blocks, and also can be specified only for the blocks required by the program. However, for convenience, in general the block number is specified in the order of processing steps.

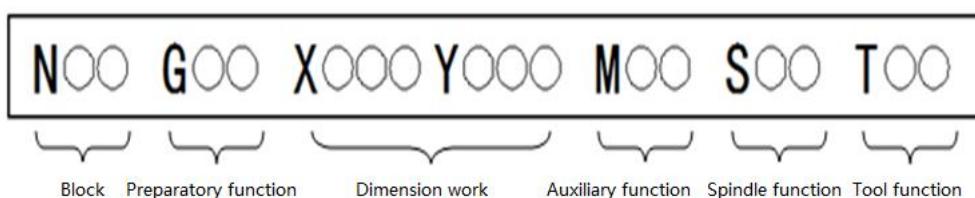


### Descriptions

A program block defines a command line to be executed by the CNC controller. The format of the block defines the syntax of the functional words in each block.

The structures of block number and block are as follows:

1 block (or command line)



E.g. N100 G01 X24.7 Y59.31 M03 S1000 T0101; the part underlined is the block number

A block starts with the sequence number that identifies the block (the block number can also be absent), and ends with the block end code. In this manual, a newline indicates the end of the block. Like a notepad, a newline character indicates the end of the line. The preliminary function determines the content of the dimension character. In this manual, the dimension words are represented by IP.

### 2.1.3 General Structure of Program



#### Function and Purpose

A program of parts is executed in the order of the block line, not in the order of the block number, but it is recommended to write the block number in ascending order when writing the program.



#### Description

Program start: The first cell of the first line cannot be numbers or symbols other than "%".

Program end: the program end code is usually specified at the end of the program, and one of the following codes is to indicate the program end code.

Code	Meaning
M02	End of main program
M30	
M99	End of subprogram

Comment symbol: the content bracketed () or after the semicolon ";" is the comment text.

Single line command: When writing the processing G code program, some commands must be written in a single line. Such as M30, M02, M99, M6T, CTOS, STOC, G16, G15, G05.1, G04.

### 2.1.4 File Attributes of Program



#### Function and Purpose

User can set the access attribute for the file program to be writable or readable.



#### Description

Disable editing: The current loader can be set to "read-only" through interface operations. At this time, the file cannot be rewritten until it is set to "writeable" through interface operations.

In addition, user can also control the access properties of the program through the key switch of the project panel, but this key switch is effective on all programs in the program manager, that is, when the switch is turned off, all programs will become read-only until the switch is turned on.

## 2.1.5 Program and Program Name



### Function and Purpose

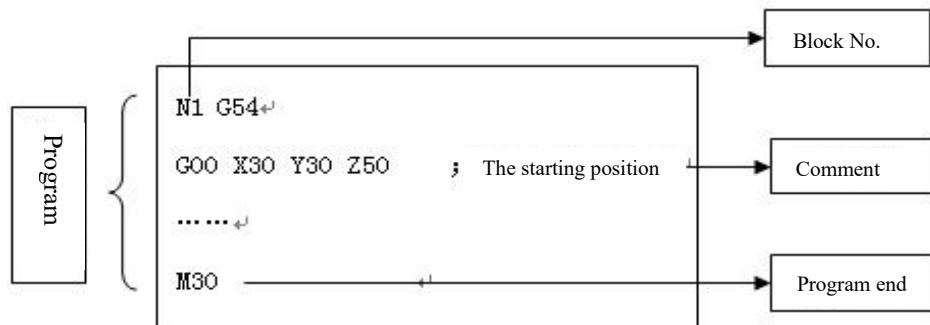
Program: A parts program is composed of several blocks that follow certain structure, syntax and format rules, and each block is composed of several command words. The program name corresponds to each workpiece, or is a number to classify programs in the unit of subprogram. The program name is a number used to distinguish each program. Use the address "O" (capital letter O) and the following number or letter to specify.

The newly created program name on the system can be up to 7 numbers or letters; the system can read the program name created externally with greater than 7 characters.



### Description

This system calls the program by calling the program name for processing or editing.



If the program end code is executed during the program execution, the CNC ends the program execution and goes into the reset state. When the subprogram end code is executed, the control returns to the main program that calls the subprogram.



### Note

If the Optional Skip switch on the machine operation panel is turned on, for example,

```
/M02;  
/M30;  
/M99; Not considered to be the end of the program.
```

## 2.1.6 Optional Block Skip



### Function and Purpose

This function means that the block after the "/" (slash) code in the processing program can be selectively ignored until the block ends.



### Description

The specific function starting with the "/" symbol. It is used to choose whether the selective processing block is executed or not.

Detailed description: When the Optional Skip switch is ON, the line codes with the symbol "/" at the beginning of the block are skipped; when the Optional Skip switch is OFF, the line codes with the symbol "/" at the beginning of the block are executed, and the "/" symbol does not work.

For example, when certain blocks in the program do not need to be executed under certain circumstances, but need to be executed in another environment, this function can be used.



### Note

The ON or OFF setting of the Optional Skip button on the CNC controller must be executed before the program runs.

The special "/" symbol for optional skip must be at the beginning of the block. (If it is inserted in the middle of the block, it is used as a division operation command of the user macro)

Example: N30 G1 X15/Y5; incorrect, illegal symbol alarm

/N30 G1 X15 Y5; correct

## 2.2 Main Program and Subprogram



### Function and Purpose

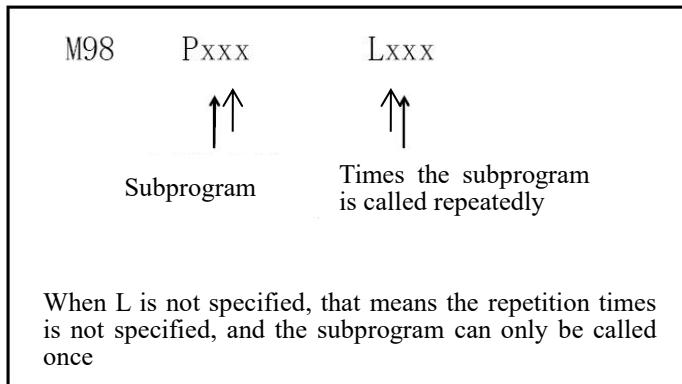
When a same processing mode appears multiple times in a program, this mode can be edited into a program for repeated calling to simplify the program. Such a program is referred to as a subprogram, and the original program is referred to as the main program. The call of the subprogram is performed with M98 or G65 command, and the return from the subprogram is performed with M99 command. Refer to the chapter of user macro program for the specific subprogram calling of G65.

The subprogram can be called repeatedly up to 999 times. User can also call other subprograms in a subprogram, and up to 6 layers are supported.

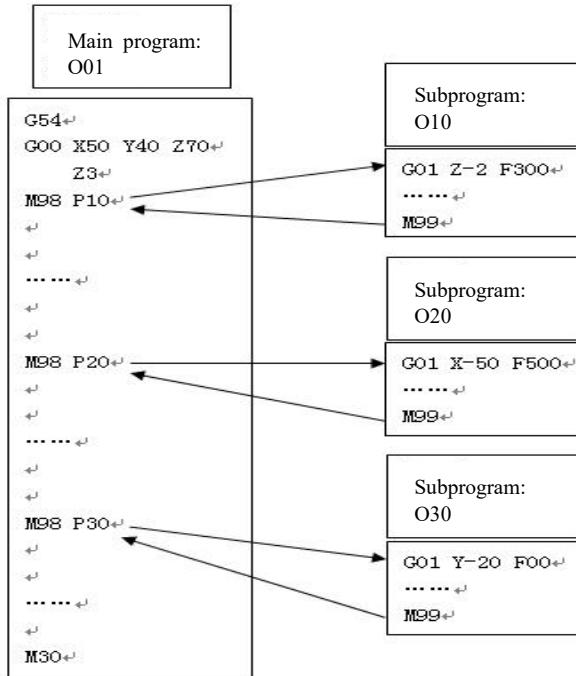


### Description

Structure of calling subprogram:



When a call to subprogram execution command occurs during the execution of the main program, the subprogram command is executed. When the subprogram is executed, return to the main program to continue the execution.



Special usage of M99: when it is used as the main program end command, return to the main program head to execute the program again.

There are two forms to call subprogram:

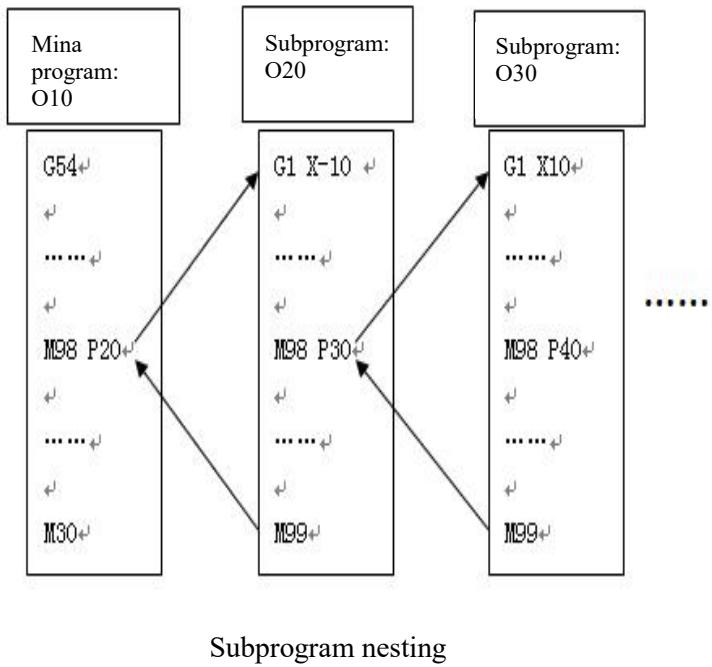
- 1) The subprogram is placed after the main program, that is, after the end of the program (M30 or M02). The program number called can start with % or the letter O;
- 2) When the subprogram is used as a separate program, it should be placed in the same disk (system disk or USB disk) as the main program.



#### Note

- 1) In both forms, the subprogram placed after the main program has priority, that is, the first case is prior to the second case.
- 2) When calling a subprogram, the name of the subprogram cannot have a suffix, otherwise the alarm "File not loaded" is issued.
- 3) The subprogram cannot be executed in MDI, otherwise the alarm will be issued. "MDI cannot call external subprograms".

When the main program calls a subprogram, it is regarded as a first layer of subprogram, and the called subprogram can also call another subprogram. The depth can reach up to 6 layers, as shown below:



### 2.3 Cautions before Machining



#### Caution

- ⚠** When creating a processing program, please select appropriate processing conditions and be careful not to exceed the performance, capacity, and limitations of the machine and NC. We do not take the above processing conditions into consideration for the cases mentioned in this manual.
- ⚠** Please perform dry run before actual machining to confirm the machining program, tool compensation amount, workpiece offset amount, etc.

### 3 Preparatory Function (G Code)

#### 3.1 G Code Modal and Grouping



##### Function and Purpose

###### Modal of G code

G codes can be divided into two types according to their effective states: non-modal G codes and modal G codes.

Non-modal G code: It is valid only when the G code is specified, and it is invalid if it is not specified.

Modal G code: This type of G code is stored by the CNC system after it is executed once, and remains valid until it is replaced by other codes in the same group.

###### Grouping of G codes

G codes are divided into several groups according to their functions. Group 00 is for non-modal G codes, and the other groups are for modal G codes.



##### Description

- 1) Multiple G codes of different groups can be specified in the same block.
- 2) If multiple codes of the same group are specified in the same block, only the last specified code is valid.
- 3) If the G code of group 01 is specified in the canned cycle, just like the G80 command is specified, the canned cycle can be cancelled. But the G code of canned cycle does not affect the code of 01 group.

#### 3.2 List of G codes (M)

G code	Group No.	Function
G00	01	Rapid traverse positioning
【G01】		Linear interpolation
G02		Circular interpolation CW/ Helical interpolation CW
G03		Circular interpolation CCW/ Helical interpolation CCW
G04	00	Dwell
G05.1	27	High speed high precision mode
G07	00	Imaginary axis designation
G07.1		Cylindrical interpolation
G08		Read-ahead OFF
G09		Exact stop check
G10	07	Programmable data input

【G11】		Programmable data input cancel
G12	18	Polar coordinate interpolation ON
【G13】		Polar coordinate interpolation OFF
【G15】	16	Polar programming OFF
G16		Polar programming ON
【G17】	02	XY plane selection
G18		ZX plane selection
G19		YZ plane selection
G20	08	Input in inch
【G21】		Input in metric
G24	03	Mirroring ON
【G25】		Mirroring OFF
G28	00	Reference point return
G29		Return from reference point
G30		Return from 2 <sup>nd</sup> , 3 <sup>rd</sup> , 4 <sup>th</sup> , 5 <sup>th</sup> reference points
【G40】	09	Tool radius compensation cancel
G41		Left tool compensation
G41.4		5-axis side milling tool compensation left
G42		Right tool compensation
G42.4		5-axis side milling tool compensation right
G43	10	Tool length compensation in positive direction
G43.4		RTCP rotate angle programming
G43.5		RTCP tool vector programming
G44		Tool length compensation in negative direction
【G49】		Tool length compensation Cancel
【G50】	04	Scaling OFF
G51		Scaling ON
G52	00	Local coordinate system setting
G53		Direct machine coordinate system programming
G53.1		Tool axis direction control (only move rotary axis)
G53.2		Tool axis direction control (tool nose follows tool axis direction to move)
G53.3		Normal tool retract
G53.4		Software limit normal-retract
G54.x	11	Extended workpiece coordinate system programming
【G54】		Workpiece coordinate system 1
G55		Workpiece coordinate system 2
G56		Workpiece coordinate system 3
G57		Workpiece coordinate system 4
G58		Workpiece coordinate system 5
G59		Workpiece coordinate system 6
G60	00	Unidirectional positioning
G61	12	Exact stop mode

<b>【G64】</b>		Cutting mode
G65	00	Macro non-modal call
G68	05	Rotation transformation ON
G68.1		Feature coordinate system establishment with three points
G68.2		Feature coordinate system establishment with Euler angle
G68.3		Feature coordinate system establishment with space angle
G68.4		Feature coordinate system establishment with current attitude
<b>【G69】</b>		Rotation transformation OFF
G73	06	Deep hole drilling cycle
G74		Reverse tapping cycle
G76		Fine boring cycle
<b>【G80】</b>		Canned cycle cancel
G81		Center drilling cycle
G82		Drilling cycle with pause
G83		Deep hole drilling cycle
G84		Tapping cycle
G85		Boring cycle
G86		Boring cycle
G87		Back boring cycle
G88		Boring cycle (hand)
G89		Boring cycle
G181		Circular slot cycle (type 1)
G182		Circular slot cycle (type 2)
G183		Circumferential slot milling cycle
G184		Rectangular pocket cycle
G185		Circular pocket cycle
G186		Face end milling cycle
G188		Rectangular boss cycle
G189		Circular boss cycle
<b>【G90】</b>	13	Absolute programming
G91		Incremental programming
G92	00	Workpiece coordinate system setting
G93	14	Inverse time feed
<b>【G94】</b>		Feed per minute
G95		Feed per revolution
<b>【G98】</b>	15	Start point return in canned cycle
G99		Reference point return in canned cycle
G101	00	Axis release
G102		Axis acquisition
G103		Command channel loader
G103.1		Command channel loader running
G104		Channel synchronization
G106		Measurement data record and export

G108 『STOC』		Spindle is switched to C axis
G109 『CTOS』		C axis is switched to spindle
G110		Alarm edit
G115		Rotary axis angle resolution redefining
G140	25	Linear interpolation mode
G145	00	RTCP parameter switching
G146	00	Spindle synchronization ON
G147	00	Spindle synchronization OFF
WRITE	00	



### Note

- 1) After the controller is powered on, the one marked with "【】" in the table is the initial modal in the same group, and the one marked with "『』" is the equivalent macro name of the G code.
- 2) During the operation, if a code not included in the G code is specified, a program error (alarm code) will occur.

## 4 Auxiliary Function

### 4.1 M Command



#### Function and Purpose

The auxiliary function code is composed of the address word M and the following numbers. It is mainly used to control the parts program and auxiliary functions such as various auxiliary switch actions of the machine tool. Among them, M00, M01, M02, M30, M92, M93, M98, M99 are used to control the parts program. They are default auxiliary functions defined by CNC, are not determined by the machine tool manufacturer and unrelated to the PLC program. Other M codes are used for auxiliary switch actions of the machine tool, and their functions are not determined by the CNC, but specified by the PLC program, so the codes may vary with different machine tool manufacturers. The functions provided in this manual are conventional definitions. The specific conditions are subject to the machine description.



#### Description

##### Pre and post attributes for M code

When the M function is specified in the same block as the traverse command, the execution sequence of the M command may be pre, post, and synchronous.

Pre function: The M function is executed before the axis movement programmed in the block.

Post function: The M function is executed after the axis movement programmed in the block.

Synchronous function: The M function is executed simultaneously with the axis movement programmed in the block.

In the parameter configuration of this system, the M code table can be set to take effect in three ways: pre, post, and synchronous. Which state is applicable depends on the machine specifications.

M code	GRP #	Type	Anyline	G00 sync	SPD control	Comment
M00	0	Pos	No	No	No	
M01	1	Pos	No	No	No	
M02	2	Pos	No	No	No	
M03	3	Pre	No	No	SPD1 CW	
M04	3	Pre	No	No	SPD1 CCI	
M05	3	Pos	No	No	SPD1 sto	
M06	6	Svn	No	No	No	
M07	7	Svn	No	No	No	
M08	8	Svn	No	No	SPD2 sto	
M09	9	Svn	No	No	No	
M10	10	Svn	No	No	No	
M11	11	Svn	No	No	No	
M12	12	Svn	No	No	No	
M13	13	Svn	No	No	No	
M14	14	Svn	No	No	No	
M15	15	Svn	No	No	No	

(Note 1) The activation modes of M codes M00, M01, M02, M05, M30, M92, and M93 that are not displayed in the list are fixed and cannot be modified.

(Note 2) The M code that is set or defaulted to the post should not be specified together with the traverse command. It is better to be specified in a line separately, otherwise errors of some M codes may occur.

### Multiple M command specification

Usually only one M code is valid for a block. In this system, at most 4 M codes can be specified in a block. When users need to specify multiple M codes in a block, please note the following:

- (1) Up to 4 M codes can be specified in a block, and multiple M codes in the same group are regarded as one.
- (2) When multiple M codes of the same group are designated in a block, the last M code in the block is effective.
- (3) When multiple different groups of M codes are designated in a block, the M codes in the block are all effective.
- (4) M codes such as M00, M01, M02, M30, M99 cannot be specified together with other M codes.
- (5) M codes such as M00, M01, M02, M30, and M99 require to be specified in a separate line, that is, the program line containing the above M codes can not only have one M code, and cannot have other execution commands including G and T commands.
- (6) The corresponding relationship between M codes and functions depends on the specific

settings of the machine tool manufacturer. See the machine tool manufacturer's manual for details.



#### Note

Although multiple M codes can be specified in a block, due to the different specifications of each machine tool and the different settings by each machine tool manufacturer, it is recommended not to specify multiple M codes in a block at the same time, otherwise unpredictable errors may occur.

### 4.1.1 Default Auxiliary Function of CNC



#### Function and Purpose

##### M00 Program dwell

When the CNC executes the M00 command, it will pause the execution of the current program to facilitate the operator to perform operations such as tool and workpiece size measurement, workpiece U-turn, manual speed change, etc.

During pause, the feed of the machine tool is held, and all the existing modal information remains unchanged. User should press the CycleStart button on the operation panel for the continued execution of subsequent program.

M00 is valid for the current program line, it is the post M function. Its post attribute is not allowed to be modified.

##### M01 Optional stop

If user presses the Optional Stop button on the operation panel, when the CNC executes the M01 command, it will suspend the execution of the current program and the machine tool will be in the feed hold state to facilitate the operator to perform the tool extension length and workpiece size measurement, workpiece U-turn, manual speed change and other operations. During pause, the feed of the machine tool stops, and all the existing modal information remains unchanged. User should press the CycleStart button on the operation panel for the continued execution of subsequent program.

If user does not activate the Optional Stop button on the operation panel, when the CNC executes the M01 command, the program will not pause and continue to execute.

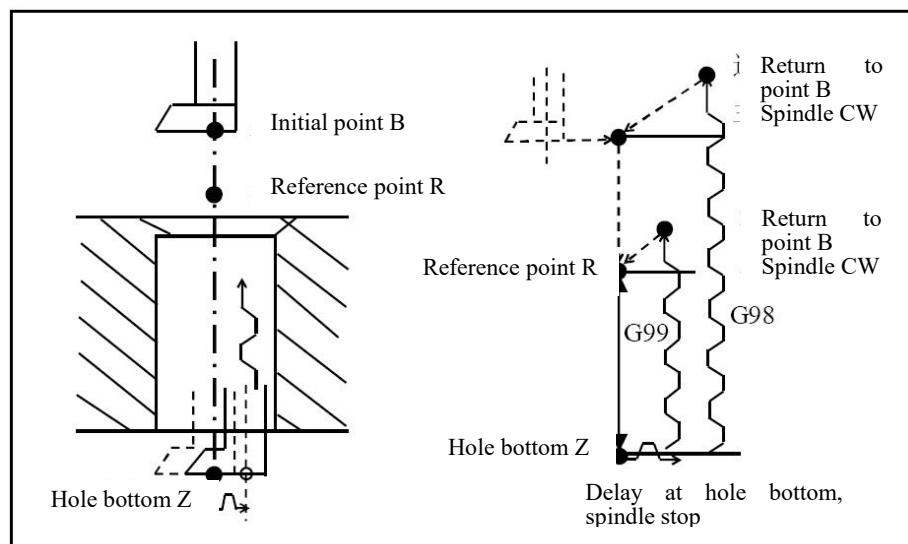
M01 is valid in the current program line, it is the post M function. Its post attribute is not allowed to be modified.

##### M92 Program dwell (manual intervention)

When CNC executes M92, the program execution pauses and the machine is in feed hold state, but the difference from M00 is that at this time user can manually intervene in each axis, manually command its movement, and then switch to the Auto mode to continue the running of the current program after pressing CycleStart button.

M92 can be used in the following occasions:

(1) In manual boring, when the boring tool is automatically processed to the bottom of the hole, the machine tool stops running, and changes the working mode to "Jog". Through manual operation, the tool can only retract after moving radially in the opposite direction of the tool nose for a certain distance to avoid the wall of the workpiece hole. The general milling machine can complete fine boring with this command without the need of spindle exact stop function.



(2) During manual measurement, when the user manually measures the tool or workpiece through the dialogue interface, the CNC actually processes it as a manual measurement cycle, and M92 is inserted in the appropriate place in the cycle to guide the user to complete the entire measurement task. If the system executes M92 of the canned cycle, the program is paused. At this time, the system waits for the user to switch to the "Jog" mode to command the measuring axis to run to the measuring position, and then switches to the "auto" mode. User presses the CycleStart button to continue the measurement cycle.

### **M93 Program dwell (manual intervention is disabled)**

The M93 command is equivalent to the M00 command. Unlike M92, the user cannot perform manual intervention when the program is paused with M93.

### **M02 End of program**

M02 is in the last block of the main program. When the CNC executes the M02 command, the spindle, feed, and coolant of the machine tool stop, and the machining ends.

If user needs to re-execute the program which has been finished its execution with M02, user has to call the program again, or press the "rerun" key in the submenu of automatic processing, and then presses the CycleStart button on the operation panel.

M02 is valid in the current program line. It is the post M function. Its pre and post attributes are not allowed to be modified, and it must be specified in a separate line.

### **M30 Program ends and returns**

The functions of M30 and M02 are basically the same, but the M30 command also has the function of returning to the program head.

If user needs to re-execute the program which has been finished its execution with M30, just press the CycleStart button on the operation panel again.

(Note 1) This command must be placed in a separate line to take effect.

### **M98/M99 Subprogram call**

If the program contains a fixed sequence or frequently repeated pattern, such a sequence or pattern can be stored as a subprogram in the memory to simplify the program.

(Note 1) The maximum number of subprogram calls (L) is 10,000 times.

(Note 2) A subprogram can be called from the main program.

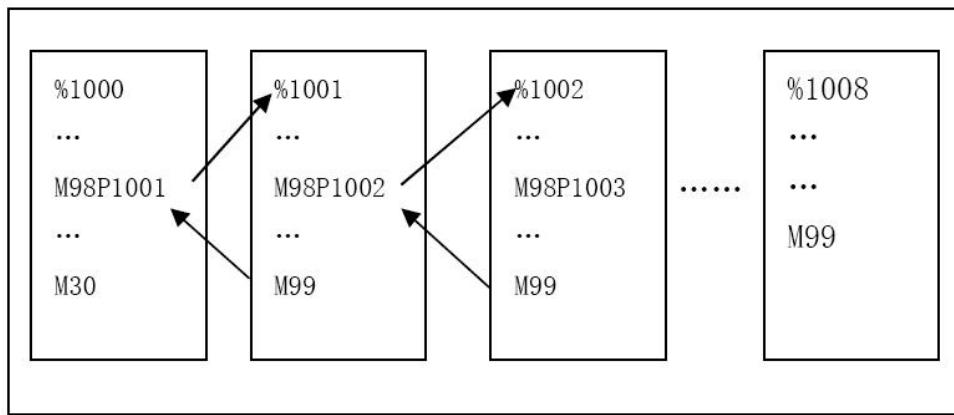
(Note 3) A called program can also call another subprogram.

Structure of subprogram
%xxxx; Subprogram No.
.....; Subprogram contents
M99; Subprogram returns
Subprogram call (M98)
M98 P__ L__
P__: Subprogram No. called (in Arabic numerals)
L__: The number of times the subprogram is called repeatedly

### **Nested call of subprogram**

When the main program call a subprogram with M98, it can be regarded as a first-level of

subprogram call. The subprogram call can be nested up to 6 levels, as shown below:



(Note 1) When the main program calls a subprogram with M98, G80 must be added before M99 in the subprogram to ensure the correct operation of the program.

(Note 2) M98/M99 need to be used in a separate line (avoid being in the same line with other commands).

#### Use M99 in the main program

If M99 is executed in the main program, the control returns to the beginning of the main program, and the main program is executed from its beginning, and loops forever.

#### 4.1.2 Auxiliary Function Set by PLC



##### Function and Purpose

##### M03/04/05 Spindle control

M03 Starts the clockwise rotation of spindle at the speed programmed (viewed from the positive direction to the negative direction of Z axis).

M04 Starts the counterclockwise rotation of spindle at the speed programmed.

M05 Spindle stops

(Note 1) M03, M04, and M05 can mutually cancel each other.

(Note 2) The spindle can be switched from position mode to speed mode with M03/M04 instead of G109.

## **M06 Tool change**

M06 is used to call a tool which needs to be installed on the spindle of the machining center. When this command is executed, the tool will be automatically installed on the spindle. For example: M06 T01; the tool 01 will be installed on the spindle.

(Note 1) M06 is effective in the current program line.

(Note 2) M06 needs to be used in a separate line (avoid being in the same line with other commands).

## **M07/08/09 Coolant control**

M07 and M08 are to turn on the coolant pipeline (based on the definition of the machine tool manufacturer).

M09 is to turn off the coolant pipe.

## **M64 Workpiece counting**

M64 will accumulate the number of completed workpieces in the system processing statistics

## **M19/M20 Spindle orientation**

M19 is to enable spindle orientation.

M20 is to disable spindle orientation

## **4.2 Table of M Command Function and Regular Status**

Code	Function	Pre/Post/Synchronization			Function remains valid until it is canceled	Function is valid in the block it exists
		Synchronization	Pre	Post		
M00	Program dwell			★		●
M01	Optional stop			★		●
M02	End of program			★		●
M03	Spindle rotation CW		●		●	

M04	Spindle rotation CCW		●		●	
M05	Spindle stop			★	●	
M06	Tool change		●			●
M07	Coolant 2 ON		●		●	
M08	Coolant 1 ON		●		●	
M09	Coolant OFF			●	●	
M10 to M18	Undefined					
M19	Spindle orientation		●			●
M20	Spindle orientation cancel			●		●
M21	Tool release (umbrella-type magazine)	●				●
M22	Tool clamping (umbrella-type magazine)	●				●
M23	Magazine forward (umbrella type magazine)	●				●
M24	Magazine backward (umbrella type magazine)	●				●
M25	Tool selection (umbrella-type magazine)	●				●
M26 to M29	Undefined					
M30	Program ends and returns to its head			★		●
M31 to M63	Undefined					
M64	Workpiece count	●				●
M65 to M91	Undefined					

M92	Program dwell (manual intervention)			★		●
M93	Program dwell (manual intervention is not allowed)			★		●
M94 to M97	Undefined					
M98	Subprogram call			●		●
M99	Subprogram returns to main program			●		●
M100 to M999	Undefined					
<p>“●”: The function is conventionally specified.</p> <p>“★”: The function status is fixedly specified.</p> <p>For the "undefined" codes, its function may be defined when the standard is revised in the future.</p>						

## 5 Spindle Function

### 5.1 Spindle Speed Setting



#### Function and Purpose

The spindle speed can be controlled by the number specified after the address S.

In addition to running in speed mode (rotating at a certain speed), the spindle can also operate in position mode (switching to the rotary axis for interpolation calculation).

Through the M command controlled by the PLC, the S command is processed and terminated.



#### Example

%1234

G92X0Y0Z20; Establish coordinate system

G00 X0 Y0 Z2; Move to the position above the hole

M03S2000; CW spindle rotation

G41 G01 X20 D01 F300; Establish tool radius compensation

G03X40R10; Start the circular cutting

G03 I-40 Z-10 L5; Mill the hole in spiral

G03 I-40; Smooth the hole bottom

G03X20R10; Exit the circular cutting

G40G01X0; Cancel tool radius compensation

G0Z20; Lift the tool

M05; Spindle stops

M30; End of program

## 5.2 Constant Linear Speed Cutting Control (G96/G97) (T)



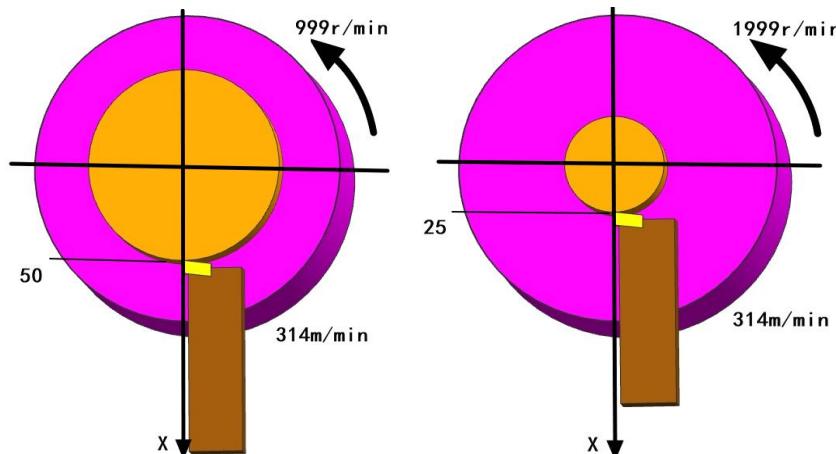
### Function and Purpose

This function is only applicable to CNC lathe system. It adjusts the spindle speed with the movement of the tool nose position (constant linear speed cutting control), so that the speed of the cutting point is always a constant speed (fixed cutting speed), which improves the uniformity of the surface.

As the tool nose is moving to the workpiece origin, the spindle speed of the machine tool is getting higher and higher until the machine specification limit is reached, which is very dangerous. Therefore, please be sure to set to the maximum speed limit in the spindle speed limit setting command (G46).

Constant linear speed control when the constant speed cutting control command G96 is set to S314m/min.

Workpiece radius: 50mm (radius value)   Workpiece radius: 25mm (radius value)



Because the linear speed is constant, the spindle speed is calculated as the tool nose position moves, and it changes automatically.

In the above example, because the linear speed (314 m/min) is constant, the speed changes from 999 (r/min) to 1999 (r/min) as the radius of the workpiece changes (50mm → 25mm).

The relationship between linear speed and spindle speed

$$n=1000*V/\pi D$$

n——machine spindle speed r/min

V——Cutting linear speed of workpiece circumference m/min

D——Diameter of workpiece mm



### Command Format

G96 P\_ S\_ ; To activate constant linear speed cutting control function of specified axis

G46 X\_ P\_ ; Spindle speed limit

G97 S\_ ; To disable constant linear speed cutting control function of specified axis

Parameter	Meaning
P	The control axis of the constant linear speed cutting control specified with the G96 command, the axis specified by P is determined by the system axis parameters. 1~3 respectively represent the X, Y, and Z axes; The maximum speed limit of the spindle (r/min) when the G46 command specifies the constant linear speed cutting control;
S	Specify the constant linear speed (mm/min or inch/min) with G96 command; The designated spindle speed (r/min), after the constant linear speed cutting control is canceled with G97 command,;
X	Minimum spindle speed limit (r/min) for constant linear speed;



### Description

- (1) The system only supports the X-axis to control spindle speed for constant linear speed cutting control. The system has not yet opened the function of controlling the spindle speed with Y or Z axis for constant linear speed cutting control;
- (2) G96/G97 is a pair of modal commands, and they can be mutually canceled;
- (3) The G46 command function is only valid when the constant linear speed cutting control function is valid;
- (4) To use the constant linear speed cutting control function, the spindle must be able to change speed automatically. (E.g., servo spindle, PWM spindle);
- (5) When performing the constant linear speed cutting control function, if the spindle speed is greater than the maximum spindle speed, it will be clamped at the maximum spindle speed.
- (6) The linear speed of spindle is specified with S command when the constant linear speed cutting control is enabled.
- (7) The constant linear speed calculation is always executed at the time of the cutting feed command (such as G01).
- (8) The constant linear speed cutting control cancel command (G97) is only available when the constant linear speed cutting control command is enabled.



### Note

- 1) G96 must be followed by G46 to limit the maximum and minimum spindle speed. When the controlled axis of the constant linear speed cutting control approaches to the spindle center, the spindle speed increases, and the allowable speed of the workpiece and chuck may be exceeded, which may cause damage to the tool and machine tool, and even cause injury; while the controller axis of the constant linear speed cutting control moves away from the spindle center,

the spindle speed decreases, which will be less than the actual machining speed required, resulting in the inability to machine qualified parts. Therefore, G96 must be followed by G46 to limit the maximum and minimum spindle speeds, and when user specifies the constant linear speed cutting control during programming, pay attention to the distance between the controlled axis and the spindle center.

2) When G96 is commanded, do not omit the linear speed command "S\_". When the command is omitted, the system will alarm.

### 5.3 Spindle Clamping Speed



#### Function and Purpose

The maximum and minimum spindle speeds are limited by G46 command. According to the specifications of the workpiece, the chuck installed on the spindle, and the tool, the spindle speed limit is set when the speed needs to be restricted, so that qualified products can be processed. It is often used in conjunction with constant linear speed control G96/G97.



#### Command format

G46 X\_ P\_; Spindle speed limit

Parameter	Meaning
P	Max. spindle speed limit ( r/min ) when constant linear speed cutting control is specified
X	Min. spindle speed limit ( r/min ) when constant linear speed cutting control is specified



#### Description

The speed is limited only in the constant linear speed cutting control mode.



#### Note

Spindle clamping speed G46 is often used in conjunction with the constant linear speed cutting control G96/G97. G96 must be followed by G46 to limit the maximum and minimum spindle speed. When the controlled axis of the constant linear speed cutting control approaches to the spindle center, the spindle speed increases, and the allowable speed of the workpiece and chuck may be exceeded, which may cause damage to the tool and machine tool, and even cause injury; while the controller axis of the constant linear speed cutting control moves away from the spindle center, the spindle speed decreases, which will be less than the actual machining speed required, resulting in the inability to machine qualified parts. Therefore, G96 must be followed by G46 to limit the maximum and minimum spindle speeds, and when user specifies the constant linear speed cutting control during programming, pay attention to the distance between

the controlled axis and the spindle center.

#### 5.4 C/S-Axis Switching (CTOS/STOC)



##### Function and Purpose

In addition to running in speed mode (rotating at a certain speed), the spindle can also run in position mode (switching to the rotary axis for interpolation calculation). At this time, the spindle drive needs to support the speed mode/position mode switching function (ie C/ S-axis switching function).

In some applications such as the rigid tapping function, the C/S-axis switching function is required.



##### Command format

STOC/G108 IP;

CTOS/G109 IP;

Parameter	Meaning
IP	IP can be A/B/C, the number after them indicates the spindle number in the channel, the value ranges from 0 to 3; When the IP is absent after STOC, the No. 0 spindle is changed to the C axis by default; When the IP is absent after CTOS, the C axis is changed to the No. 0 spindle by default.

Explanation: 1) G108 B0 means to switch No. 0 spindle to B axis; G109 B0 means to switch B axis back to No. 0 spindle. Generally, the G108 B0 function is used on the 5-axis machine tool; the 3-axis milling machine generally only uses G108 (no IP is written afterwards), and the No. 0 spindle becomes the C axis by default.



##### Example

%0007; Rigid tapping test program, R is the program zero

G92 G17 Z0.000

G109

M03 S1000.000; CW spindle rotation

M05

G90 G0 Z1

G108; Switch speed mode to position mode for spindle

G98 G84 Z-20.000 R1 P500 F1.000; Perform rigid tapping

G109; Switch position mode to speed mode for spindle

G01 Z0.000

## M30

Note: The current version of the system software G84 canned cycle already includes the C/S-axis switching function of G108/G109. When using G84, there is no need to write G108/G109. G84 can run normally whether G108/G109 is written or not in the program. There is an older version of the system software, whose G84 canned cycle does not include the C/S axis switching function of G108/G109, so when using G84 in the program, it needs to be used with G108/G109. They are listed here to explain the G108/G109 commands.



### Note

- 1) The machine tool needs to be equipped with a spindle servo drive to support the speed mode/position mode switching function.
- 2) The spindle has never been rotated after power-on. Before using the C/S-axis switching function, the spindle needs to rotate several revolutions, otherwise the system will warn—"C/S switching requires manual homing".
- 3) In the same G code program, it is best not to use the STOC/CTOS macro commands frequently.
- 4) When the spindle is switched to C axis, the unit of C axis is deg/min.
- 5) It is not allowed to use any line function to skip between STOC and CTOS, and it is also not allowed to use any line to skip from elsewhere to the position between STOC and CTOS.

## 5.5 Spindle Orientation



### Function and Purpose

Spindle orientation is to stop the spindle at a specific position.

In the processing of CNC machine tools, in order to realize automatic tool change and enable the manipulator to accurately load the tool into the spindle hole, the keyway of the tool must be axially aligned with the key position of the spindle; During boring, when retracting the tool, it is required that the tool can retract after moving a certain distance radially in the opposite direction of the tool nose to avoid scratching the workpiece. All of these require an accurate axial positioning function of spindle.



### Command format

M19/M20 :

Parameter	Meaning
M19	Enable spindle orientation
M20	Cancel spindle orientation



### Note

- 1) Generally, the spindle orientation command does not need to be edited in the machining program. It is executed by calling the canned cycle program in the system with commands such as boring or tool change (M06).
- 2) The spindle orientation position is set in the parameter PA39 of the spindle drive, or by modifying 105539 (spindle orientation position pulse) on the system side (the spindle is usually logical axis 5). The above SV-180US spindle drive as an example. The unit of the parameters is pulse.

## 5.6 Spindle Synchronization Control (G146/G147)



### Function and Purpose

With the improvement of spindle control technology, there are also new requirements for the mode and efficiency of CNC machining, such as polygon turning processing, load tapping where the spindle speed does not drop to zero, and dual-spindle workpiece exchange with continuous spindle rotation, all requiring spindle synchronization control function.

The spindle synchronization control of this system is also called the electronic gearbox function. This function controls the transmission ratio of the synchronous axis through programming, and performs high-precision motion coupling control of the spindle.

Through the coordination of programming commands and channel parameters, up to 3 groups of 6 spindles (master axis and slave axis) can be controlled.



### Command Format

G146I\_J\_R\_P\_ ; Enable synchronization

G147P\_ ; Disable synchronization

Parameter	Meaning
I	Transmission ratio of master axis
J	Transmission ratio of slave axis
R	Phase angle deviation value of the master and slave axis
P	Synchronization group number (the system has designed a total of 3 groups of axis coupling control, the serial number is 1, 2, 3, and the default is 1)



### Description

The system parameter corresponding to the command (channel parameter, \* represents the channel number)

Parameter	Parameter	Description
-----------	-----------	-------------

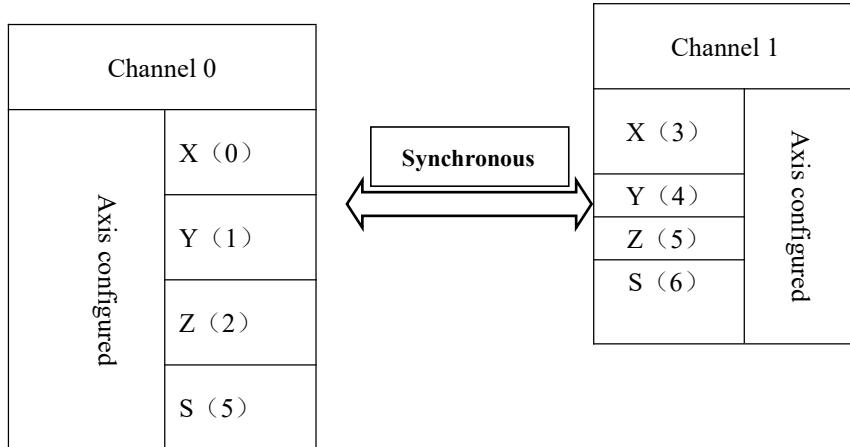
number		
04*340	1 <sup>st</sup> group of electronic gearbox master axis number	Set the logical axis number of master axis
04*341	1 <sup>st</sup> group of electronic gearbox slave axis number	Set the logical axis number of slave axis
04*342	1 <sup>st</sup> group of electronic gearbox master axis ratio	【I】 Set the transmission ratio of master axis
04*343	1 <sup>st</sup> group of electronic gearbox slave axis ratio	【J】 Set the transmission ratio of slave axis
04*344	1 <sup>st</sup> group of electronic gearbox synchronization type	Set the synchronization type of master and slave axes (0: actual position synchronization; 1: command position synchronization)
04*345	1 <sup>st</sup> group of electronic gearbox phase ON	Set whether to synchronize the phase angle when the master and slave axes rotate (0: not synchronized 1: synchronized)
04*346	Phase angle of the first electronic gearbox	[R] Set the angle of the synchronization phase angle (0 to 360 degrees)
04*347 -04*353	2 <sup>nd</sup> group of electronic gearbox parameter	The parameter description is similar with the first group
04*354-04*360	3 <sup>rd</sup> group of electronic gearbox parameter	The parameter description is similar with the first group



## Example

### Example 1

- (1) The system is configured with dual channel. The spindles in the two channels need to synchronously complete the exchange of workpieces (spindle 5 and spindle 6)



- (2) Parameter setting

	Channel 0		Channel 1		
Parameter	Parameter No.	Value	Parameter No.	Value	Explanation
1 <sup>st</sup> group of electronic gearbox master axis number	040340	0	041340	5	Set axis 5 as the master axis
1 <sup>st</sup> group of electronic gearbox slave axis number	040341	0	041341	6	Set axis 6 as the slave axis
1 <sup>st</sup> group of electronic gearbox master axis ratio	040342	0	041342	1	Set the transmission ratio of master and slave axes
1 <sup>st</sup> group of electronic gearbox slave axis ratio	040343	0	041343	-1	
1 <sup>st</sup> group of electronic gearbox synchronization type	040344	0	041344	0	Set to the actual position synchronization
1 <sup>st</sup> group of electronic gearbox phase ON	040345	0	041345	1	Phase angle synchronization is enabled
1 <sup>st</sup> electronic gearbox phase angle	040346	0	041346	0	Not set

### (3) Example

Channel 0	Channel 1
T0101 G99 M3 S1000 ; Master axis starts G4X2 G104P1 G104P2 ; Wait for synchronization to complete G0 Y0.0 G99G0 X30.0 Z15.2 G4X0.5 G104P3 G104P4 G4 X0.3 G99G1X-2.0F0.06 M5 ; Master and slave axes stop G104P5 G104P6 M30	G104P1 M4 S200; Slave axis rotates first (servo needs to be enabled first) G146; Synchronization starts (The synchronization parameters are based on the settings of above table) T2222 G98 G28 Z0.0 X0.0 F5000 G104P2 G104P3 M21; Chuck is automatically released G98 G0 Z-182.0 G1 Z-204 F5000 G4 X1.0 M22; Chuck is automatically clamped G4 X0.3 G104P4 G104P5 G28 Z0.0 M5

	G104P6 G147; Synchronization ends M30
--	---

### Example 2

(1) The system is configured with a single channel, one spindle and one power head.

The power head cooperates with the spindle to process 4, 6, and 8 polygons with the fly cutter (the fly cutter is equipped with 2 tools).

Channel 0	
Feed axis	X (0)
	Z (2)
Spindle	S (5)
Power head	S1 (3)

(2) Parameter setting

Parameter	Channel 0		Description
	Parameter No.	Value	
Master axis No. of the first group of electronic gearbox	040340	5	Set axis 5 as master axis
Slave axis No. of the first group of electronic gearbox	040341	3	Set axis 3 as slave axis
Master axis ratio of the first group of electronic gearbox	040342	0	Set transmission ratio of master and slave axes
Slave axis ratio of the first group of electronic gearbox	040343	0	Not set
The first group of electronic gearbox synchronization type	040344	0	Set to the actual position synchronization
The first group of electronic gearbox phase ON	040345	1	Phase angle synchronization is enabled
The first group of electronic gearbox phase angle	040346	0	Not set

(3) Example:

```
%1234
M103S1=0; Power head is enabled (slave axis)
M3S200; Master axis starts
G0Z30
```

G146 I1 J-2 R0; The synchronization is enabled with the transmission ratio of master and slave axes being 1:-2 (power head rotates reversely); the phase angle R is 0, at this time a quadrilateral is processed.

T1  
G0Z2  
X-23  
G01X-12.44F2  
Z0  
Z-3F1  
G0X-23  
M3S200

G146I1J-3R0; The synchronization is enabled with the transmission ratio of master and slave axes being 1:-2 (power head rotates reversely); the phase angle R is 0, at this time an hexagon is processed.

G1X-17.6F1  
Z-6  
G0X-23  
M3S200

G146I1J-4R0; The synchronization is enabled with the transmission ratio of master and slave axes being 1:-2 (power head rotates reversely); the phase angle R is 0, at this time an octagon is processed.

G1X-20.32F1  
Z-9  
G0X-23  
Z50  
X-50  
G147; Synchronization ends  
M30



#### Note

- 1) If I, J, R programming is specified with the G146 command, the corresponding functions set with the parameters will not take effect. At this time, it is based on the parameter settings in the program processing command. If I, J, and R are not specified in the G146 command, then the two spindle coupling control parameters are based on the channel parameter settings.
- 2) When there is no P parameter in the G146 command, the system uses the first group of electronic gearbox parameters by default.
- 3) If the master and slave axes are respectively set in two channels, when using the electronic gearbox function, the G146 command needs to be executed in the channel to which the slave axis belongs, and the parameters should also be set in the channel where the slave axis is located. Otherwise, when running the program in the master axis channel, the system will alarm: the program syntax error.
- 4) If G147 is absent in the program, the system will cancel the G146 mode during panel reset or

emergency stop reset. In programming, please note that after enabling G146 synchronization, user needs to cancel synchronization with G147. Otherwise, when the program runs again, the system will alarm: the spindle is not ready, and send the command alarm.

## 6 Tool Function

### 6.1 T Command in Milling System



#### Function and Purpose

The tool function is also called T function, which specifies the tool number. It is designated by the 4 digits (0~9999) after the address T.

By designating a value following the address T, a code signal is input to the machine tool to control the tool selection on the machine tool.

When the traverse command and the T command are specified in the same program line, there are three execution methods based on the M code type:

M06 is to set the synchronization type, and the traverse command and M code are executed simultaneously;

M06 is set to the Pre type, after the M code is executed, the traverse command is executed

M06 is set to Post type, after the traverse command is executed, the M code is executed

The choice of these three methods depends on the machine tool manufacturer's regulations



#### Description

When the T command is executed on the machining center, a code signal or pulse signal is input to the machine tool to control the magazine to rotate to the selected tool, and then wait until the tool change is automatically completed with M06.

#### ● Parameters related to magazine

Machine user parameter **010089 T Command Control Mode** sets the tool change mode and tool processing mode selection of T command in binary.

		T O O O O
		Bit1      Bit 0
Bit		Functions
Bit 0	0	T command only has tool selection function for the magazine which have the tool preselection function, e.g., manipulator magazine
	1	T commands have the functions of tool selection and tool change, e.g. magazine of drilling-tapping center

Bit 1	0	Disable tool machining mode
	1	Enable tool machining mode

NC parameter 000012 Tool Axis Selection Mode is used to determine which axis the G43/G44 tool length compensation should compensate.

0: Tool length compensation is always compensated to the Z axis.

1: The tool length compensation axis is switched according to the coordinate plane selection modal G command (G17/G18/G19), corresponding to the Z/Y/X axis respectively.

Channel parameter 040127 Starting Tool Number is used to set the starting tool number of magazine in the tool compensation table in the current channel, used in conjunction with the channel parameter Number of Tools

Channel parameter 040128 Number of Tools is used to set the number of tools in the current channel, which is consistent with the number (or add one) of tool positions of magazine in the current channel. If the starting tool number in channel 0 is set to 1, the number of tools is set to 5, the starting tool number in channel 1 is set to 6, and the number of tools is set to 10, then the data saved about the tools 1-5 in the tool compensation table (the tool offset is included for lathe system) is of the magazine 0 in the channel, and the data saved about the tools 6-15 is of the magazine 1 in the channel.

The channel parameter 040060 Number of Tool Data Saved by System is used to set how many tools (radius, length) the system saves. This parameter must be greater than or equal to the sum of the "number of tools" set in all channels.

- **Parameter related to big/small tool**

Machine user parameter 010099 Magazine Management Interface for Big/Small Tool

0: Disable the magazine management interface for big/small tool;

1: Enable the magazine management interface for big/small tool.

- **Parameter related to tool grouping and life management**

Channel parameter 040130 Tool Life Management Mode

0: Disable tool life function;

1: Enable tool life function, and grouping is not supported;

2: Enable tool life function, grouping is supported, and T command specifies tool group number;

3: Enable tool life function, grouping is supported, and T command specifies tool number (just for milling system);

Channel parameter 040133 Ignored Number of T Command Life Management.

Channel parameter 040135 Length Compensation of Tool Group in Milling: tool group length compensation number after tool grouping function is enabled.

Channel parameter 040136 Radius Compensation of Tool Group in Milling: tool group radius compensation number after tool grouping function is enabled.

- **Parameters related to multi-cutting-edge function**

NC parameter 000372 Number of Cutting Edges can enable the multi-cutting-edge interface. When the number of cutting edges is 0, the regular tool compensation interface is enabled; when the number of cutting edges is 1-9, the multi-cutting-edge interface is enabled.

**Note**

The tools in the magazine table are managed by the system and generally cannot be modified. For the umbrella type tool magazine, the M06 code and the T command are required to be written in the same block. Pay attention to the tool magazine table during tool change, the tool number of group 0 (such as 15) is the position number of the tool clamped on the spindle in magazine. If other tools need to be installed on the spindle, the tool must be returned to the position (No. 15) in magazine. At this time, there must be no tools in this position in the magazine, otherwise a collision will occur.

Therefore, when magazine loads the tool, it is recommended to install the tool on the spindle first, and then run the M code and T command (such as M06 T01) in the MDI mode to install the tool in the magazine through the spindle.

## 7 Feed Function

### 7.1 Overview



#### Function and Purpose

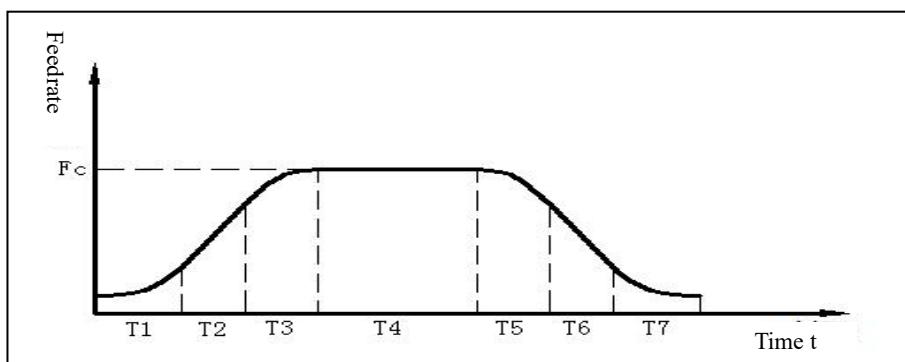
The feed function is that the CNC system issues a feedrate command to the servo drive, the servo drive controls the motor, and then controls the movement of the tool or worktable.

The feed function not only needs to specify the speed of the feed movement, but also needs to plan the speed for the start and stop of the feed movement. The CNC controller adopts automatic acceleration and deceleration control in the feed control. While the worktable is moving, the speed and direction of feed may change at the joint between the line segment and the line segment or between the line segment and the arc, which causes the oscillation of the machine tool, and the surface quality of the workpiece reduces. Therefore, automatic acceleration and deceleration control is adopted to avoid this phenomenon.



#### Description

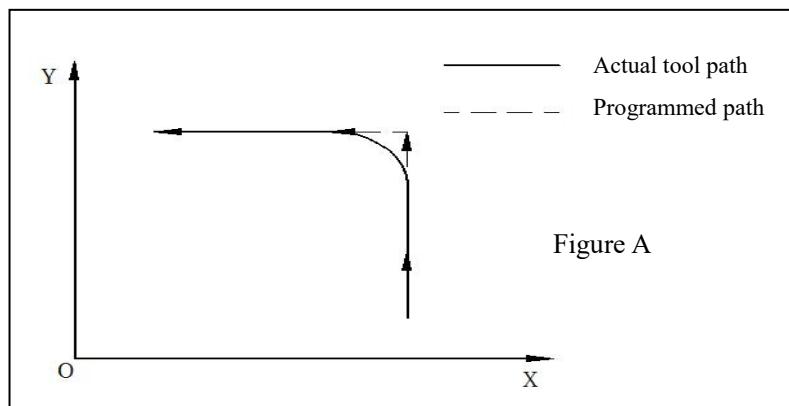
The automatic acceleration and deceleration control of the CNC controller adopts the S-curve acceleration and deceleration planning method, which accelerates and decelerates during the start and end of the motion, so that the speed changes softly to adapt to the performance of the motor and reduce the impact on the machine tool. Real-time control chart. The chart below shows the real-time control of S-curve acceleration and deceleration



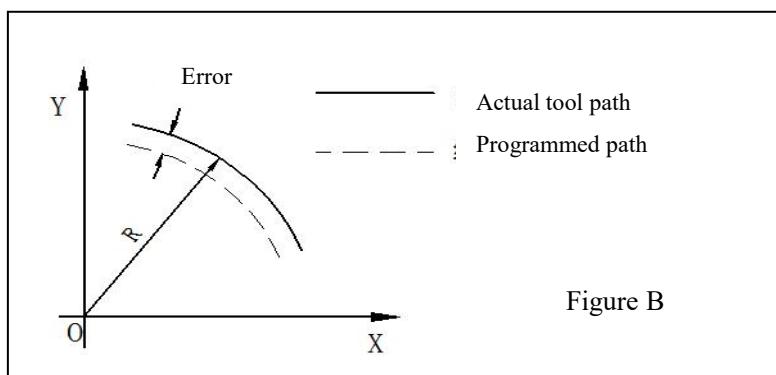
Through S-curve acceleration and deceleration, the traditional three-stage acceleration and deceleration is changed into a seven-stage acceleration and deceleration, forming an S curve.

It is divided into: acceleration section composed of T1, T2, and T3; T4 section of the feed at a constant speed V; deceleration section composed of T5, T6, and T7.

During the cutting, the change of the movement direction between the blocks will cause the rounded path of tool, as shown in the figure:



In the circular interpolation, the radial error appears as shown in the figure:



The fillet trajectory in Figure A and the error shown in Figure B depend on the feedrate. Under normal circumstances, the greater the speed, the greater the fillet in Figure A, and the greater the error in Figure B.

**Override:** Use the knob switch on the machine operation panel to adjust the rapid traverse speed or cutting feedrate.

## 7.2 Feedrate Setting



### Function and Purpose

According to the specifications of the machine tool, the maximum speed of the machine tool and the maximum speed of the cutting tool can be set. The maximum speed of the machine tool is the speed of the machine tool during non-cutting movement, which is mainly determined by the machine itself. The maximum speed of the cutting of the tool is the maximum speed that the machine tool can reach during cutting. Their speed can be specified in the following table:

Command mode	Description	Unit
Max. rapid traverse speed	The maximum rapid traverse speed must be the maximum value of all the speed setting parameters for the axis. The maximum rapid traverse speed is closely related to the ratio of the external pulse	mm/min

	equivalent numerator to denominator. This parameter must be set reasonably to avoid exceeding the motor speed range.	
Max. cutting feedrate	The maximum cutting feedrate is related to processing requirements; mechanical transmission is related to the load; the maximum processing speed must be less than the maximum rapid traverse speed. The rotary axis is affected by the converted rotation radius.	mm/min

The feedrate function has three forms: rapid traverse speed, cutting feedrate, and second feedrate.

### 7.2.1 Rapid Traverse Speed



#### Function and Purpose

It is the highest speed for the machine tool, and the rapid traverse speed of each axis can be set by parameters in the CNC system. The upper limit speed is set based on the condition of the machine tool. Please refer to the machine tool manual for details.



#### Description

The Maximum Time for Exact Stop Check (Parm 010166) and Positioning Tolerance (Parm 100060) during rapid traverse.

- a) Parm 010166: Set the maximum time for detecting the axis positioning tolerance after rapid traverse positioning to a certain point. This parameter only takes effect when the axis parameter Parm 100060 Positioning Tolerance is not 0.
- b) Parm 100060: set the allowable exact stop error for the coordinate axis rapid traverse positioning.

0: The current axis has no positioning tolerance limit.

Greater than 0: When Parm 010166 Maximum Time for Exact Stop Check is reached, if the current axis machine coordinate still exceeds the set positioning tolerance, the CNC system will alarm.

The tool moves from the start point to the end point at the highest speed of each axis, and the rapid traverse speed is valid for G00, G28, and G29 commands.

(Note 1) The rapid traverse federate magnification is set based on the PLC editing and parameter setting, and generally has two types:

Type 1: Set the 4-stage magnification for 0%, 25%, 50%, and 100%.

Type 2: Set the magnification in 10% units, ranging from 0% to 100%.

## 7.2.2 Cutting Feedrate



### Function and Purpose

When the CNC system processes the parts, the cutting feedrate is specified by the address F and the number. The tool moves at the cutting feedrate programmed. The cutting feedrate is valid for G01, G02, and G03 commands. There are three command modes for the feedrate unit of the milling system: G93, G94, G95.



### Description

#### 1) Feed per minute

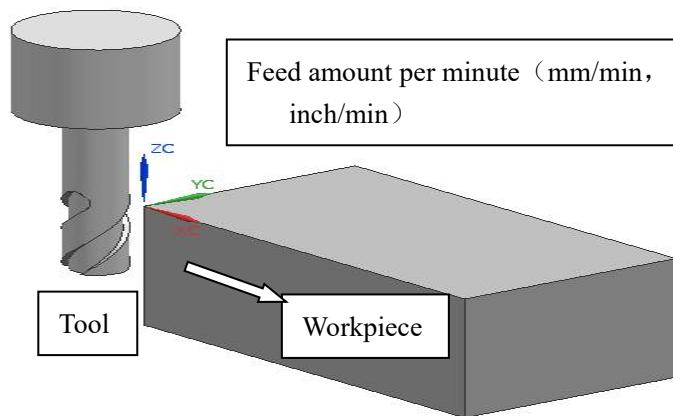
Programming format

G94 ; G code of feed per minute (Group 14)

F\_ ; Feedrate command (mm/min or inch/min)

After G94 (feed per minute) is specified, the feed per minute of the tool is directly specified by the value after F. G94 is a modal code. Once G94 is specified, it will remain valid until G95 (feed per revolution) is specified. When the power is turned on, the default setting is feed per minute.

The switch on the machine operation panel can be used to set the magnification for the feed per minute, and the magnification can be set from 0% to 150% (the override interval is determined by the MCP panel of the system). When G94 is specified, the feedrate F of the movement command specifies the movement amount of the tool per minute, with the unit mm/min (G21 mode) or inch/min (G20 mode).



Example: feed per minute

G01 X-20 Y-10 F300 ; Feedrate 300mm/min

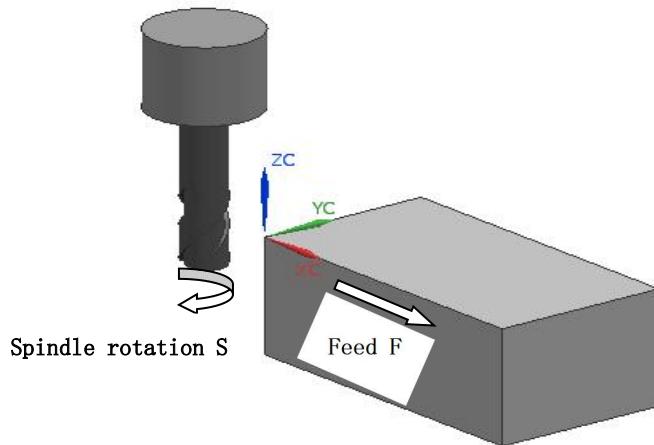
## 2) Feed per revolution

Programming format

G95 ; G code of feed per revolution (Group 14)

F\_ ; Feedrate command (mm/rev or inch/rev)

After G95 (feed per revolution) is specified, the value after F directly specifies the tool feed per revolution (G95) of the spindle. G95 is a modal code. Once G95 is specified, it will remain valid until G94 (feed per minute) is specified. With the switch on the machine operation panel, the federate override can be applied to the feed per revolution, and the magnification ranges from 0% to 150%.



Example: G95

M03 S1000

G01 X-50 Y-20 F0.2 ; feedrate per revolution is 0.2mm/rev

Correspondence between feed per revolution and feed per minute: when spindle speed and feed per revolution F are given, for example spindle speed S1000 and feed F0.2.

Feed per minute (F) = 1000 (spindle speed)  $\times$  0.2 (feed per revolution) = 200mm/min

## 3) Inverse time feed

Command format

G93 ; Inverse time feed command (Group 14)

F\_ ; Feedrate command (l/min)

By specifying G93, it becomes the inverse time specification mode. The inverse time feed function is realized by the reciprocal of the specified speed, that is, the time it takes to execute the current block. Use the F code to specify the inverse time FRN. The specified range of FRN is not restricted by the inch/metric input, and the range is from 0.001 to 9999.999.

$$FRN = \frac{1}{\text{Time (min)}} = \frac{\text{Speed}}{\text{Distance}}$$

Speed: mm/min (in metric) or inch/min (inch)

Distance: mm (in metric) or inch (in inch)

When linear interpolation (G01) or circular interpolation (G02, G03)

(1) If one program line is ended in 1 minute,

$$FRN = \frac{1}{\text{Time (min)}} = \frac{1}{1 \text{ (min)}} = 1 \quad ; \quad F1 \text{ is specified in program.}$$

(2) If one program line is ended in 20 seconds,

$$FRN = \frac{1}{\text{Time (sec)/60}} = \frac{1}{20/60 \text{ (min)}} = 3 \quad ; \quad F3 \text{ is specified in program.}$$

(3) When the traverse time for F0.5 is specified, the time needed for execution of one program line is,

$$\text{Time (min)} = \frac{1}{FRN} = \frac{1}{0.5} = 2 \quad ; \quad 2 \text{ minutes are needed.}$$

(4) When the traverse time for F5 is specified, the time needed for execution of one program line is,

$$\text{Time (sec)} = \frac{1}{FRN} = \frac{1}{5} = 0.2 \quad ; \quad 12 \text{ seconds are needed.}$$



### Example

G01 X10

G93

G01 X20 F10 ; X axis moves 10mm after 0.1 minute (6 second)

The correspondence between the inverse time feed and the feed per minute: when the inverse time feed F is given, for example F10. In the formula FRN=0.1(min)=6(sec), then it takes 6 seconds to move the X axis 10mm. the feed rate per minute (F)=10/0.1=100mm/min.



### Note

- 1) G93, G94, G95 are in the same group (Group 14). They are modal G codes, and mutually cancelable. G94 is the default modal.
- 2) When F is designated in G93 mode and the calculated speed exceeds the maximum cutting speed, the actual speed is clamped to the maximum cutting feed rate.
- 3) When circular interpolation is used in G93 mode, the speed is calculated from the arc radius,

not from the actual moving distance of the program line. Therefore, when the arc radius is longer than the arc distance, the actual time slows down; and when the arc radius is shorter than the arc distance, the actual time speeds up. The cutting feed in a canned cycle can also use inverse time feed.

- 4) The G93 command inverse time feed mode should be specified separately.

### 7.2.3 2nd Feedrate



#### Function and Purpose

The second feedrate E, which is different from the feedrate F, is generally used to limit the feedrate at the end of the block. For example, in NURBS curve interpolation, F command specifies the feedrate during interpolation, and E specifies the feedrate at the end of interpolation.

The feedrate F is a modal command, and the second feedrate E is a non-modal command, and it is used when the second feedrate is required. If E is not specified, 0 is the default.

The second feedrate is mainly used in more complicated interpolation control, and is currently only used in NURBS curve interpolation (G06.3).

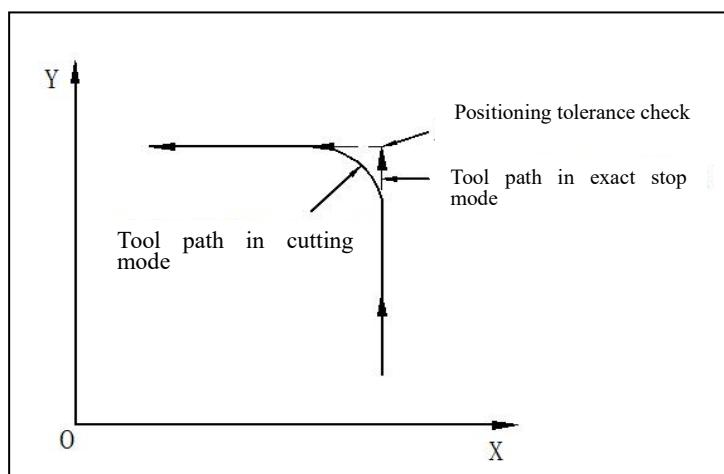
(Note 1) The feedrate override has been configured in parameters 010308 to 010328, and ranges from 0% to 120%.

## 7.3 Feed Control Mode



#### Function and Purpose

During cutting and feed, the trajectory of the tool is different in different control modes. There are two cutting feed control modes for the CNC controller: exact stop and continuous cutting. For parts needing sharp edges and corners, exact stop control is used; while parts with fillet edge or small line segment programs, the continuous cutting is used.



The correspondence between the two control modes is as follows:

Cutting mode	G code	Modal	Group No.	Description
Exact stop	G09	Non-modal	00	The tool decelerates at the end of the block and the positioning tolerance check is performed. Then the next block is executed.
	G61	Modal	12	The tool decelerates at the end of the block and the positioning tolerance check is performed. Then the next block is executed.
Continuous cutting	G64 (G05.1 Q0)	Modal		The tool executes the next block without deceleration at the end of the block.



### Description

#### 1) Exact stop control

##### **Non-modal exact stop G09**

G09 is a non-modal command, which is only valid in the block where the G09 is specified.

##### **Modal exact stop G61**

G61 is a modal command (group 12). Once it is specified, the function remains valid until G64 is specified.

#### 2) Continuous cutting control G64

(1) G64 is a modal command (group 12). Once it is specified, this function is valid until G61 is specified.

(2) For continuous cutting, whether to perform exact stop check at the corner between line segments can be set by parameter G64 Parm 010169 (enable exact stop check at corner).

(3) The G64 is to set whether the exact stop at corner with G64 is performed. When this parameter is set to 1, the CNC system will enable the exact stop check at corner with modal G64.

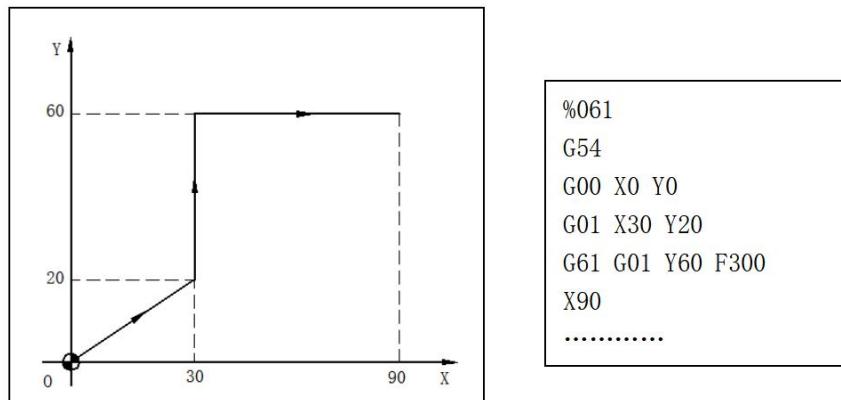
(4) In modal G64, if the feed length of the two adjacent straight lines is less than or equal to 5mm and the vector angle is less than or equal to 36°, the CNC system will automatically adopt the arc transition, which is not controlled by this parameter.



## Example

### Example 1

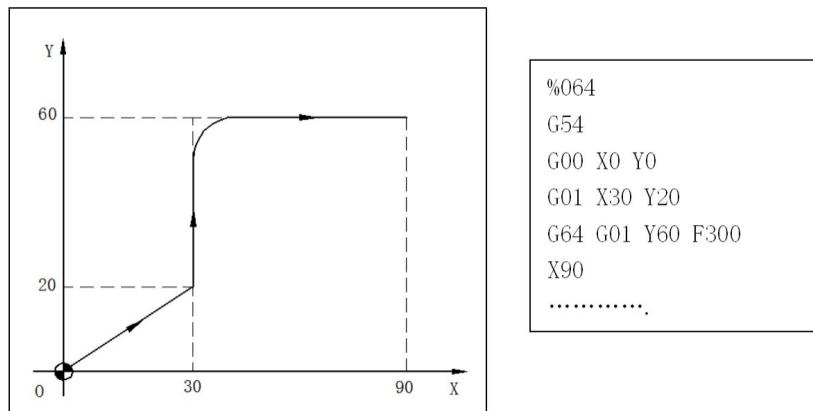
Programming for the contour as shown in the figure: The programmed contour is required to match the actual contour.



The programmed contour with G61 is the same as the actual contour.

### Example 2

Programming for the contour as shown in the figure: Not stop is required between the blocks.



The programmed contour with G64 is different from the actual contour, and there is arc connecting between the line segments.



## Note

- 1) The difference between G61 and G09 is that G61 is a modal command, while G09 is a non-modal command.

2) The programming axes in each block after G61 must stop exactly at the end of the block, and then the next block is continued to be executed. The programmed contour with G61 and G09 conforms to the actual contour.

3) G64 (G05.1 Q0) continuous cutting mode:

When the programmed axes after G64 (G05.1 Q0) just start to decelerate (the programmed end point is not reached), the next block is executed. However, in the blocks with positioning commands (G00, G60) or with exact stop check (G09), and in blocks without motion commands, the positioning check is performed after the feedrate is decelerated to 0.

4) G61 and G64 (G05.1 Q0) are modal commands, which can be mutually cancelled.

5) The programmed contour with G64 (G05.1 Q0) is different from the actual contour. The difference depends on the F value and the angle between the two paths. The greater the F, the greater the difference.

## 7.4 Feedrate Control



### Function and Purpose

When the CNC system is running the program in speed control, the tool needs to automatically decelerate when performing circular processing and corner processing to reduce the load on the tool, thereby reducing the impact on the machine tool, and avoiding tool marks on the workpiece.



### Description

#### Circular speed control

(1) For circular cutting, the feedrate on the programmed path is controlled by the circular deceleration radius (Parm 040042) and the circular deceleration speed (Parm 040043).

a) Circular deceleration radius (Parm 040042): to set the maximum circular radius for deceleration. When the programmed circular radius is less than the set value, the feed cutting is executed at the set circular deceleration speed (040043). When the programmed circular radius is greater than the setting, the deceleration control is not performed. When 0 is set, the circular deceleration function is invalid.

b) Circular deceleration speed control (Parm 040043): to set the target speed for circular deceleration. When the programmed circular radius is smaller than the circular deceleration radius (040042), the feed cutting is executed based on the set value. When the programmed circular radius is greater than the circular deceleration radius (040043), the deceleration control is not performed. When 0 is set, the circular deceleration function is invalid.

(2) For the large circular radius, the speed control can be directly performed by circular interpolation, or can be performed by Parm 040149 (Whether Arc is Discrete into Straight Line).

Parm 040149 Whether Arc is Discretized into Straight Line: when the arc can be discrete into straight line, the arc can be discretized into the connection of tiny line segments. Then for the case where the straight line meets the arc or the arc meets the straight line, it can be equivalent to the straight line meets the straight line, and the speed at the junction of the two can be processed in the mode of deceleration at corner.

0: Turn off the function of arc discrete into straight line.

1: Turn on the function of arc discrete to straight line.

(3) When performing radius compensation, the automatic deceleration mode adopted for circular feedrate control is to use the parameter Parm 010044 Radius Compensation Circular Speed Strategy.

Radius compensation circular speed strategy Parm 010044: This parameter is used to adjust the circular speed after radius compensation.

0: Turn off the function

1: Speed after radius compensation = (circular radius after radius compensation / circular radius before radius compensation) \* programmed speed

2: Speed after radius compensation = sqrt (circular radius after radius compensation/circular radius before radius compensation) \* programmed speed

11 to 19: Speed after radius compensation = programmed speed\* (0.1 to 0.9)

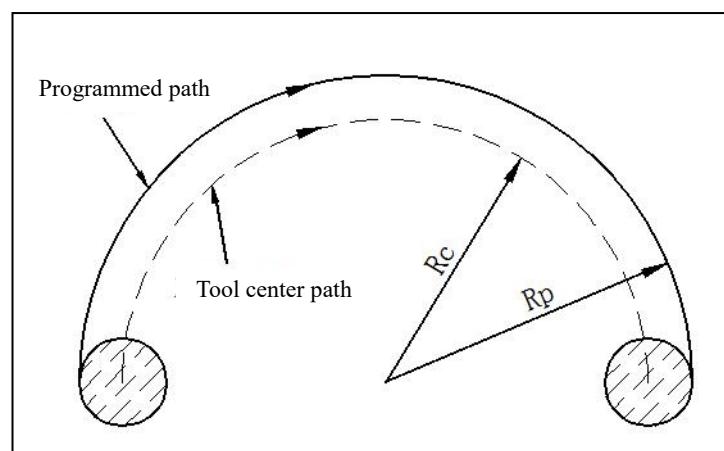
(Note 1) Modes 1 and 2 are the feedrate for the programmed path, which is determined by the programmed value F of the circular cutting feedrate and the circular radius, as shown in the figure. In the tool radius compensation mode, this function is valid.

$$1: F \times \frac{R_c}{R_p}$$

$$2: F \times \sqrt{\frac{R_c}{R_p}}$$

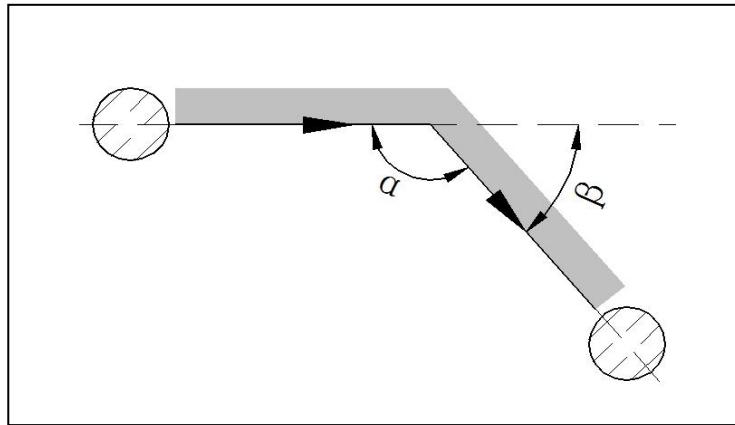
R<sub>c</sub>: Tool center path radius

R<sub>p</sub>: Programmed radius



## Corner speed control

When the CNC system is running the program, it uses the method shown in the figure to determine whether it is a corner or a straight line (or basically a straight line) between the



program blocks.

In the figure,  $\alpha$  is the minimum internal angle (degree) of the corner to determine whether it is a corner of the connection between the line segment and the line segment, and the  $\beta$  angle is to determine whether it is a straight line or basically a straight line.

### (1) Parameter related to the corner ( $\alpha$ angle):

- a) Parm 040141 Minimum internal angle for corner smoothing: During continuous small line segment interpolation, local speed reduction can be performed based on the actual programmed trajectory. When the sharp corner of the contour needs to be highlighted, the speed should be reduced to zero at the top of the sharp corner. This parameter is used to set the value of this angle. If the processed angle is less than this angle, the exact stop will be performed; if it is greater than this angle, other ways will be used to plan the speed reduction processing at this angle. If the maximum directed angle is set to  $45^\circ$  between the two small line segments which are allowed to be compressed and merged, this parameter should be set to  $45$ .
- b) Parm 040144 Deceleration scale factor at corner: For the polyline segment whose corner angle is greater than the minimum smoothing internal angle (040141), the feed is executed at the corner with circular transition, and the deceleration scale factor at corner can be used to control the deceleration speed at corner. The smaller the set value, the smaller the deceleration speed at corner, the smaller the corner roundness, and the contour accuracy is theoretically higher; but the milling time at the corner becomes longer and the efficiency is reduced.

### (2) Parameter related to collinear determination ( $\beta$ angle)

- a) Maximum angle threshold in collinear determination: This parameter sets the maximum exterior angle between two adjacent line segments which are determined to be collinear. When the exterior angle is less than this value (radian value), the two line segments are collinear, otherwise they are not. 0.017 is the default value.
- (3) For the length and deviation of the small line segment spline fitting, the upper limit length of the small line segment (mm) (Parm 040140), the lower limit length of the small line segment (mm) (Parm 040145), and the allowable contour error of the small line segment trajectory (Parm 040143) ) are used for the spline fitting processing of the CNC system.
- a) The upper limit length of the small line segment (mm) (Parm 040140): used in conjunction with the lower limit length of the small line segment to form the area range for the small line segment spline fitting.
  - b) Allowable contour error of small line segment trajectory (Parm 040143): During continuous small line segment interpolation, the small line segment can be compressed and merged based on the actual programmed trajectory. This parameter is to set the allowable contour error between the compressed and merged small line segment and the original programmed trajectory. When the contour error exceeds the set value, it will not be compressed.
  - c) The lower limit length of small line segment (mm) (Parm 040145): During spline interpolation, the spline smoothing (fitting) needs to be performed on the small line segment based on the actual programmed trajectory. This parameter is to set the shortest length of small line segment where the smoothing is allowed. If the length of the small line segment is less than the set value, the smoothing of this line segment is not performed.

## 7.5 Adaptive Feed Control



### Function and Purpose

When CNC machine is performing cutting feed, the system detects the load current of spindle servo motor or the feed axis (the largest cutting load axis of X, Y, Z) servo motor during cutting, and compares it with the preset value (% of the rated load) in the tool data. If it does not match, the feedrate will be automatically changed to prevent the motor from overloading. The following highlights the adaptive feed parameters and how to use.



### Description

- 1) Enable adaptive feed

Machine user parameter 010104 New Function Debugging is set to 0x1000000 for enabling adaptive feed.

- 2) Parameter setting based on adaptive feed of spindle/feed axis

The function needs to configure relevant parameters on the adaptive feed setting interface. After

setting required target setting value and load tolerance, the adaptive feed is enabled to machine workpiece.

The three adaptive-feed application scenarios are listed as following.

Adaptive feed based on spindle, override is performed only to spindle. (Need to set spindle target setting value and spindle load tolerance, and both are set to 0)

Tool No.	Spindle target setting value	Spindle load tolerance (%)	Feed axis target setting value (%)	Feed axis load tolerance (%)
-	Non-zero	Non-zero	0	0

Adaptive feed based on feed axis, override is performed only to feed axis. (Need to set servo axis target setting value and fed axis load tolerance, and both are set to 0)

Tool No.	Spindle target setting value	Spindle load tolerance (%)	Feed axis target setting value (%)	Feed axis load tolerance (%)
-	0	00	Non-zero	Non-zero

### 3) G command programming

After parameters are set, users can use the adaptive feed by the following two ways.

a. G command control: Achieve adaptive feed enabling/disabling with G115L17P1/G115L17P0.

G115L17P1: Enable adaptive feed

G115L17P0: Disable adaptive feed

Reset or omit G115 L17 P0. After current program running is completed, adaptive feed is disabled automatically. For example,

G115L17P1: enable adaptive feed

G54G01X0Y0;

Y20;

.....

G115L17P0; disable adaptive feed

b. Physical key control: In PLC, users can enable and disable adaptive feed through the associated point of panel key G3637.2. If adaptive feed is enabled by the key, it will not be automatically disabled after the program ends, but continue to take effect, until users disable it by the button.



#### Note

1) When adaptive feed is enabled in PLC, the G command control (G115L17P1 or G115L17P0) cannot be used.

2) G115L17P1/G115L17P0 is to enable/disable adaptive feed, nothing to do with G115 (redefining of rotary axis angle resolution).

## 8 Position Command Function

### 8.1 Command and Incremental Command Mode 1 (G90/G91)



#### Function and Purpose

There are two modes to define the position of the target point: absolute position and incremental position.

For easier programming, the definition of the position should fit the workpiece drawing. When a fixed reference point is given in the drawing, it is more convenient to use absolute programming; and when the drawing size is given by the spacing between the contour nodes, it is more convenient to use incremental programming.

There are two modes of absolute command and incremental command in the CNC system: mode I and mode II. The mode I can be executed in lathe system (T) and milling system (M), and the mode II can only be executed in lathe system (T).



#### Command Format

Mode I of absolute command and incremental command.

G90 IP\_ Absolute programming

Parameter	Meaning
IP	By absolute command G90, the traverse command is always executed with the workpiece coordinate system as the starting point

G91 IP\_ Incremental programming

Parameter	Meaning
IP	By incremental command G91, the traverse command is always executed with the current point as the starting point



#### Description

Absolute command G90: define the address of the target point. The value after the address word is the coordinate value in the workpiece coordinate system;

Incremental command G91: define the address of the target point. The value after the address word is the directional distance value from the target point to the previous point;

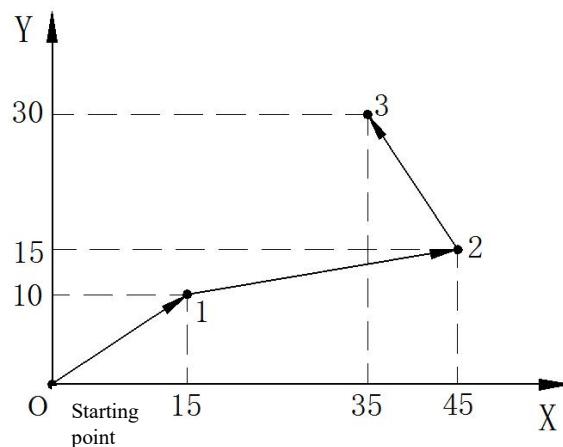
When using G90, G91 commands, the coordinate movement values after the commands can be

specified in absolute mode or incremental mode, but when defining the circular trajectory, the radius R and circle center I, J, K values must be incremental values. G90 and G91 are modal commands and can be mutually cancelled. G90 is the default.



### Example

Example 1: The origin is the starting point, programming with G90 and G91; the tool is required to move from the origin to points 1, 2, and 3 in order.



G90 programming  
%  
G54  
G00 X0 Y0 M3 S1000  
G90 G01 X15 Y10 F400  
X45 Y15  
X35 Y30  
M30

G91 programming  
%  
G54  
G00 X0 Y0 M3 S1000  
G91 G01 X15 Y10 F400  
X30 Y5  
X-10 Y15  
M30



### Note

- 1) When using the G90 command to run the program, the system is in the absolute mode. During running of the traverse command, the workpiece coordinate system is always used as the starting point to move to the workpiece coordinate system position specified by the program, regardless of the current position.
- 2) When using the G91 command to run the program, the system is in the incremental mode. During running of the traverse command, the current position is always the starting point and the value specified in the program is used as a relative value for moving.
- 3) G90 and G91 can be used in the same block, but pay attention to the difference caused by their order.

- 4) The mode 1 of absolute command and incremental command can be executed in both lathe system and milling system.

## 8.2 Absolute Command and Incremental Command Mode II (X, Z/U, W) (T)



### Function and Purpose

There are two modes of absolute command and incremental command in the CNC system: mode I and mode II. The mode I can be executed in lathe system (T) and milling system (M), and the mode II can only be executed in lathe system (T).

When using mode II for programming, the switching between absolute position and incremental position is simple. It is especially suitable for mixed programming, but it occupies the axis name definition of the auxiliary axis, so this mode is more suitable for lathe system.



### Command Format

If users need to use the mode II of absolute command and incremental command in lathe system, it is necessary to configure the parameter 040033 [UVW incremental programming enable] in the channel parameter.

When the parameter 040033 is specified as 1, the incremental value programming can use U, V, W to represent the incremental values on X, Y, Z axis respectively. At this time, the absolute value is still specified by X, Y, and Z with G90. G90 is the default and does not need to be defined. The format of mode II is: U, V, and W are for incremental programming, and X, Y, and Z are for absolute programming. Of course, it can also be executed if the mode I is used for programming at this time.

When parameter 040033 is specified as 0, the mode I is enabled. At this time, U, V, W definition for incremental position cannot be executed.

The definition of channel parameter 040033 is shown in the figure below:

040027	Spindle speed display mode	0	Save
040028	Axis No. of spindle display	5,-1,-1,-1	Restart
040029	EX max deceleration time	0	Restart
040030	Default feedrate mppm of CH	3000.0000	Save
040031	Feedrate in dryrun (mppm)	2000.0000	Save
040032	Diameter programming	0x0	Reset
040033	UVW incremental programming	0	Save
040034	Chamfer	0	Reset
040035	Angle programming	0	Save



### Description

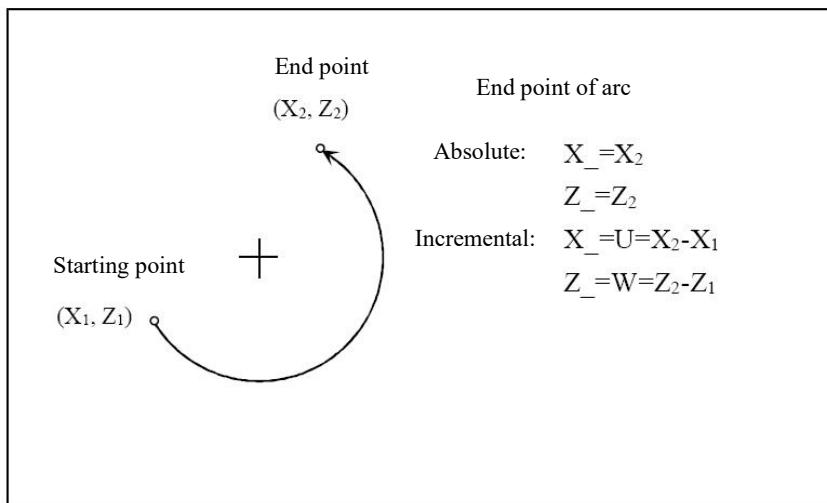
## 1. Linear incremental programming

G01 X10 Z5 Move to 10 on X of the workpiece coordinate, and 5 on Z of the workpiece coordinate;

G01 U10 W10 Move in the positive direction 10 on X based on the current coordinates, and move in the positive direction 10 on Z based on the current coordinates.

## 2. Circular incremental programming

For circular programming, in addition to specifying the end position by absolute programming, incremental programming can also be used to specify the incremental value in each direction of the arc (UVW is also used), and it can also use XYZ and UVW for mixed programming.

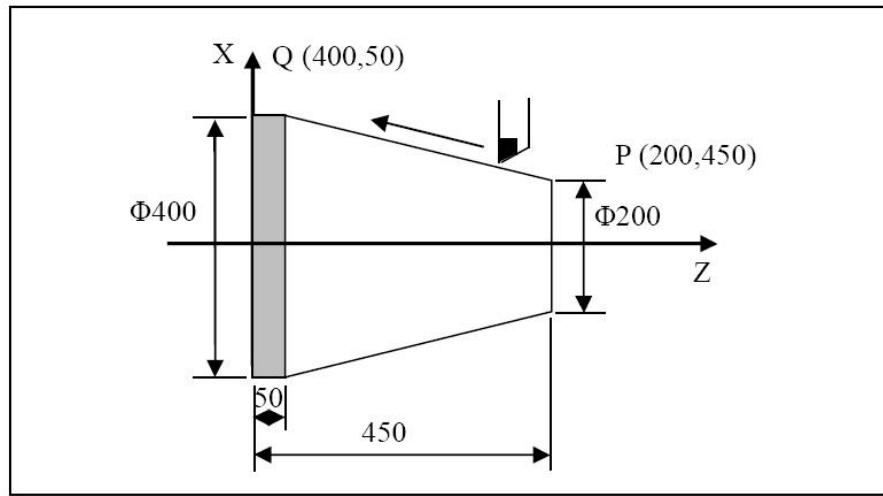


### Example

Tool moves to Q from P (The diameter value is on X axis)

Absolute command: G90X400Z50

Incremental command: 1. G91X200Z-400  
2. U200W-400



### Note

- 1) UVW programming is only used for lathe system.
- 2) G91 is a modal command, and cannot be canceled by itself. The lines after G91 are all in G91 programming, and its modal can be canceled by G90.

## 8.3 Inch/Metric (G20/G21)



### Function and Purpose

Users can select the unit of size through G20, G21.



### Command Format

G20 IP\_ Inch

Parameter	Meaning
IP	After G20 is specified, the traverse distance after G20 is in inch.

G21 IP\_ Metric

Parameter	Meaning
IP	After G21 is specified, the traverse distance after G21 is in metric.



### Description

Only the command unit can be switched with G20/G21, but not the input unit.

G20/G21 only works on the linear axis, and is invalid to the rotary axis.



### Note

- 1) G20 and G21 are modal commands and can be mutually cancelled. The default is G21 after the system is powered on.
- 2) The unit of data input in the G code is not related to the unit of data displayed on the HMI interface. G20 and G21 are only used to select the unit of data input in processing G codes, and cannot change the data unit displayed on the HMI interface.
- 3) Parameter 000025 [Inch/Metric] in NC parameters is used to set the data unit of the coordinate displayed on the interface.

## 9 Delay Function

### 9.1 Delay Function



#### Function and Purpose

This function can suspend the movement of the machine tool by G04 X\_ or P\_ command to delay the start of the next program. The delay time unit is X for seconds and P for milliseconds.



#### Command Format

G04 X\_\_ / P\_\_

Parameter	Meaning
X/P	Dwell time
X	Unit: second
P	Unit: millisecond



#### Example

Command	G04 X5	G04 X2.5	G04 P2000	G04 P1000.5
Delay seconds	5	2.5	2	1



#### Description

- 1) When the delay time is specified by X, the decimal point command is valid.
- 2) When the delay time is specified by P, the commands after the decimal point are ignored.
- 3) If there is a cutting command in the previous block, the delay time will be started to be calculated after the block is stopped.
- 4) When the machine tool is locked, the delay command is also valid.
- 5) During the automatic operation, users can specify G04 to suspend the tool feed, and the subsequent blocks will be executed automatically after the dwell time is reached.
- 6) The command value range of the dwell time: X minimum value is 0, maximum value 2000; P minimum value is 0, maximum value 2147400.



### Note

- 1) When using this function, please issue the X or P command after the G04 command to make it clear that X or P is executed.
- 2) The number followed by X cannot exceed 2000, otherwise the system will alarm "Syntax-Illegal number".

# 10 Coordinate System

## 10.1 Overview

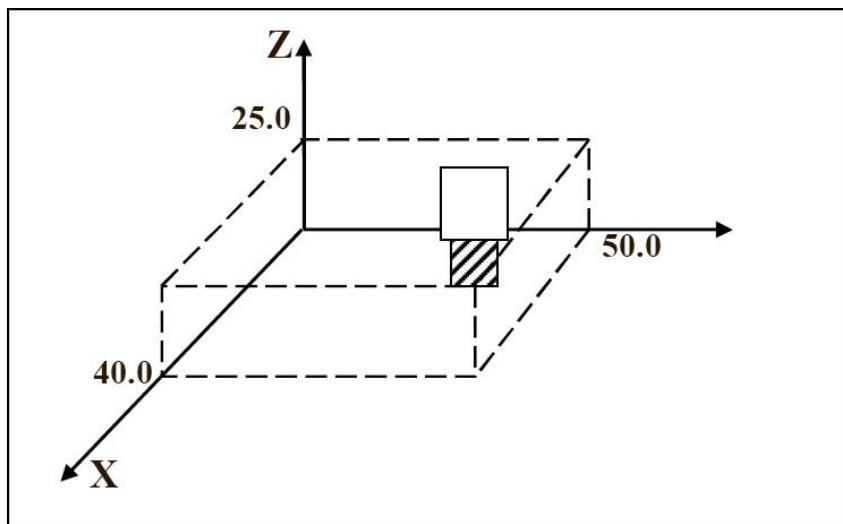


### Function and Purpose

In processing of machine tool, when a position reached by the tool is preset, the tool can move to the specified position. This position should be given by the coordinate value in a certain coordinate system, and the coordinate value is specified by the programmed axis. In this way, the required workpiece can be processed based on the program.

When the 3 programmed axes are X, Y and Z axes, the coordinate values are specified as follows:

X\_Y\_Z\_: This command is called size word.



The tool position specified by X40.0Y50.0Z25.0



### Description

The system supports the following three coordinate systems for users to choose: (1) machine coordinate system; (2) workpiece coordinate system; (3) local coordinate system.

The machine coordinate system is the fixed coordinate system of the machine tool, which represents the position inherently determined by the machine tool.

The workpiece coordinate system is the coordinate system used by the programmer during programming, and generally the reference point on the workpiece is regarded as the coordinate origin.

The local coordinate system is a coordinate system created on the workpiece coordinate system in order to simplify the creation of part of the processing program.



## Note

The local coordinate system (G52) is valid in the coordinate system specified by workpiece coordinate systems 1 to 6.

## 10.2 Machine Coordinate System



### Function and Purpose

The machine zero is a fixed mechanical point on the machine tool. The coordinate system established by the machine tool manufacturer with this point as the origin is referred to as the machine tool coordinate system.

After turning on the power, manual reference point return is executed to establish the machine coordinate system. Once the mechanical coordinate system is established, it remains unchanged until the power is cut off.



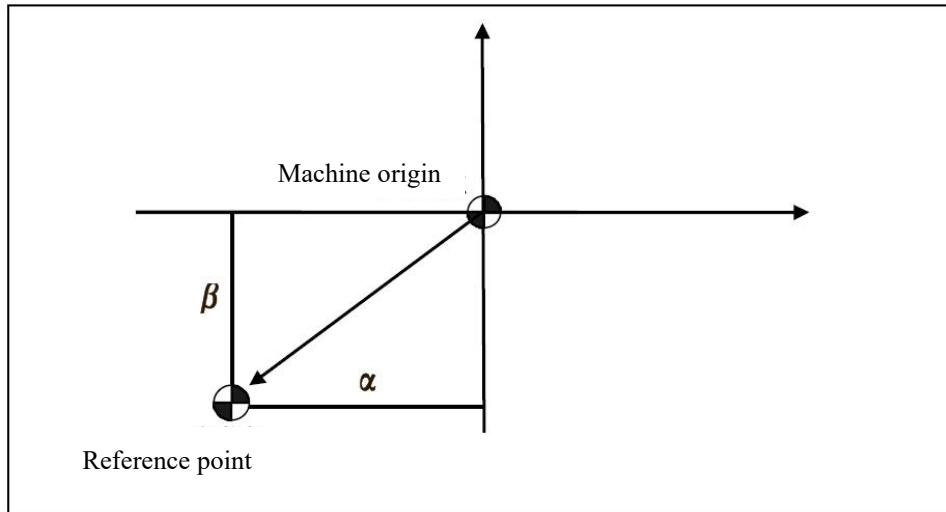
### Command Format

G53 X\_\_ / Y\_\_ / Z\_\_ ;    Absolute size (target position in machine coordinate system)



### Description

- 1) G53 is a non-modal command, which is only valid in the block where the machine coordinate system is specified. When user needs to execute direct machine tool coordinate system programming, G53 must be specified in the current line;
- 2) The target position specified by G53 cannot be in incremental programming, only absolute programming can be used. When the incremental command (G91) is specified, the G53 command is ignored.
- 3) When G53 command is specified, the tool radius compensation, tool length compensation, tool nose radius compensation and other functions are cleared.
- 4) Before specifying the G53 command, the machine coordinate system must be set. Therefore, the reference point must be returned manually or automatically by the G28 command after power-on. When an absolute encoder is used, this operation is unnecessary.
- 5) Machine coordinate system is set before calling G53. The system must establish the machine coordinate system through the reference point return.
- 6) The system reference point does not necessarily coincide with the origin of the machine coordinate system, and the relationship between them is shown in the figure below.



### 10.3 Workpiece Coordinate System



#### Function and Purpose

The workpiece coordinate system is used by the programmer during programming. The programmer selects a known point on the workpiece as the zero of the workpiece coordinate system. The introduction of the workpiece coordinate system is to simplify programming and reduce calculations.

There are three ways to establish a workpiece coordinate system:

- (1) Use the workpiece coordinate system setting command (G92) to establish a workpiece coordinate system;
- (2) Use the workpiece coordinate system selection commands (G54~G59) to establish a workpiece coordinate system;
- (3) Use the extended workpiece coordinate system selection command (G54.01~G54.60) to establish a workpiece coordinate system;

For the lathe, in the absolute tool offset compensation mode, the workpiece coordinate zero can be set with the T command.

In addition, the zero of workpiece coordinate system established in the above ways can be modified by G10 command, and a new workpiece coordinate system can be formed.

#### 10.3.1 Workpiece Coordinate System Setting (G92)



#### Function and Purpose

The meaning of the G92 command is to determine the position of the workpiece origin through the coordinate value of the tool location in the workpiece coordinate system. The position of the workpiece coordinate system changes with the change of the tool position when this command

is executed. The prerequisite for correct processing is that the operator must correctly set the tool position on the set coordinates through the tool setting.



### Command Format

G92 IP(X...Y...Z...) ;

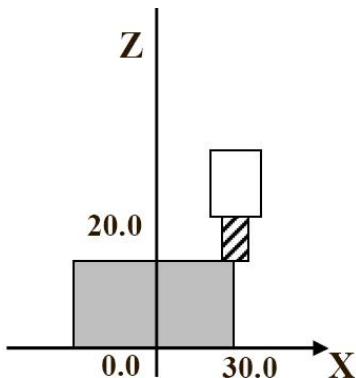
Parameter	Meaning
IP	The directed distance from the origin of the coordinate system to the starting point of the tool

Before executing the program containing the G92 command, user must perform the tool setting operation to ensure that the workpiece coordinate system origin established by the G92 command is consistent with the programmed origin.

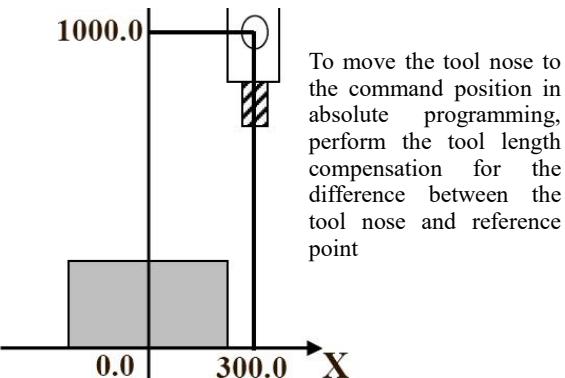


### Example

Example 1: use G92X30.0Z20.0; command to set the coordinate system (tool nose is the starting point of program)



Example 2: use G92X300.0Z1000.0; command to set the coordinate system (The starting point of program is the reference point on shank)



### Note

- 1) When executing this block, only the workpiece coordinate system is established, and the tool does not move;
- 2) G92 is a non-modal command;
- 3) After the length compensation is added, if the coordinate system is set by the G92 command, the set coordinate system is the coordinate position before compensation. However, the G92

command must not be in the same line with the G command which causes the change of length compensation vector, for example, it cannot run in the following blocks;

- The block where G43/G44 is specified;
- The block where H code is specified in the G43/G44 mode;
- The block where G49 is specified in G43/G44 mode;
- In the G43/G44 mode, the block where is vector is restored after the compensation vector is temporarily cancelled by G28, G53, etc.

In addition, when the workpiece coordinate system is set by G92 command, the blocks before it stop, and the tool length compensation amount selected by MDI cannot be changed.

### 10.3.2 Workpiece Coordinate System Selection G54—G59 (G54.X)



#### Function and Purpose

The six standard workpiece coordinate systems preset in the system can be selected through the six commands G54 to G59. The standard workpiece coordinate system zero is manually input through the HMI interface.



#### Description

In the control system, G54 — G59 commands can be used to select the current workpiece coordinate system among 6 preset workpiece coordinate systems. When there are many workpiece sizes and there are relatively multiple different marking datums, the coordinate values of several datum points in the machine coordinate system can be input into the system in advance through MDI as the coordinate origin of G54 — G59, and the system will remember these points automatically. Once one of the G54—G59 commands is executed, the origin of the workpiece coordinate system is the current programmed origin, and the absolute coordinates in the subsequent blocks are the values relative to the programmed origin.

G54 Workpiece coordinate system 1	G55 Workpiece coordinate system 2
G56 Workpiece coordinate system 3	G57 Workpiece coordinate system 4
G58 Workpiece coordinate system 5	G59 Workpiece coordinate system 6



#### Example

G54 G90 G00 X100 Y100 Z5; Move to X100 Y100 Z5 position in G54 coordinate system  
G55; Set G55 as the current coordinate system  
G00X30Y30; Move to the point X30Y30 in G55  
G52X45Y15; Establish a local coordinate system G52 in the current G55 coordinate

system

G00G90X35Y20; Move to the point X35Y20 in G52  
G53X35Y35; Move to the point X35Y35 in G53 (machine coordinate system)



#### Note

- 1) The workpiece coordinate systems G54 to G59 are established after the power is turned on and the reference point is returned.
- 2) G54 coordinate system is automatically selected when the power is turned on.
- 3) Even if the workpiece coordinate system is switched by G54 to G59 and G54.X, the tool radius compensation of the designated axis will not be cancelled.
- 4) G54 to G59 and G54.X are modal commands.

### 10.3.3 Extended Workpiece Coordinate System Selection (G54.x)



#### Function and Purpose

In addition to the six workpiece coordinate systems specified by G54 to G59 for users to choose, the milling system also provides the extended workpiece coordinate systems.

The system provides 60 extended workpiece coordinate systems for users to choose.



#### Command Format

G54.X; To select No. X extended workpiece coordinate system

Parameter	Meaning
X	The index number of the extended workpiece coordinate system, ranges from 1 to 60, a total of 60.



E  
x  
a  
m

#### Example

%1234

G54.18

G90 G00 X100 Y100 Z50; Move to X=100 Y=100 Z=50 in the 18th extension coordinate system

M30



#### Note

Once the workpiece coordinate system is selected, it remains valid until it is selected by another workpiece coordinate system

Select the standard workpiece coordinate system 1 (G54) when the power is turned on

G54.1 P1 additional workpiece coordinate system 1

G54.1 P2 additional workpiece coordinate system 2

:

G54.1 P60 additional workpiece coordinate system 60

#### 10.3.4 Workpiece Coordinate System Modification (G10)



##### Function and Purpose

Generally, the operator can modify the external workpiece origin offset or the workpiece origin offset through the HMI interface to change the workpiece coordinate system. And with this function, G10 command can be used to realize the above changes in the program. For details, see "Chapter 13 Programmable Data Input"



##### Command Format

G10 L2 Pp IP\_;

Parameter	Meaning
P=0	External workpiece zero offset value
P=1 to 6	Workpiece zero offset of workpiece coordinate systems 1 to 6
IP	the workpiece origin offset of each axis in the absolute mode (G90); and the offset added to the workpiece zero set originally of each axis in the incremental mode (G91), and the result of the addition of the two is the new workpiece zero offset



##### Note

After the external workpiece zero offset is set, when the coordinate system is set with G92, the coordinate system is not affected by the external workpiece zero offset. For example, when "G92X100.0Y80.0" is commanded, the coordinate system where the current position of the tool is X=100.0, Y=80.0 is specified.

## 10.4 Local Coordinate System Setting (G52)



### Function and Purpose

When programming on the workpiece coordinate system, for convenience, users can create a sub-workpiece-coordinate-system in the workpiece coordinate system. Such a sub-coordinate-system is called a local coordinate system.

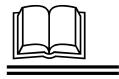


### Command Format

G52 IP\_ ; To set local coordinate system

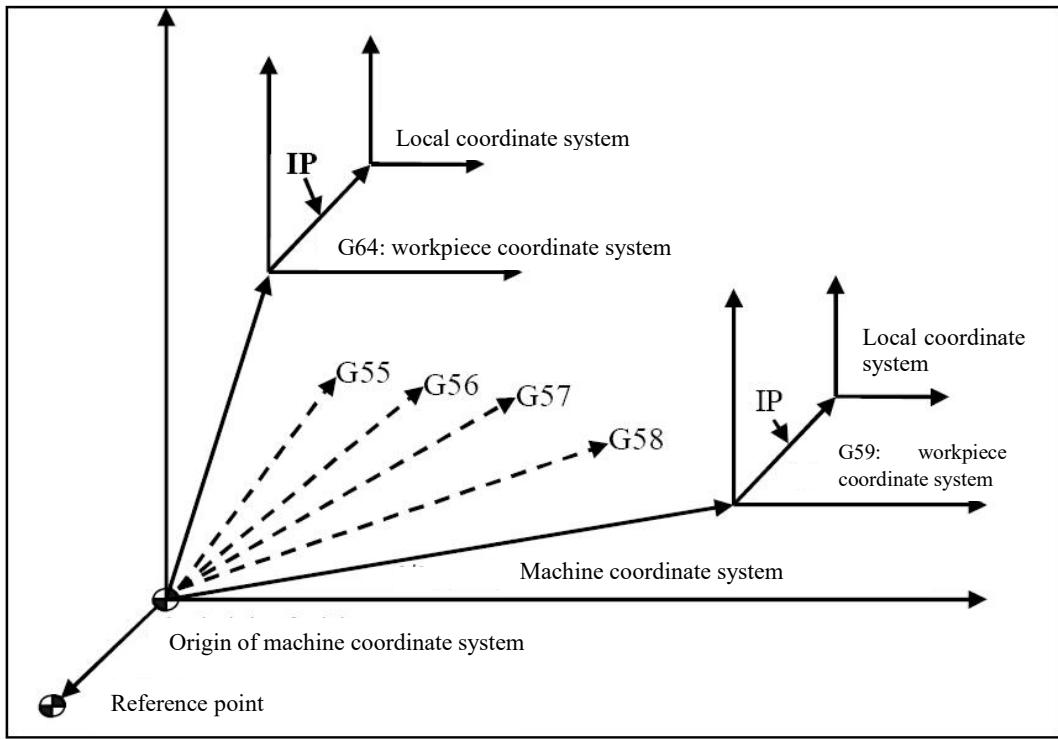
G52 IP 0; To cancel coordinate system

Parameter	Meaning
IP	To specify the origin of local coordinate system



### Description

- 1) Use G52 IP\_ ; command to set the local coordinate system in all workpiece coordinate systems. The IP value is the coordinate position in the workpiece coordinate system, and the position in the workpiece coordinate system is the origin of the local coordinate system.
- 2) Once the local coordinate system is set, the movement command of the specified axis will be the coordinates in the local coordinate system;
- 3) If users need to cancel the local coordinate system or specify the coordinate value in the workpiece coordinate system, coincide the origin of the local coordinate system with the origin of the workpiece coordinate system.



Local coordinate system



### Example

%1234

G55; Select G55, assuming that the coordinates of G55 in the machine tool coordinate system are (10, 20)

G1 X10Y10F1000; Move to the machine coordinate system (20, 30)

G52 X30Y30; Establish a local coordinate system based on all workpiece coordinates, the origin of the local coordinate system is (30, 30)

G1 X0Y0; Move to the origin of the local coordinate system (the current position of the machine tool coordinate system is (40, 50))

G52 X0Y0; Cancel local coordinate system setting, and the system restores to G55 coordinate system

G1 X10Y10; Move to the machine coordinate system (20, 30)

M30



### Note

- 1) When the manual reference point return of an axis is performed, the zero of the local

coordinate system of the axis is consistent with the zero of the workpiece coordinate system. The result is the same as the result of the command G52 α0. (A: axis returning to reference point)

- 2) The local coordinate system setting does not change the workpiece coordinate system and the machine coordinate system.
- 3) When the workpiece coordinate system is set by G92 command, if the coordinate values of all axes are not commanded, the local coordinate system of the axis for which the coordinate value is not specified will not be cancelled, and will remain unchanged.
- 4) The offset in tool radius compensation is temporarily cleared with G52.
- 5) After the G52 block, the motion command is immediately specified in absolute mode

## 10.5 Coordinate Plane Selection (G17, G18, G19)



### Function and Purpose

Coordinate plane selection G17/18/19 commands are used for the selection of the machining plane in operations such as circular interpolation, tool radius compensation (M), and rotation transformation (M).



### Description

G code	Plane	X	Y	Z
G17	XY plane	X axis or its parallel axis	Y axis or its parallel axis	Z axis or its parallel axis
G18	ZX plane			
G19	YZ plane			

- X, Y, Z are determined by the axis address appearing in the block where G17, G18 or G19 is specified;
- When the axis address is omitted in the G17, G18 or G19 block, it is considered that the basic 3-axis address is omitted;
- When G17, G18, G19 are not specified in the block, the plane remains unchanged;
- The movement command has nothing to do with the plane selection;
- Parameter 000012 is used to set the tool length compensation axis;



### Example

G17X\_Y\_ ; XY plane

G18X\_Z\_ ; XZ plane

G19Y\_Z\_ ; YZ plane

X\_Y\_ ; YZ plane is not changed

G17 ; XY plane

G18 ; XZ plane

G18Y\_ ; XZ plane, the movement on Y has no relationship with planes.



### Note

G17, G18, and G19 are modal functions, which can be mutually cancelled. The default modal is G17 after power-on. The movement command has nothing to do with plane selection. For

example, when G17 G01 Z10 is commanded, the Z axis still moves.

## 10.6 Machine Origin and 2nd, 3rd, 4th, and 5th Reference Points



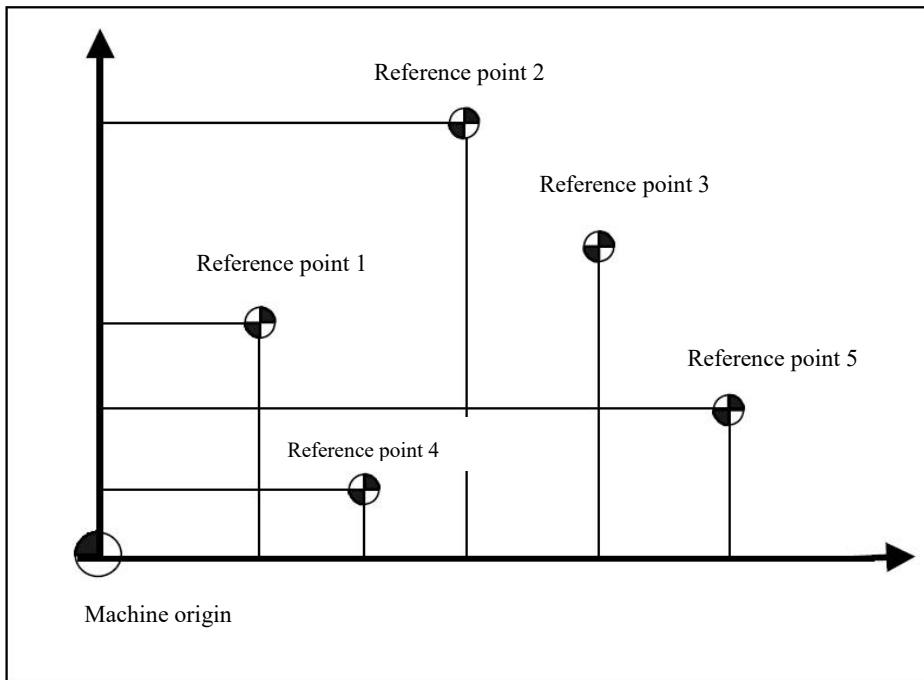
### Function and Purpose

There is a fixed mechanical point on the machine tool which can be used as the reference point of the machine tool. This point is referred to as the machine origin, and its position is determined by the dog of reference point return or the grating zero point. The machine origin is the reference point of the basic mechanical coordinate system, and is a fixed mechanical point determined by the reference point return. The reference point return function can accurately move the tool to the set fixed position. The 1st, 2nd, 3rd, 4th, and 5th reference points are the positions preset with the coordinate values in the parameters based on the origin of the basic machine coordinate system.

The first reference point in this system is usually set to 0. The 2nd, 3rd, 4th, and 5th reference points are usually used for each buffer point and tool change point for the tool change action, so as to realize the correct tool change action. Therefore, when the parameter values of the second, third, fourth, and fifth reference points are set, please do not modify them at will, otherwise, the tool cannot be changed, the tool change action error or dangerous situation may occur.

The values of the 2nd, 3rd, 4th, and 5th reference points are set by parameters. The values are set based on the style of the magazine or the requirements of the machine tool manufacturer. Usually, the setting is completed before the machine leaves the factory.

Take axis 0 as an example, through the coordinate values set in the coordinate axis parameters (100017, 100021 to 100024), up to 5 reference points of the machine coordinate system can be specified.



## 10.7 Reference Point Return (G28/G29)



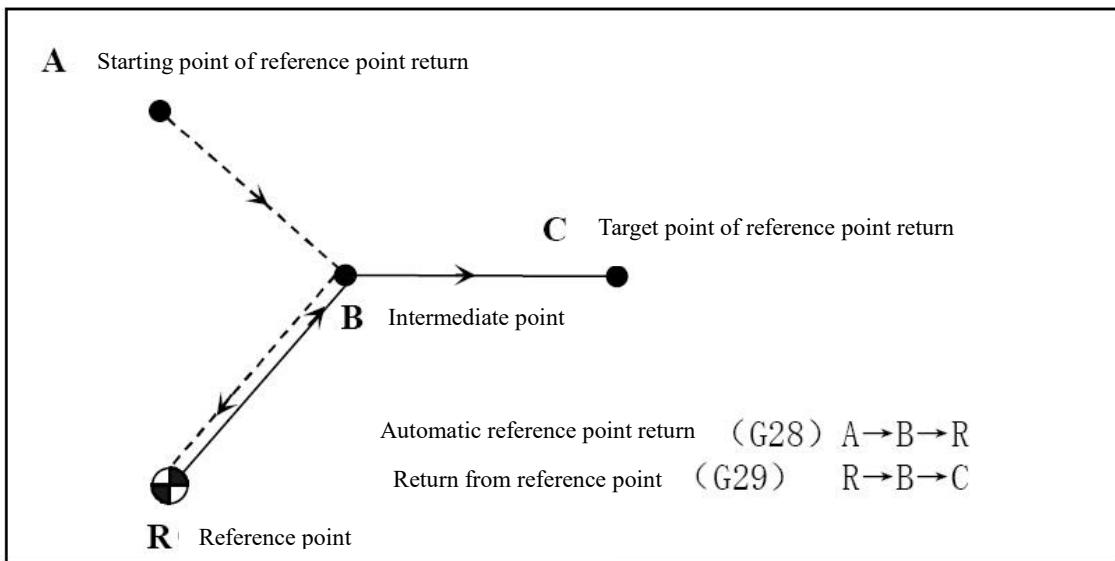
### Function and Purpose

Through automatic reference point return, the position of the machine tool can be corrected to make the positions for machining or tool change consistent.

When returning to the reference point (G28) automatically, the tool quickly moves to the reference point after passing the intermediate point, and the specified intermediate point is stored by CNC.

When returning from the reference point (G29), it will automatically move to the specified point along the specified axis through the intermediate point.

The process of the reference point return and the return from reference point is shown in the figure below:



(Note 1) The return from the reference point (G29) is only valid for the M series.



### Command Format

G28 IP\_ ; 1st reference point return (automatic reference point return)

Parameter	Meaning
IP	In absolute mode (G90), to specify the absolute position of the intermediate point. In incremental mode (G91), to specify the distance between the intermediate point and the starting point. There is no need to calculate the specific amount of movement between the intermediate point and the reference point.

(Note 1) The coordinates of the IP command are the values in the workpiece coordinate system. When the automatic reference point return command is executed, only the axis with the designated intermediate point will move, and the axis without the designated intermediate point will not move.

G29 IP\_ ; Return from reference point

Parameter	Meaning
IP	In absolute mode (G90), to specify the position of the target point. In the incremental mode (G91), the intermediate point of G29 must be the intermediate point set by G28 last time, and G91 is executed for the coordinate value after G29 on the basis of the intermediate point of G28.

(Note 1) The coordinates of the IP command are the values in the workpiece coordinate system, and the intermediate point is the one previously specified with G28 and G30.



### Description

#### Parameter setting

G29 related parameters are as follows (only the channel 0 parameters are listed)

Parameter	Description
040112	G28 intermediate point takes effect one time

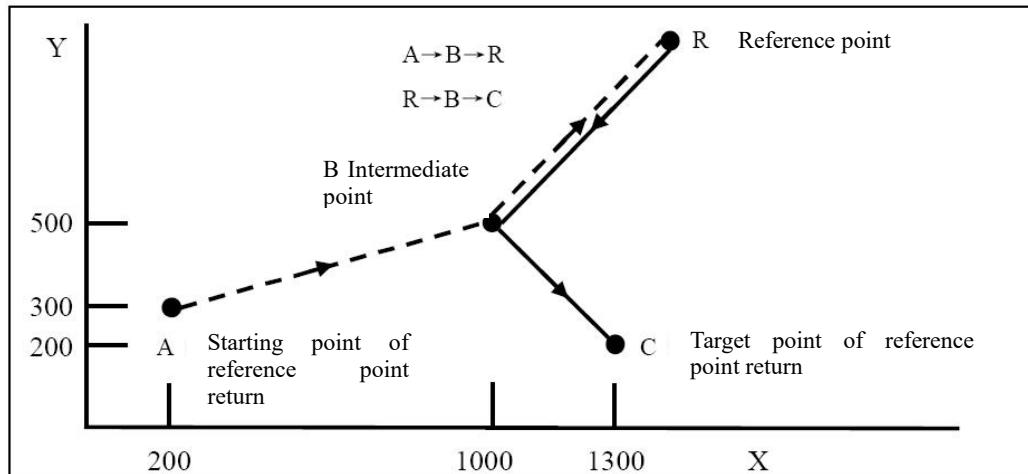
040112: This parameter is to set whether the G28 intermediate point takes effect one time or multiple times in the subsequent machining codes. If it takes effect multiple times, then the G28 intermediate point can be returned with G29 multiple times; if it takes effect one time, then it only works on the first G29 after the G28.

0: G28 intermediate point takes effect one time.

1: G28 intermediate point takes effect multiple times.



### Example



G54

G00 X200Y300

G28 G90 X1000.0 Y500.0; The program from A to B. After passing the intermediate point B, move to the reference point R

T6M06; Change tool at the reference point

G29 X1300.0 Y200.0; From the reference point R through the middle point B, move to the C specified by G29

M30; Program ends

## 10.8 2<sup>nd</sup>, 3<sup>rd</sup>, 4<sup>th</sup>,5<sup>th</sup> Reference Point Return (G30)



### Function and Purpose

With G30 P2 (P3 P4 P5) command, the 2nd, 3rd, 4th or 5th reference points (origin) return can be performed.



### Command Format

Return to the 2nd, 3rd, 4th or 5th reference points

G30 P2 IP\_ ; Return to the 2nd reference point (P2 can be omitted)

G30 P3 IP\_ ; Return to the 3rd reference point

G30 P4 IP\_ ; Return to the 4th reference point

G30 P5 IP\_ ; Return to the 5th reference point

Parameter	Meaning
IP	In absolute mode (G90), to specify the absolute position of intermediate point; In incremental mode, to specify the distance from intermediate point to the starting point. There is no need to calculate the specific amount of movement between the intermediate point and the reference point.



### Description

#### Parameter setting:

Accurate reference point return

For the reference point return with G28, G30, the reference point return mode can be set to the accurate return by parameters. In this mode, the zero pulse position is required to be found when the reference point return is performed with G28, G30. The reference point return with G28 and G30 is of the normal mode by default, and the zero pulse doesn't need to be found, with the related parameter set to 0. When it is necessary to return to the reference point with high accuracy, please adopt the accurate reference point return and set the corresponding parameter to 1.

The relevant parameters of accurate reference point return are as follows (only the parameters in channel 0 are listed):

Parameter	Description
040110	Enable G28 Z pulse search

040110: This parameter is to set whether to search for Z pulse when reference point return is performed with G28. G28 Z Pulse Search Enable is only for incremental motors. For absolute motors, this parameter must be set to 0; for incremental motors, it can be set to 0 or 1.

- 1: search Z pulse.
- 0: not search Z pulse.

040111: This parameter is to set whether G28/G30 returns to the machine zero at the G00 rapid traverse speed after moving to the machine reference point at the speed of G01.

- 0: Return to the machine zero at the speed of G01.
- 1: Return to the machine zero at the speed of G00.



### Note

- 1) Tool length compensation and tool radius compensation cannot be canceled with G28/G29/G30.
- 2) When G28/G30 is executed, the tool completes the cancellation of tool radius compensation during the process from the starting point to the intermediate point; during the process from the intermediate point to the reference point, there is no tool radius compensation. When G29 is executed, there is no tool radius compensation during the process from the reference point to the intermediate point; the tool radius compensation is restored during the process from the intermediate point to the target point.
- 3) The intermediate point specified by G28/G30 in the tool length compensation will be cumulatively calculated with the length compensation, and the reference point to be returned finally will not be cumulatively calculated with the length compensation. Whether the tool length compensation will be restored after G28/G30 is executed is determined by NC parameter 000014.

The NC parameter 000014 is as follows:

Parameter	Description
000014	Whether to restore tool length compensation after G53/G28

This parameter is to set whether to automatically restore the tool length compensation function after G53 command is executed.

- 0: After executing G53 command, the tool length compensation function is not restored automatically.
- 1: After executing G53 command, the tool length compensation function is automatically restored.

Note: G30 is the same as G28.

- 4) Whether the target point specified by G29 in the tool length compensation and the intermediate point stored by G28 or G30 will be cumulatively calculated with the length compensation is related to whether the NC parameter 000014 and G28/G30 commands are before or after G43.

The parameter is set to 0. When the G28 command is before G43, the intermediate point and target point of G29 operation will accumulate with the tool length compensation;

The parameter is set to 1. Whether the G28 command is before or after G43, the intermediate point and target point of G29 operation will be accumulated with tool length compensation;

- 5) When G28, G30, and G29 are executed, all axes move to the reference point or the intermediate point at the G00 rapid traverse speed or G01 speed, and the speed can be controlled by the rapid traverse override switch or the feed override switch.

- 6) During reference point return with G28/G30, first move to the intermediate point at the speed of G01, and then return to the reference point at the speed of G0. The speed of returning to the reference point can be set by channel parameter 040111 (take channel 0 as an example).

- 7) During the return from the reference point with G29, first move to the intermediate point at the speed of G0, and then to the target point at the speed of G01.

- 8) G29 should be executed after G28 and G30 are executed, otherwise the execution may be abnormal if there is no intermediate point stored.

# 11 Interpolation Function

## 11.1 Positioning (G00)



### Function and Purpose

With this command, the machine tool can quickly and accurately move to the target position, and its moving trajectory can be set by parameters as linear or non-linear path.



### Command Format

G00 X\_\_Y\_\_Z\_\_ $\alpha$ \_\_ ; (α is the auxiliary axis)

Parameter	Meaning
X, Y, Z, α	Represent the coordinate value. It is expressed as an absolute position or an incremental position with the G90/G91 state.



### Description

(1) G00 is a modal command, which is the 01 group command in the G command code. G00 can be abbreviated as G0 in the programming.

(2) After G00 is specified, it will remain valid until it is replaced by the same group of G codes (i.e. G01, G02, G03, G32 in group 01), and then only the coordinate address needs to be commanded.

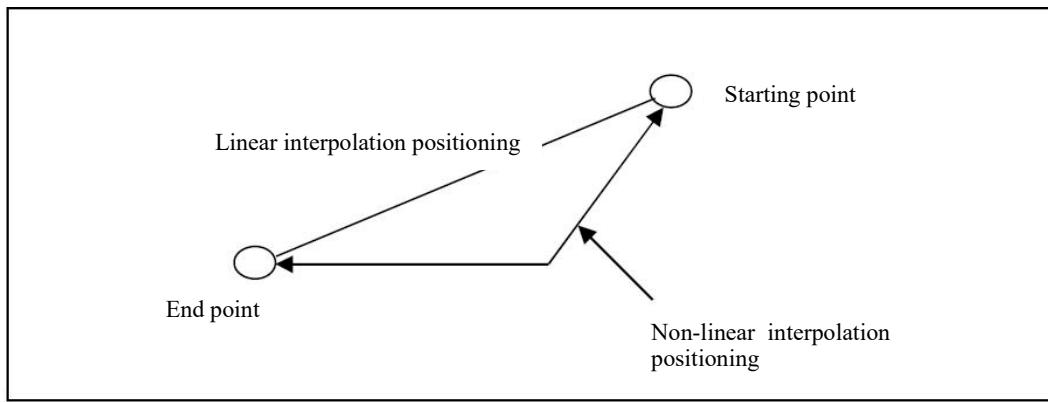
(3) With parameter 000013 [G00 Interpolation Enable], two tool paths can be specified:

a) Non-linear interpolation rapid traverse positioning:

When the parameter is set to 0, the tool will move at the rapid traverse speed of each axis from the current position to the positioning target specified in the block.

b) Linear interpolation rapid traverse positioning:

When the parameter is set to 1, the tool path is the same as the linear interpolation G01. The tool path is the shortest path between the start point and the end point. The positioning speed is automatically calculated within the range where the specified axis speed does not exceed its rapid traverse feedrate to ensure the shortest allocated time.



(4) The maximum rapid traverse speed in G00 command is set by the axis parameter [Maximum rapid traverse speed] (100034 for axis 0),(101034 for axis 1),(102034 for axis 2), etc., respectively corresponding to each axis setting, and cannot be specified by F .

(Note 1) The parameter value of the maximum rapid traverse speed cannot be greater than the maximum motor speed \* screw pitch.

(5) When the program is running, the rapid traverse speed of G00 is controlled by the rapid traverse speed override on the system operation panel.

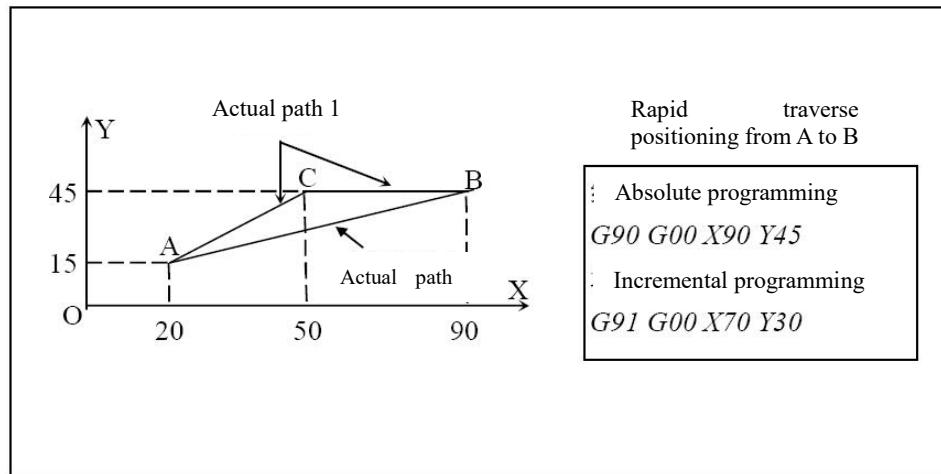
(6) G00 is generally used for rapid traverse positioning before processing or rapid traverse retraction after processing. In the positioning mode enabled by G00, the tool accelerates to a predetermined speed at the starting point of the block, and decelerates near the target position. The next block is executed after the tool is in the position.

(7) The allowable error of G00 rapid positioning is set by the system parameters (100060 for axis 0), (101060 for axis 1), (102060 for axis 2), etc. (the system parameter 010166 Maximum Time for Exact Stop Check sets the maximum time to check the positioning tolerance of the coordinate axis after reaching a certain point with the rapid traverse positioning (G00))



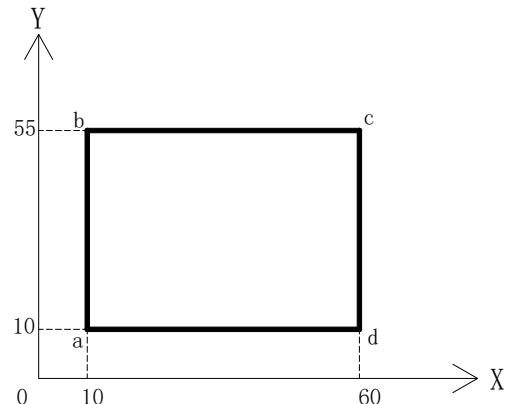
### Example

Example 1: As shown in the figure below, programming with G00: the tool is required to move from point A to point B in rapid traverse positioning.



- (1) In the non-linear interpolation mode, when the rapid traverse speeds on X axis and Y axis are the same, the rapid traverse positioning path from point A to point B is A—C—B;
- (2) In the linear interpolation mode, when the rapid travers speeds on X axis and Y axis are the same, the rapid traverse positioning path from point A to point B is A-B;

Example 2: As shown in the figure below, use G00 to program, a→b→c→d (starting point is at origin X0, Y0).



Machining path	Absolute programming	Incremental programming	Programmed position
Rapid traverse positioning to point a	G90G00X10Y10	G91G00X10Y10	(X10, Y10)
a→b	Y55	Y45	(X10, Y55)
b→c	X60	X50	(X60, Y55)
c→d	Y10	Y-45	(X60, Y10)



## Note

- (1) The rapid traverse speed can be corrected by the rapid traverse override knob on the panel.
- (2) There is no value after the G command, and the system alarms "Syntax-Illegal symbol".

## 11.2 Unidirectional Positioning (G60)



### Function and Purpose

This function enables each positioning movement of the machine tool to be realized in one direction, by which the backlash of the machine tool can be eliminated and precise positioning can be achieved.



### Command Format

G60 X\_\_Y\_\_Z\_\_ $\alpha$ \_\_ ; ( $\alpha$  is the auxiliary axis)

Parameter	Meaning
X,Y,Z, $\alpha$	The coordinate value. With the mode of G90 or G91, it is expressed as an absolute position or an incremental position



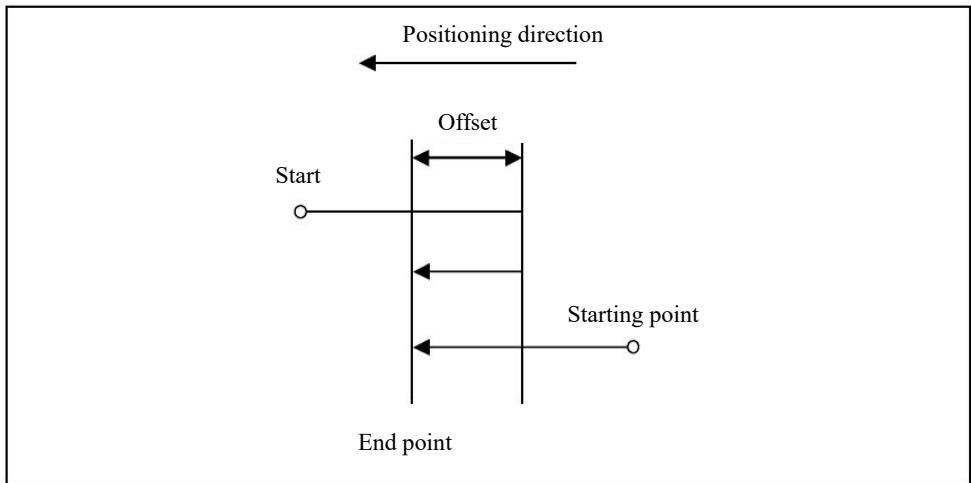
### Description

(1) G60 is a non-modal command. It is the 00 group command in the G command code, and is valid only for the current line.

- (2) When the system runs the G60 command, it is executed at the G00 rapid traverse speed.
- (3) When executing G60 command, the offset amount and direction are set through the following parameters. The positive and negative values determine the offset direction.

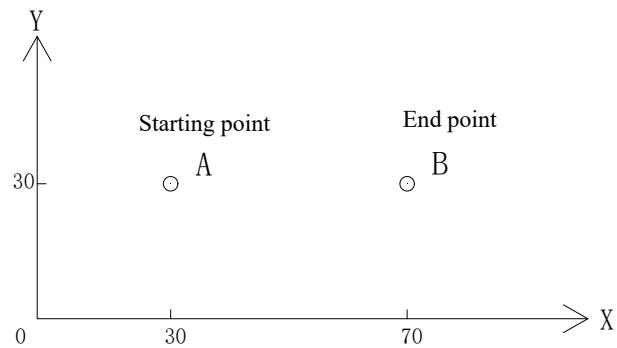
1st axis	Parm100030	G60 offset value vector of the first axis
2nd axis	Parm101030	G60 offset value vector of the second axis
3rd axis	Parm102030	G60 offset value vector of the third axis

(4) In order to eliminate the influence of backlash, the positioning in one direction of the axis can be commanded. As shown in the figure below, when the movement direction is consistent with the positioning direction, the positioning is performed in a conventional way; when the movement direction is inconsistent with the positioning direction, first move an additional offset along the movement direction, and then move an offset distance along the positioning direction, finally reach the end of the positioning.



### Example

Use unidirectional positioning from A→B (parameter 100030 value is -10)



Programming commands	Commanded coordinates
N1 G54	
N2 G0X30Y30	N2 (X30、Y30)
N3 G60X70	N3 (X80、Y30)→(X70、Y30)
N4 M30	



### Note

- 1) Even if the tool movement distance is zero, unidirectional positioning is performed;
- 2) The set overtravel in unidirectional positioning should be greater than the backlash of the corresponding axis, otherwise the backlash cannot be completely eliminated during unidirectional positioning

### 11.3 Linear Interpolation (G01)



#### Function and Purpose

This command uses the combination of coordinates and feedrate commands to move (interpolation) the tool linearly from the current point to the target point specified by the coordinate address at the speed specified in the address F. At this time, the feedrate specified by address F is always the linear speed in the direction of tool center movement.



#### Command Format

G01 X\_\_Y\_\_Z\_\_ $\alpha$ \_F\_\_ ; ( $\alpha$  is the auxiliary axis)

Parameter	Meaning
X, Y, Z, $\alpha$	The coordinate value. With the mode of G90 or G91, it is expressed as an absolute position or an incremental position
F	Feedrate (mm/min or °/min)



#### Description

(1) G01 is a modal command, which is the 01 group command in the G command code, and can be canceled by G00, G02, G03 and G32. G01 can be abbreviated as G1 in the programming.

(2) With the G01 command, the tool moves linearly from the current position to the end point specified in the block at the synthetic feedrate specified by F in the simultaneous-axis mode.

(3) The feedrate specified by F is valid until the new value is designated. Therefore, it does not need to be specified in every block.

(4) The maximum processing speed of G01 is set by the system axis parameter [maximum processing speed] (100035 for axis 0),(101035 for axis 1),(102035 for axis 2), etc., respectively corresponding to each axis. When the programmed F feedrate is greater than the maximum processing speed set by the axis parameter, the system executes at the maximum processing speed set by the axis parameter.

(Note 1) The maximum processing speed set cannot be greater than the maximum motor speed \* screw pitch

(5) When the program is running, the G01 processing speed is controlled by the speed override on the operation panel of the system

(6) When F feedrate is not specified after G01 command, and the programming is in G94 feed per minute, the system executes at the feedrate set by parameter 040030 "Default feedrate in channel(mm/min)"; When the programming is in G95 feed per revolution, the system executes at the feedrate set by parameter 040044 " Default feedrate in channel (mm/r)".

(7) The speed along each axis in each direction is as follows:

G91 G01 X $\alpha$  Y $\beta$  Z $\gamma$ Ff;

Speed along X axis  $F\alpha = \alpha \times f/L$ ;

Speed along Y axis  $F\beta = \beta \times f/L$ ;

Speed along Z axis  $F\gamma = \gamma \times f/L$ ;

$$L = \sqrt{\alpha^2 + \beta^2 + \gamma^2}$$

For the rotary axis, the feedrate is specified by the linear speed.

(8) When the linear axis  $\alpha$  (such as X, unit mm) and rotary axis  $\beta$  (such as C, unit deg) perform the linear interpolation, the tangent speed in the Cartesian coordinate system of  $\alpha$  and  $\beta$  is the specified F (mm/min) speed. The speed on  $\beta$  is obtained by converting the required time to deg/min using the above formula.

For example, G91 G01 X20.0 C40.0 F300.0;

Assume that the 40.0 deg of the C axis in metric is 40 mm.

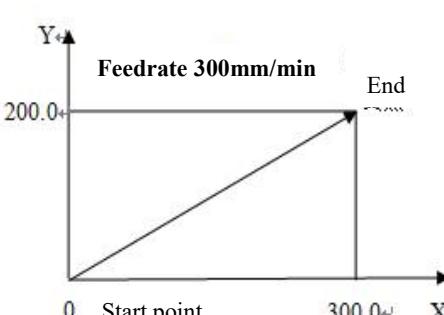
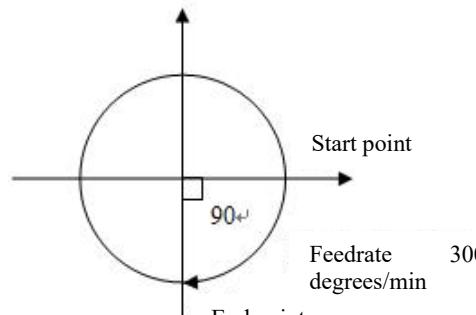
The allocated time is:

$$\frac{\sqrt{20^2 + 40^2}}{300} \approx 0.14907 \text{ min}$$

The speed on C axis is:

$$\frac{40 \text{ deg}}{0.14907 \text{ min}} \approx 268.3 \text{ deg/min}$$

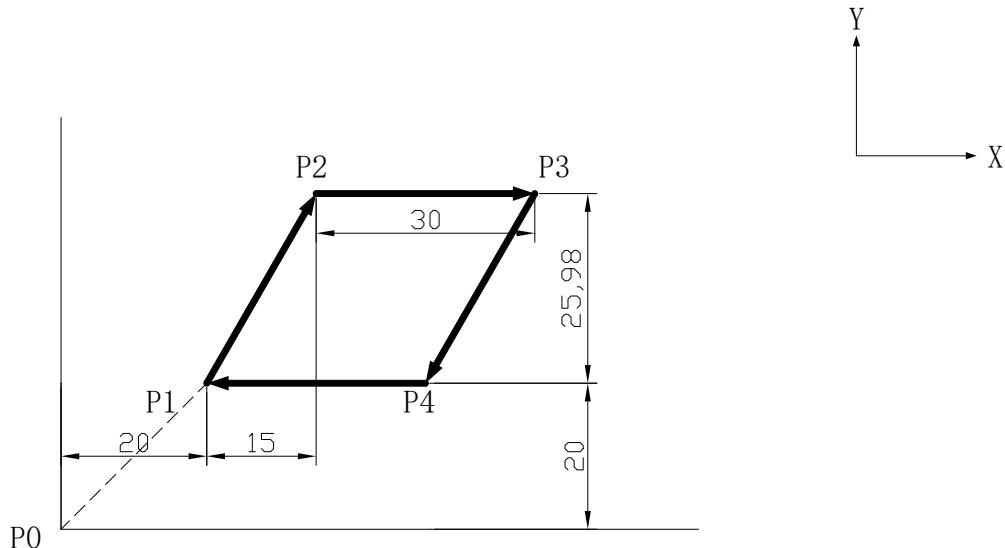
(9) The trajectory in linear interpolation and rotary interpolation is as follows:

Linear interpolation	Rotary interpolation
 <p>Feedrate 300mm/min</p> <p>Start point</p> <p>End</p> <p>200.0</p> <p>300.0</p> <p>X</p> <p>Y</p> <p>G91 G01 X300.0 Y200.0 F300</p>	 <p>Start point</p> <p>90°</p> <p>End point</p> <p>Feedrate degrees/min 300</p> <p>G91 G01 C-90 F300</p>



## Example

Perform the cutting on P1→P2→P3→P4 at a feedrate of 600mm/min; P0→P1 is the rapid traverse positioning



Processing path	Absolute programming	Incremental programming	Command position
Positioning	G54G0X0Y0	G54G0X0Y0	(X0、 Y0)
P0→P1	X20Y20	G91X20Y20	(X20、 Y20)
P1→P2	G1X35Y45.98F600	G1X15Y25.8F600	(X35、 Y45.98)
P2→P3	X65	X30	(X65、 Y45.98)
P3→P4	X50Y20	X-15Y-25.98	(X50、 Y20)
P4→P1	X20	X-30	(X20、 Y20)
Program ends	M30	M30	

## 11.4 Circular Interpolation (G02/G03)



### Function and Purpose

With this command, the tool moves to the end point in the specified plane (G17, G18, G19) along the specified circular direction.



### Command Format

$$G17 \left\{ \begin{array}{l} G02 \\ G03 \end{array} \right\} X - Y \left\{ \begin{array}{l} I \\ R \end{array} \right\} F - \quad \text{Circular interpolation in XY plane}$$

$$G18 \left\{ \begin{array}{l} G02 \\ G03 \end{array} \right\} X - Z \left\{ \begin{array}{l} I \\ R \end{array} \right\} F - \quad \text{Circular interpolation in ZX plane}$$

$$G19 \left\{ \begin{array}{l} G02 \\ G03 \end{array} \right\} Y - Z \left\{ \begin{array}{l} J \\ R \end{array} \right\} F - \quad \text{Circular interpolation in YZ plane}$$

Parameter	Meaning
G02	Circular interpolation CW
G03	Circular interpolation CCW
G17	Circular interpolation in XY plane
G18	Circular interpolation in ZX plane
G19	Circular interpolation in YZ plane
X	Movement amount on X axis of circular interpolation or X coordinate of circular end
Y	Movement amount on Y axis of circular interpolation or Y coordinate of circular end
Z	Movement amount on Z axis of circular interpolation or Z coordinate of circular end
R	Radius (with sign, "+" minor arc, "-" major arc)
I	The distance from the circular starting point to the circular center on X (with sign)
J	The distance from the circular starting point to the circular center on Y (with sign)
K	The distance from the circular starting point to the circular center on Z (with sign)
F	Feedrate, modal



## Description

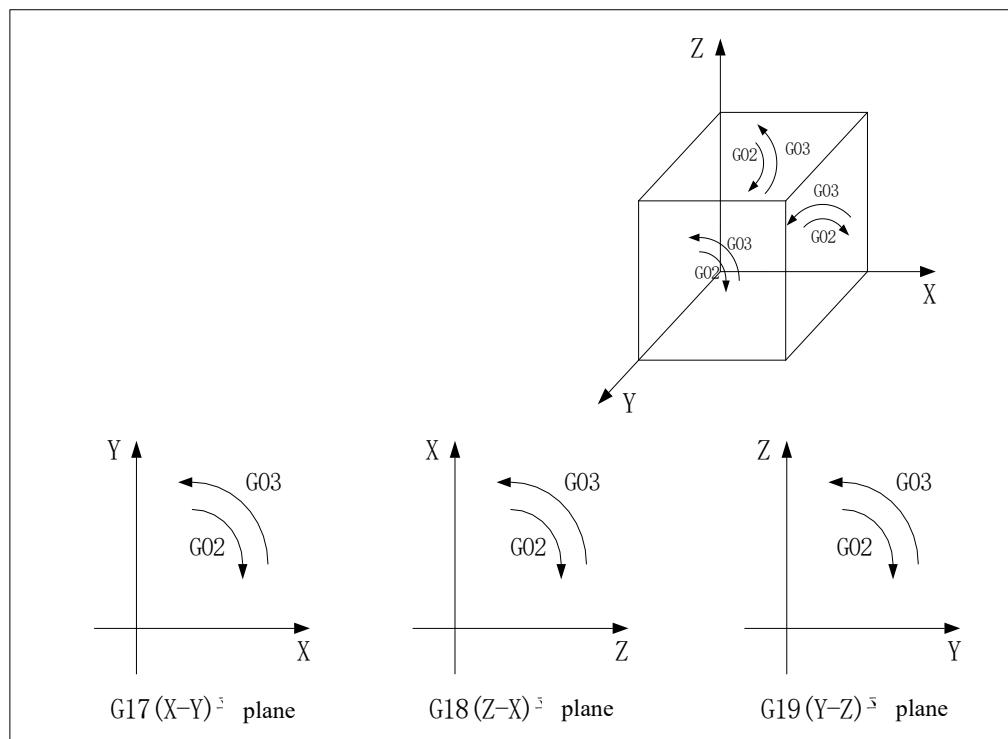
### 1) Circular command description

G02/G03 are modal commands, which are the 01 group commands in G codes. G02/G03 can be abbreviated as G2/G3 during programming.

### 2) Circular interpolation direction

The definition of the circular interpolation direction in each plane: In the Cartesian coordinate system, viewed from the positive to negative direction of the third axis, when the circular motion direction is consistent with the clockwise direction, it is the clockwise circular interpolation direction; when the circular motion direction is the same as the counterclockwise direction, it is the counterclockwise interpolation direction.

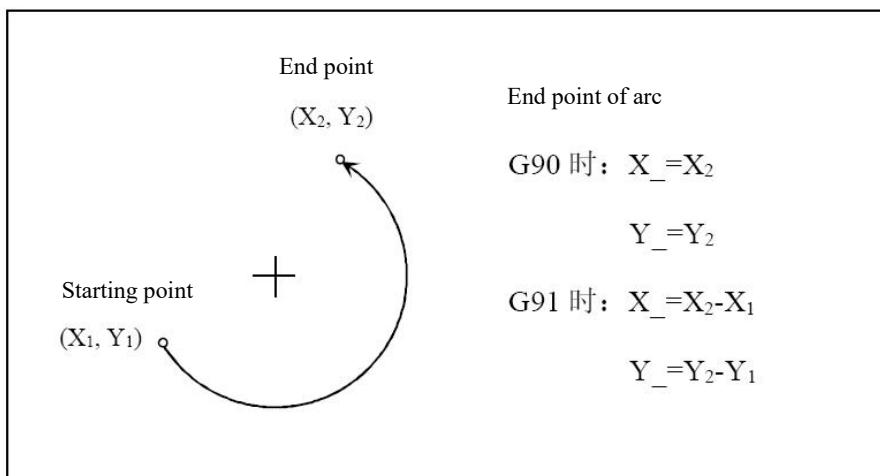
The third axis is Z axis in XY plane, Y axis in ZX plane, and X axis in YZ plane. The definitions of directions are as follows:



### 3) Circular end point

The circular end is specified with position command (X, Y, Z)

In absolute mode (G90), (X, Y, Z) specifies the absolute position of circular end; in incremental mode (G91), (X, Y, Z) specified the distance from the circular starting point to the circular end point.



#### 4) UVW incremental programming

In addition to XYZ, UVW can also be used to specify the circular end point.

For the turning system (T series), when the channel parameter [UVW incremental programming enable] (040033) is set to 1, UVW can be used instead of XYZ to represent the movement amount (increment) in G02/G03 on the XYZ-axis, and user can also use XYZ and UVW for programming simultaneously. (The premise is that the UVW axes are not designated as the traverse axes)

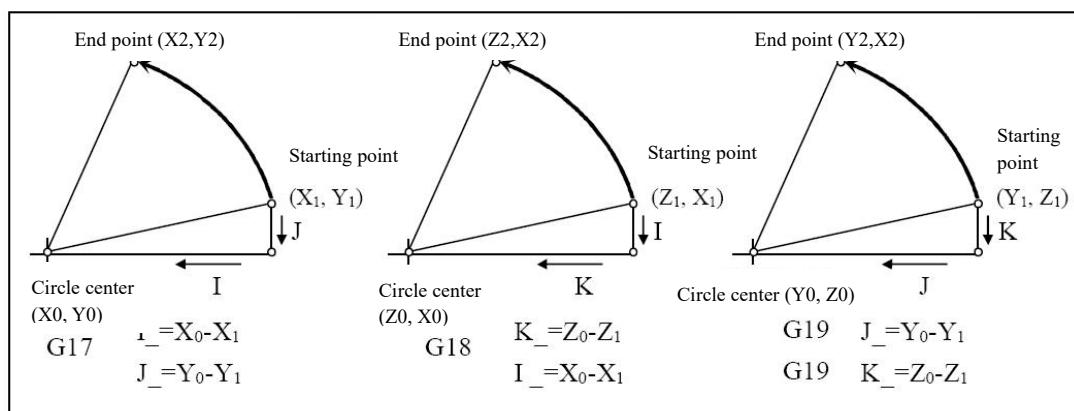
#### 5) Circular center with IJK

Command (I, J, K) is used to specify the position of the circular center.

The value specified by (I, J, K) is the vector component viewed from the starting point to the circular center, and whether in G90 or G91 it is always an incremental value.

The sign of the values specified with (I, J, K) determines the direction.

The representation of the circular center is shown in the figure below



#### 6) Full circle programming

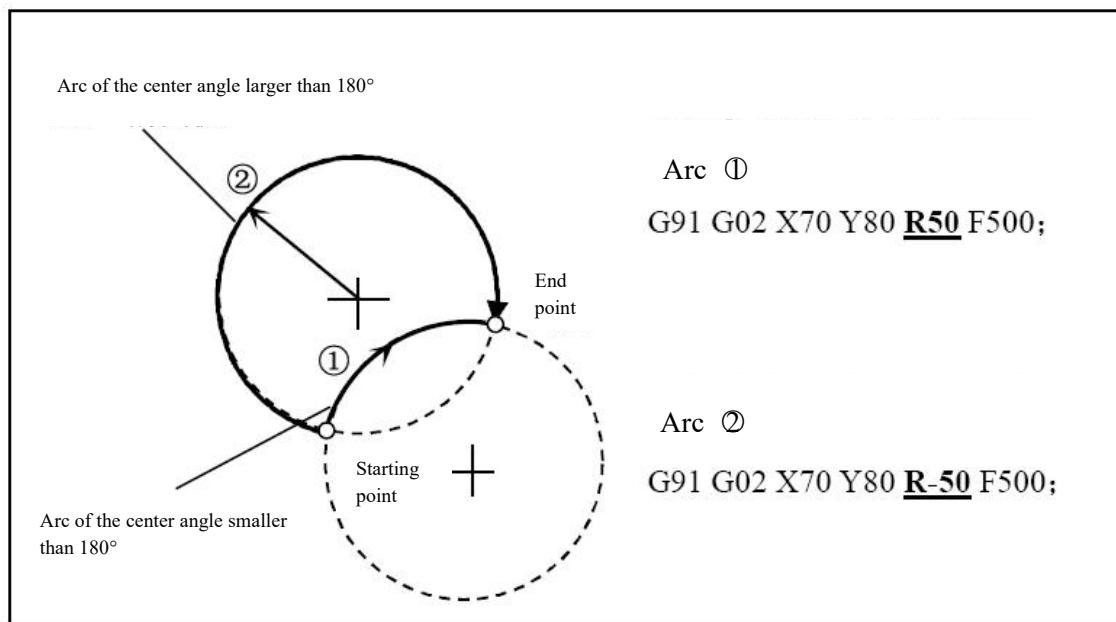
If all the position commands (X, Y, Z) are omitted during programming, it means that the start point and the end point coincide. At this time, a full circle is designated with (I, J, K) programming. If specified with R, it becomes an arc of 0 degrees, and the system alarms.

## 7) Semicircle programming

The circular center can be specified by the above-mentioned (I, J, K) as well as the radius. There are two cases for the radius being used to specify the center of the circle.

- a) An arc with a center angle less than 180°;
- b) An arc with a center angle greater than 180°;

Therefore, user should specify clearly what arc is for the programming, which is determined by the sign of the radius R. As shown below,



### Parameter setting

#### Parameters of circular interpolation

If the difference between the radii of circular starting point and end point is greater than the setting value of [Circular Interpolation Contour Error] (000010), or the ratio of the difference between the radii of circular starting point and end point to actual radius exceeds the setting value of [Allowable deviation of circular radius] (000011), the system will alarm.

When parameter 010098 [Whether to switch to G01 when G02/G03 is by default] is set to 1, and the radius is not specified in the G02/G03 command, the block will be executed with G01.



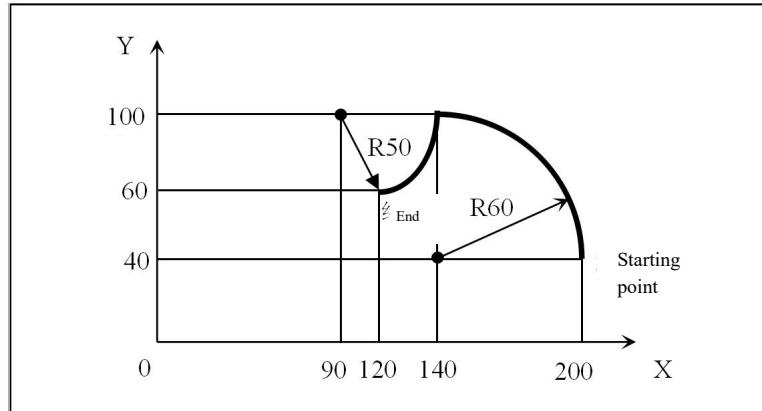
#### Note

- 1) If I, J, K and R are specified at the same time in the non-full-circle circular interpolation, the arc specified with R is valid.

- 2) If the axis not in the plane is specified, the alarm will be issued.
- 3) For the semicircle or the arc with center angle close to 180 degrees, specifying the center position with R will result in the circular center calculation error due to the rounding error in the programmed position. In this case, I, J, K should be used to specify the circular center.



### Example



The programming for the tool path shown in the figure above is as follows:

Programming with R		
Absolute programming	Incremental programming	Commanded position
G54G0 X200.0 Y40.0 ;	G54G0 X200.0 Y40.0;	(X200, Y40)
G90 G03 X140.0 Y100.0 R60.0 F3000 ;	G91 G03 X-60.0 Y60.0 R60.0 F3000 ;	(X140, Y100)
G02 X120.0 Y60.0 R50.0;	G02 X-20.0 Y-40.0 R50.0;	(X120, Y60)
Programming with IJK		
Absolute programming	Incremental programming	Commanded position
G54 G0 X200.0 Y40.0;	G54 G0 X200.0 Y40.0;	(X200, Y40)
G90 G03 X140.0 Y100.0 I-60.0 F3000;	G91 G03 X-60.0 Y60.0 I-60.0 F3000;	(X140, Y100)
G02 X120.0 Y60.0 I-50.0;	G02X-20Y-40I-50.0	(X120, Y60)

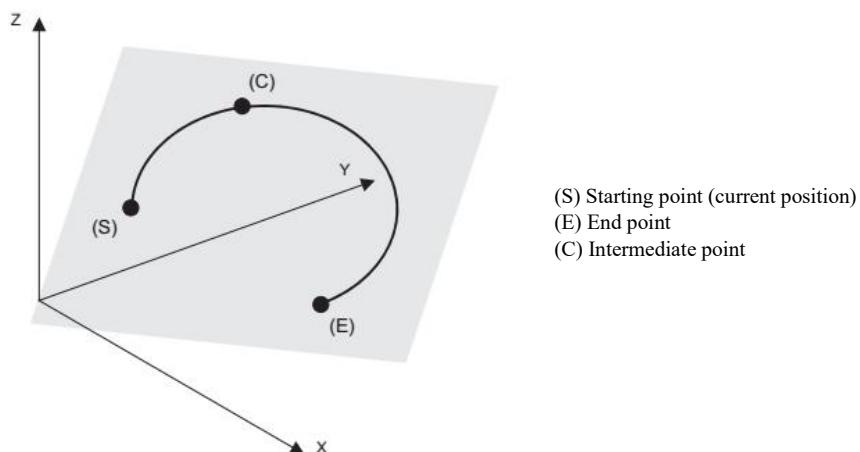
## 11.5 3D Circular Interpolation (G02.4/G03.4)



### Function and Purpose

To execute the circular interpolation in three-dimensional space, in addition to the starting point (current position) and end point, it is also necessary to specify any point on the arc (intermediate point). Based on the 3 points (starting point, intermediate point, end point), the defined arc can be processed.

Currently the system has not yet opened this command.



### Command Format

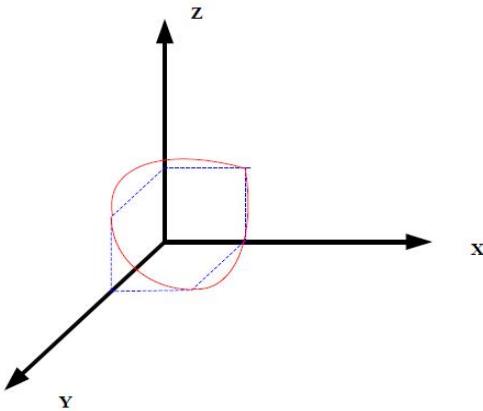
G02.4/G03.4 X\_\_Y\_\_Z\_\_I\_\_J\_\_K\_\_ F\_\_ ;    ( $\alpha$  is the auxiliary axis)

Parameter	Meaning
X, Y, Z, $\alpha$	The coordinate value. With the mode of G90 or G91, it is expressed as an absolute position or an incremental position
I, J, K	The coordinates of the intermediate point in the space
F	Feedrate (mm/min)



### Example

Three arcs in space are machined as shown below



%877

G90 X80 Y0 Z80

F2000

G64

G03.4 X80 Y-80 Z0 I88 J0 K0

X0 Y-80 Z80 I32 J-74 K32

X80 Y0 Z80 I0 J0 K88

M30



### Note

- (1) The intermediate point is specified by IJK, whether in G90 or G91 mode, it is always the directed distance from starting point to end point.
- (2) G02.4 is same as G03.4, cannot specify the rotation direction.
- (3) When any two of the circular starting point, intermediate point and end point coincide or the three points are in the same straight line, the system will alarm.
- (4) Please disable tool radius compensation function during 3D circular compensation.
- (5) 3D circular interpolation cannot be used to specify the full circle (the starting point is inconsistent with the end point); if need to specify the full circle, user could divide the full circle into several segments.

## 11.6 Helical Interpolation (G02/G03)



### Function and Purpose

In addition to specifying circular interpolation, G02 and G03 can be used to perform helical interpolation by specifying the movement distance of the third axis, and perform thread milling

and cavity-type parts hole processing.



### Command Format

G17 $\left\{ \begin{array}{l} G02 \\ G03 \end{array} \right\}$ X\_Z\_Y\_  $\left\{ \begin{array}{l} I_J \\ R_ \end{array} \right\}$ L\_F\_ Circular interpolation in XY plane

G18 $\left\{ \begin{array}{l} G02 \\ G03 \end{array} \right\}$ X\_Z\_Y\_  $\left\{ \begin{array}{l} I_K \\ R_ \end{array} \right\}$ L\_F\_ Circular interpolation in ZX plane

G19 $\left\{ \begin{array}{l} G02 \\ G03 \end{array} \right\}$ Y\_Z\_X\_  $\left\{ \begin{array}{l} J_K \\ R_ \end{array} \right\}$ L\_F\_ Circular interpolation in YZ plane

Parameter	Meaning
G02	Circular interpolation CW
G03	Circular interpolation CCW
G17	Circular interpolation in XY plane
G18	Circular interpolation in ZX plane
G19	Circular interpolation in YZ plane
X	Movement amount on X axis of circular interpolation or X coordinate of circular end
Y	Movement amount on Y axis of circular interpolation or Y coordinate of circular end
Z	Z axis coordinate of end point in absolute programming; incremental amount of end point on Z axis relative to starting point (even with L)
R	Radius (with sign, "+" minor arc, "-" major arc)
I	The distance from the circular starting point to the circular center on X (with sign); for the conical interpolation in XZ plane, it is the height increase or decrease of one spiral rotation.
J	The distance from the circular starting point to the circular center on Y (with sign)
K	The distance from the circular starting point to the circular center on Z (with sign)
F	Feedrate, modal
L	Number of helical turns (positive number without decimal point)



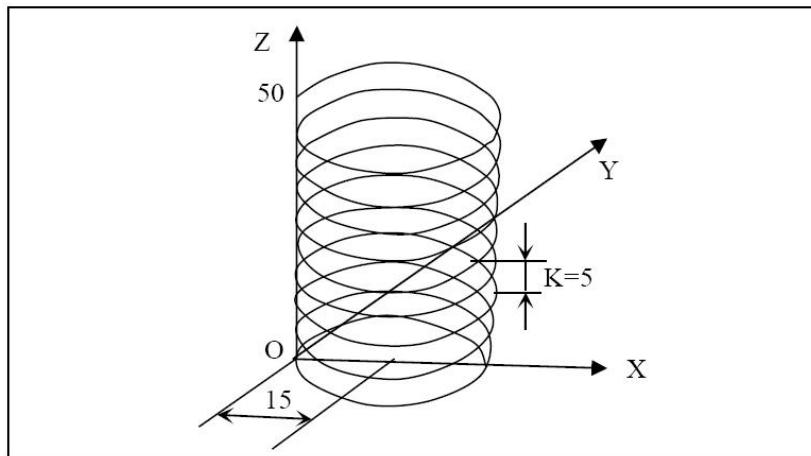
### Description

- (1) The rotation direction of helical interpolation refers to the direction of the arc projected to the two-dimensional plane
- (2) For full circle programming, if all the position commands (X, Y, Z) are omitted during programming, it means that the start point and end point coincide. At this time, a full circle is specified with (I, J, K). If R is used for specifying, it becomes a 0 degree arc, and the system alarms.



### Example

Process the helix as shown below,



Programming with R		
Absolute programming	Incremental programming	Command position
G54 G0 X30 Y0 Z0;	G54 G0 X30 Y0 Z0;	(X30、Y0、Z0)
G90 G03 X0 Y0 Z50 R15 L10 F3500	G91 G03 X-30 Y0 Z50 R15 L10 F3500	(X0、Y0、Z50)
M30	M30	

Programming with IJK		
Absolute programming	Incremental programming	Commanded position
G54 G0 X30 Y0 Z0;	G54 G0 X30 Y0 Z0;	(X30、Y0、Z0)
G90 G03 X0 Y0 Z50 I-15 J0 K0 L10 F3500	G91 G03 X-30 Y0 Z50 I-15 J0 K0 L10 F3500	(X0、Y0、Z50)
M30	M30	

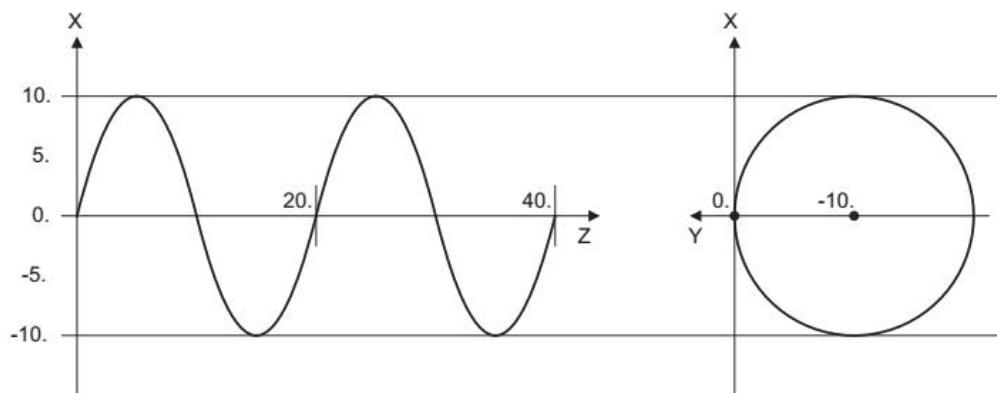
## 11.8 Imaginary Axis Specifying and Sine Interpolation (G07)



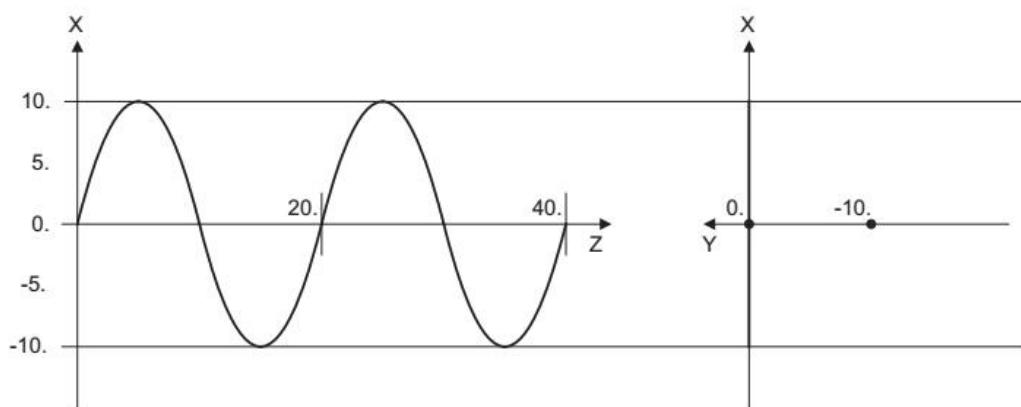
### Function Purpose

If an axis is designated as an imaginary axis, the axis only participates in the interpolation computing, but does not move. If a certain axis is designated as the imaginary axis (axis without actual movement) in the helical interpolation, its running path is: the projected path of the helical interpolation on the plane perpendicular to the imaginary axis. This running path corresponds to sine line and cosine line (SIN interpolation or COS interpolation).

#### Normal helical interpolation



#### Helical interpolation in imaginary axis (Y-axis is the imaginary axis)



### Command Format

G07  $\alpha$ 0 ( $\alpha$ 1);

Parameter	Meaning
$\alpha$ 0	Imaginary axis interpolation mode is enabled
$\alpha$ 1	Imaginary interpolation mode is disabled
$\alpha$	Axis name of imaginary axis



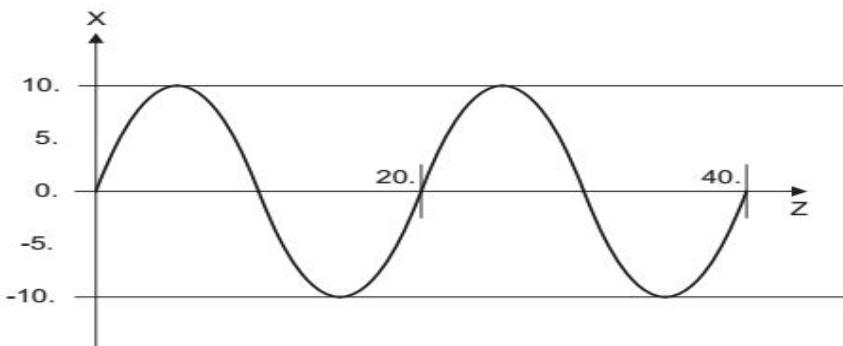
## Description

- (1) Between "G07  $\alpha 0;$ " and "G07  $\alpha 1;$ ", the  $\alpha$  axis is an imaginary axis.
- (2) The axis designation for imaginary axis setting can be applied to all axes of the NC axis.
- (3) Multiple imaginary axes can be set.
- (4) If a command other than the imaginary axis interpolation mode Enable (0)/Disable (1) is enabled, it will be regarded as imaginary axis interpolation Disable (1). However, when an imaginary axis is specified without the value, it is regarded as imaginary axis interpolation Enable (1).



## Example

N01 G07 Y0 ;	Y axis is used as an imaginary axis.
N02 G17 G02 X0 Y0 Z40 I0 J-10 L2 F50	SIN interpolation is performed in XZ plane
N03 G07 Y1 ;	Y axis is restored to the actual axis.



## Note

- (1) The interpolation functions that can be used in the imaginary axis interpolation are helical interpolation and spiral interpolation.
- (2) The imaginary axis interpolation needs to be canceled at the time of high-speed high-precision (G05.1Q1/G05.1Q2/G05.1Q3)
- (3) The imaginary axis interpolation is valid during auto operation, and invalid during JOG operation. The imaginary axis interpolation is also valid during handwheel interpolation.
- (4) Although the traverse command of the imaginary axis is ignored, when the feedrate is allocated, the allocation of the imaginary axis is the same as the actual axis.
- (5) If the imaginary axis is set again during the imaginary axis interpolation, no error will occur, and the effect of the imaginary axis will continue to be maintained.

(6) When the imaginary axis is canceled, the usage of the non-imaginary axes is not affected.

(7) If reset, the imaginary axis is canceled.

## 11.9 Polar Interpolation (G12/G13)

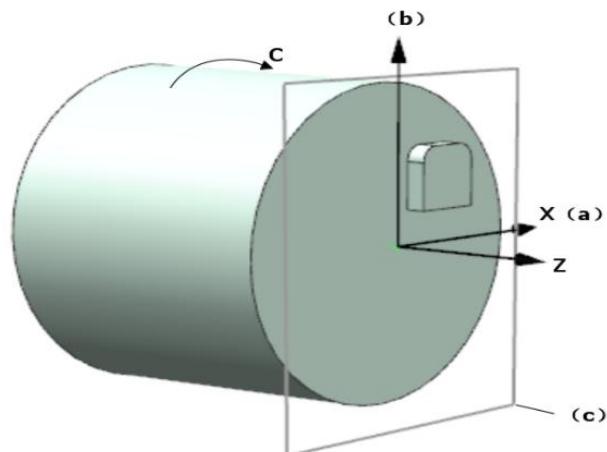


### Function and Purpose

Polar interpolation is a contour control function, which converts the programmed position in the Cartesian coordinate system into linear axis movement (tool movement) and rotary axis movement (workpiece rotation). It can be programmed on the selected plane (polar interpolation plane) to complete the milling or grinding of the face contour of the rotary workpiece.

In the polar interpolation mode, linear interpolation and circular interpolation can be commanded, and absolute programming, incremental programming, diameter programming, radius programming, tool radius and length compensation can be used (polar coordinate interpolation is performed based on the compensated path).

This function is often used in turning centers with power head tools.



(a) Linear axis      (b) Rotary axis (imaginary axis)      (c) Polar coordinate interpolation plane (G17 plane)



### Command Format

G12 ;

G13 ;

Parameter	Meaning
G12	Polar coordinate interpolation is enabled.
G13	Polar coordinate interpolation is disabled.



## Description

### 1) Polar interpolation plane

The polar coordinate interpolation plane uses the linear axis as the first right-angled axis of the plane, and the imaginary axis orthogonal to the linear axis as the second axis of the plane. The plane composed of 2 orthogonal axes is the polar coordinate interpolation plane, and the polar coordinate interpolation is executed on this plane. In the polar coordinate interpolation, the origin of the workpiece coordinate system is regarded as the origin of the coordinate system.

### 2) Polar interpolation parameter setting

The linear axis, rotary axis and imaginary axis in polar coordinate interpolation need to be set in the parameters in advance. The relevant parameters are as follows:

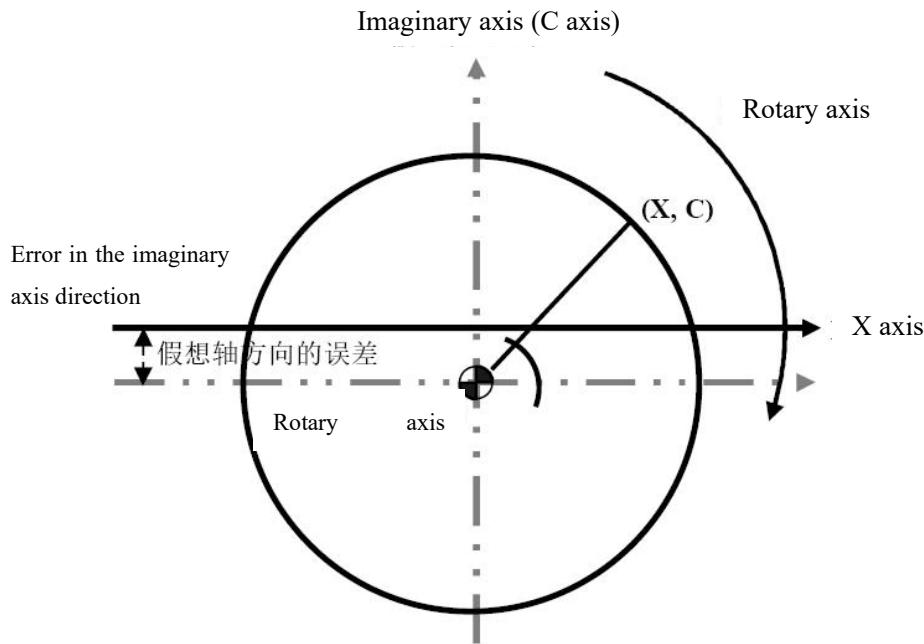
Parameter name	Parameter	Description	Default
Channel parameter CH0	Parm040095	Linear axis No. in polar interpolation	0 (X axis)
	Parm040096	Rotary axis No. in polar interpolation	5 (C axis)
	Parm040097	Imaginary axis No. in polar interpolation	1 (Y axis)

The linear axis and the imaginary axis of the polar coordinate interpolation coordinate system are determined by the above parameters. The linear axis is used as the horizontal axis of coordinate system in the polar coordinate interpolation and the imaginary axis is used as the vertical axis. In the execution plane formed by the linear axis and the imaginary axis, the corresponding circular interpolation address words are shown in the following table:

Parm040095 parameter setting	Linear axis name in polar interpolation	Plane	Circular definition address words
0	X	G17	I, J, R
1	Y	G18	J, K, R
2	Z	G19	I, K, R

### 3) Imaginary axis eccentricity compensation

When there is an error in the imaginary axis direction from the rotation axis center of the first axis in the plane, that is, the rotation axis center is not on the X axis, this function can be used for the compensation, and the system will perform polar coordinate interpolation after calculating the error. Enable this function and set the Parm040099 parameter in the channel parameters as the measurement error value.



(X,C) The point in the X-C plane (the rotary axis center is used as zero of X-C plane)

X X axis coordinate in the X-C plane

C Coordinate of imaginary axis in the X-C plane

P Error in the imaginary axis direction

#### 4) Coordinate system offset in polar interpolation

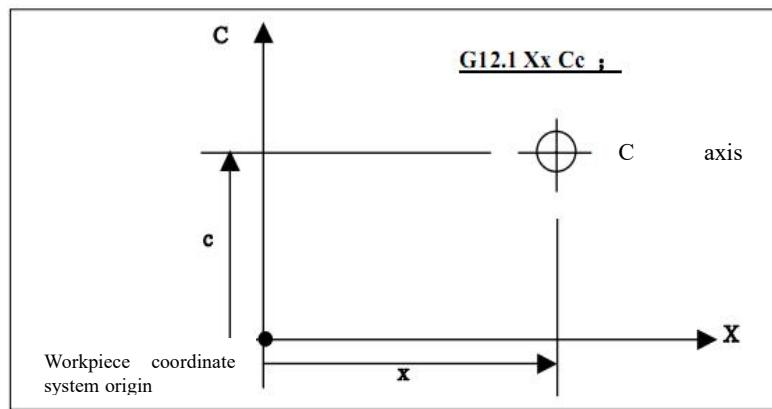
In polar interpolation, the following format can be used to translate the workpiece coordinate system.

G12 X\_C\_ ; (Polar interpolation used for X axis and C axis)

G12 Y\_A\_ ; ( Polar interpolation used for Y axis and A axis)

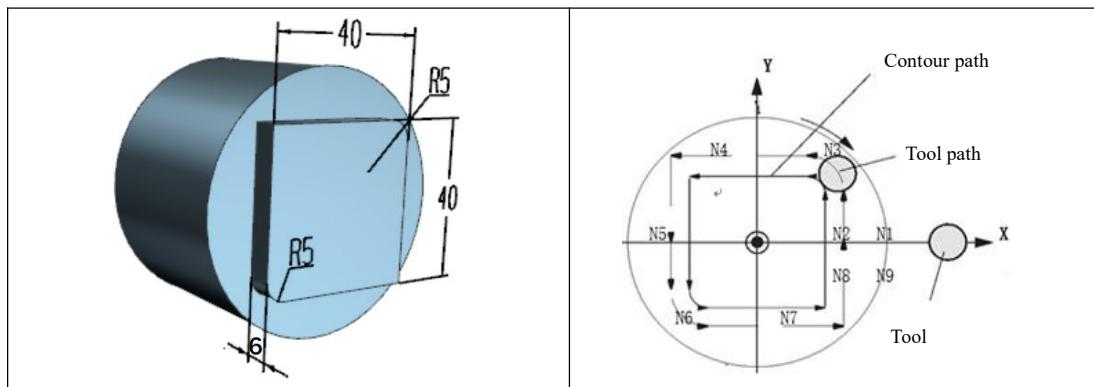
G12 Z\_B\_ ; (Polar interpolation used for Z axis and B axis)

X-C (Y-A, Z-B) is used to specify the coordinate value of the center position of the rotary axis C (A, B) in the interpolation plane relative to the origin of the workpiece coordinate system (see the figure below)



### Example

#### Example 1: Face contour milling



%1234

G54

T0101; The workpiece coordinate system is built at the center of rotation on the right end of the blank, with end milling cutter φ10

G108; Spindle is switched from speed mode to position mode

M103 S1=2000; Tool rotation CW

G37; Radius programming

G0X45Z50C0

G0Z-5

G12X0CO

G42D1G01X40F500 (D1=5)

N1 G1X20

N2 C10

N3 G3X10 C20 R10

N4 G1X-20

N5 C-10

N6 G3X-10 C-20 I10 J0

N7 G1X20

N8 C0

N9 G40X40

G13

G0Z10

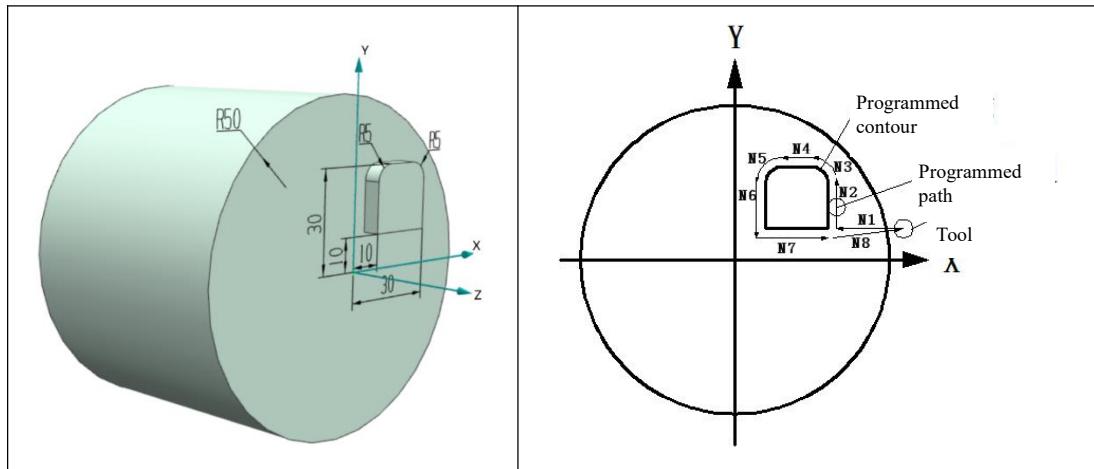
G109

G0X120

M105

M30

### Example 2: Face contour milling



%1234

G54

T0101; The workpiece coordinate system is built at the center of rotation on the right end of the blank, with end milling cutter φ6

G108; Spindle is switched from speed mode to position mode

M103 S1=2000; Tool rotation CW

G37; Radius programming

G0X52Z50C0

G0 Z-5

G12X0CO

G1X50C10F500

N1 G42D1G01X30C10 (D1=3)

N2 G1C25

N3 G03X25C30R5

N4 G1X15

N5 G03X10C25R5

N6C10

N7 X30

N8 G40X50

G13

G0Z10

G109; Spindle is switched from speed mode to position mode

G0X52

M105; Tool stops

M30



#### Note

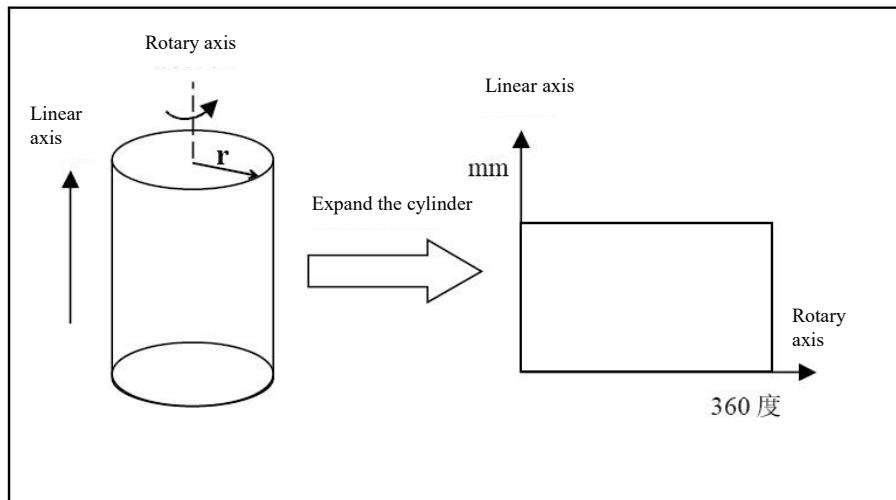
Before entering the polar coordinate interpolation mode, cancel the tool radius compensation and tool length compensation, and specify the tool compensation in the polar coordinate interpolation mode.

### 11.10 Cylindrical interpolation (G07.1)



#### Function and Purpose

With this function, the shape of the side surface of the cylinder (the shape on the cylindrical coordinate system) is expanded into a plane, and the expanded shape is used as the plane coordinate for the program command, then the system converts it to the movement on linear axis and rotary axis of the cylindrical coordinate when performing machining to execute the contour control.



#### Command Format

G07.1 RC=\_r ; Start of cylindrical interpolation (r: radius of cylinder)

.....

G07.1 RC=0 ; End of cylindrical interpolation



#### Description

## Circular interpolation

The circular interpolation (G02, G03) in the cylindrical interpolation plane is performed, and the coordinate system plane is determined based on the parallel axis in the cylindrical interpolation.

Parm040092 = 0	Set X axis as the horizontal axis in the cylindrical interpolation plane	G02, G03 are specified in X-C plane (G17) with IJR programming
Parm040092 = 1	Set Y axis as the horizontal axis in the cylindrical interpolation plane	G02, G03 are specified in Y-C plane (G19) with JKR programming
Parm040092= 2	Set Z axis as the horizontal axis in the cylindrical interpolation plane	G02, G03 are specified in Z-C plane (G18) with IKR programming

## Compensation

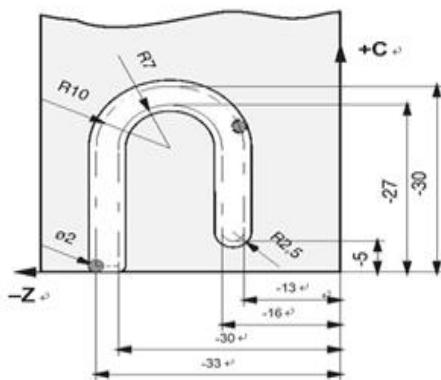
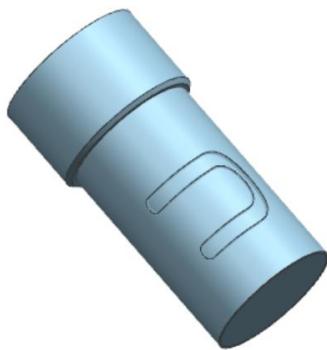
The tool radius compensation and tool length compensation should be cancelled before entering the cylindrical interpolation mode, and the tool compensation should be specified in the cylindrical interpolation mode.

## Related parameters

Parameter name	Parameter	Default	Description
Channel parameter (CH0)	Parm040090	5 (C axis)	Rotary axis No. in cylindrical interpolation
	Parm040091	2 (Z axis)	Linear axis No. in cylindrical interpolation
	Parm040092	1 (Y axis)	Parallel axis No. in cylindrical interpolation



## Example



Example 1: Contour milling

G54

T0101; Radial face milling cutter ø2, workpiece ø30

G108

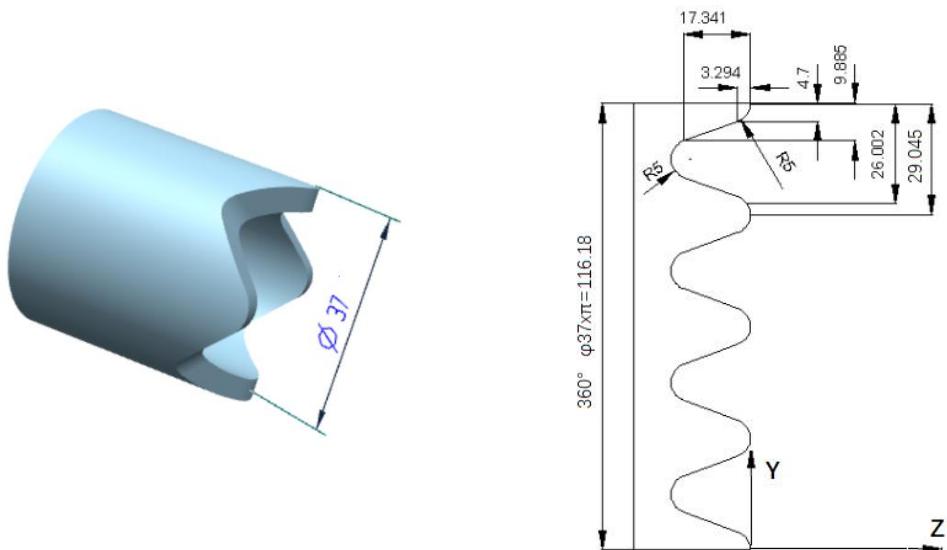
G19; Select a plane

M103 S1=1000; The second spindle rotates CW, the direction of tool rotation is

related to the tool post

```
G0X50C0  
G0 Z-31.5  
G07.1RC=15  
G95 G1 X29 F0.08  
G42D1 G1 C1.5 Z-33  
G1C20  
G2C20Z-13R10  
G1 C6.5  
G2 C6.5Z-16R1.5  
G1 C20  
G3 C20Z-30R7  
G1 C0 Z-33  
G40    C1.5 Z-31.5  
G0 X32  
G0 Z10  
G07.1 RC=0;  
G109G18  
G0X150Z150  
M105  
M30
```

Example 2: Contour milling



%1234	%1
G54	G91
T0101; Radial face milling cutter Ø4, workpiece Ø37	G42 D1G1Z-5C0F100 G3 C-14.564Z-3.294 R5
G108	G1 C-16.006Z-14.047
G94	G2 C-29.128 R5

G19; Select a plane	G1 C-16.006 Z14.047
M103 S1=1000	G3 C-14.564 Z3.294 R5
G0X50C0	G40G1 Z5
G0 Z50	M99
G07.1 RC=18.5	
G0Z5	
M98P1L4	
G90	
G07.1 RC=0;	
G109	
G18	
G0X100 Z100	
M105	
M30	

### 11.11 Polar Coordinate Command (G15/G16)



#### Function and Purpose

When the angle and radius are marked on the drawings of the parts, the "polar diameter" and "polar angle" of polar coordinate are used to define the end positions of the program, which can greatly simplify the programming calculation.

In the specified plane of the polar coordinate system, the counterclockwise direction of the polar axis movement is the positive direction of the polar angle, and the clockwise direction of the polar axis movement is the negative direction of the polar angle.

Both "polar diameter" and "polar angle" can be specified under absolute programming/incremental programming (G90, G91).



#### Command Format

G17(or G18/G19);

G16 ;

G90 X- Y- (or G91 X- Y-);

G15;

To specify the plane of polar coordinate system	G17	XY plane: polar radius is specified with X axis, and polar angle is specified with Y axis.
	G18	ZX plane: polar radius is specified with Z axis, and polar angle is specified with X axis.
	G19	YZ plane: polar radius is specified with Y axis, and polar angle is specified with Z axis.

To specify the origin of polar coordinate system	G90	Workpiece coordinate system zero (or local coordinate system zero) is specified as the origin of polar coordinate system (polar origin)
	G91	The current position is specified as the origin of polar coordinate system (polar origin)
G16		Polar coordinate programming starts
G15		Polar coordinate programming ends
To specify polar diameter	X	In absolute programming: Polar diameter measured from the workpiece coordinate system zero (or local coordinate system zero)
		In incremental programming: Polar diameter measured from the current point
To specify polar angle	Y	In absolute programming: Polar angle measured with workpiece zero as the polar origin
		In incremental programming: Polar angle measured with the current point as the polar origin



## Description

### Polar coordinate system origin setting

There are two ways to set the polar coordinate system origin:

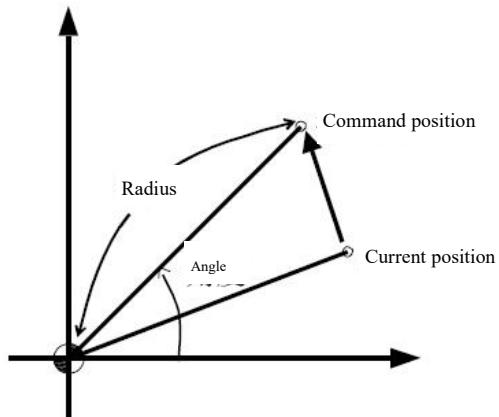
- (1) At the time of programming with polar coordinate, if the polar origin is defined in absolute mode (G90), the polar coordinate system origin will be the workpiece origin or the local coordinate system origin.
- (2) At the time of programming with polar coordinate, if the polar origin is defined in incremental mode (G91), the polar coordinate system origin will be the current point.

### Polar coordinate command position

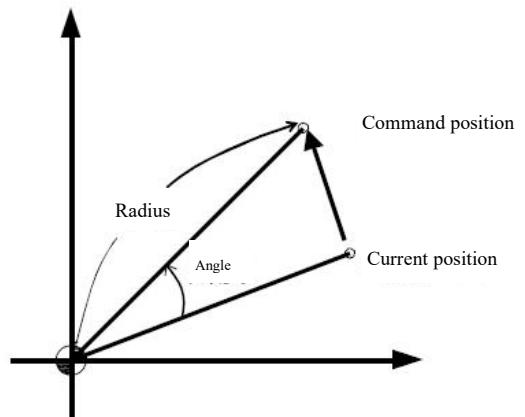
- (1) When workpiece coordinate system origin is the center of polar coordinate,

The workpiece coordinate system origin is the polar coordinate center when the radius is specified in absolute mode.

Only when the local coordinate system (G52) is used, the origin of the local coordinate system is the center of the polar coordinate.



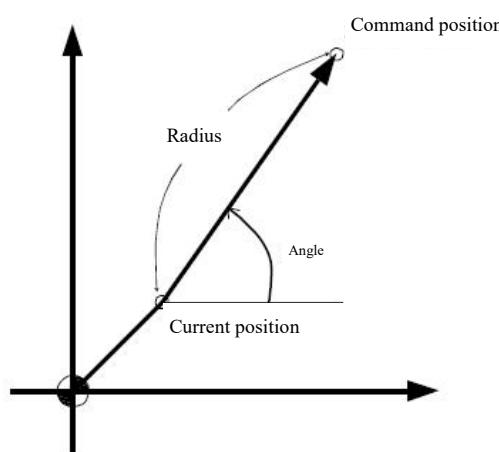
When the angle is in absolute mode



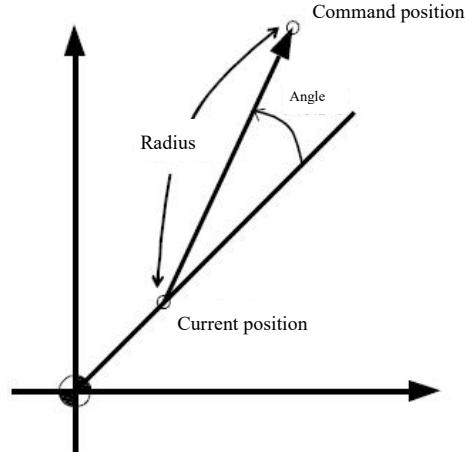
When the angle is in incremental mode

### (2) When the current position is the center of polar coordinate,

The current position is the polar coordinate center when the radius is specified in incremental mode.



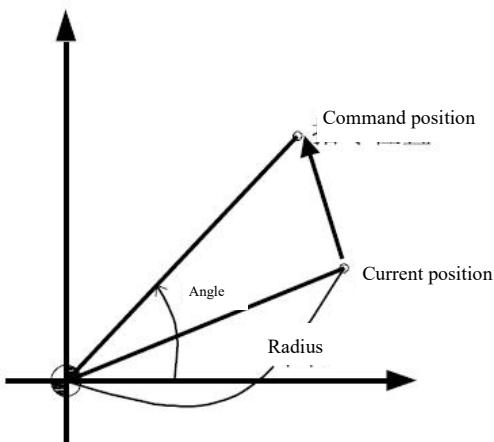
When the angle is in absolute mode



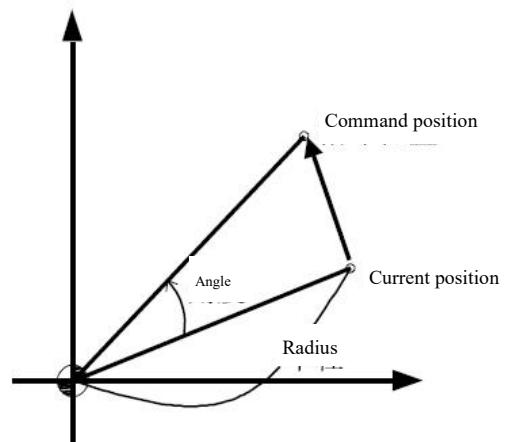
When the angle is in incremental mode

### (3) When radius command is ignored,

When the radius is ignored, the origin of the workpiece coordinate system is the polar coordinate center, and the distance from the polar coordinate center to the current position is the radius. Only when the local coordinate system (G52) is used, the local coordinate origin is the polar coordinate center.



When the angle is in absolute mode



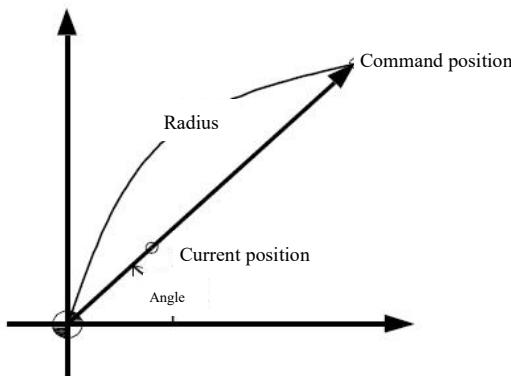
When the angle is in incremental mode

#### (4) When angle command is ignored,

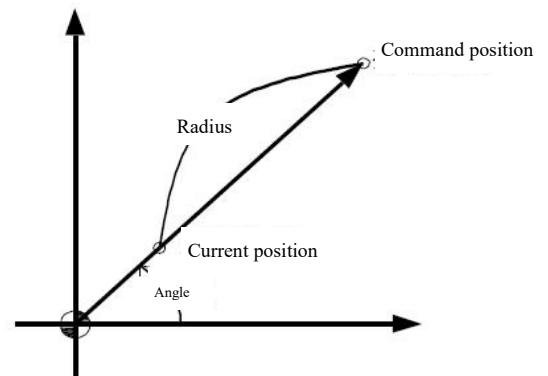
When the angle command is ignored, the angle of the current position in the workpiece coordinate system is the angle command.

When the radius is commanded in the absolute mode, the origin of the workpiece coordinate system is the polar coordinate center. Only when the local coordinate system (G52) is used, the origin of the local coordinate system is the polar coordinate center.

In addition, when the radius is specified in the incremental mode, the current position is the polar coordinate center.



When the angle is in absolute mode

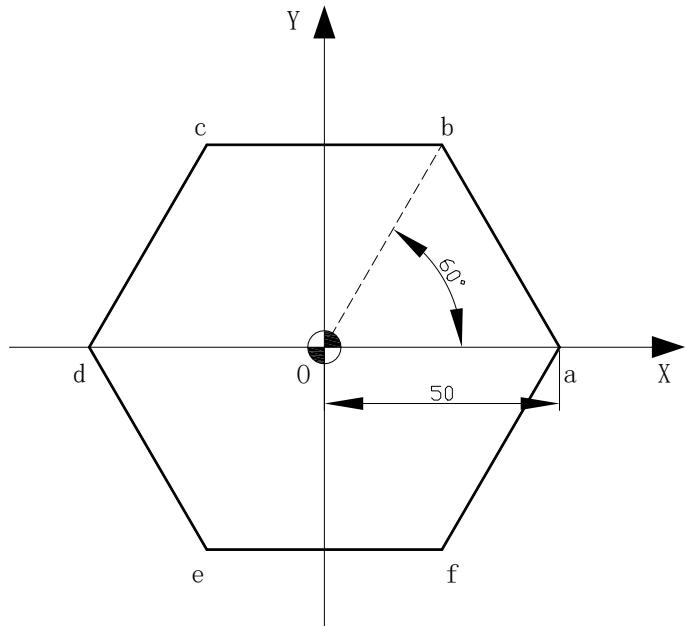


When the angle is in absolute mode



#### Example

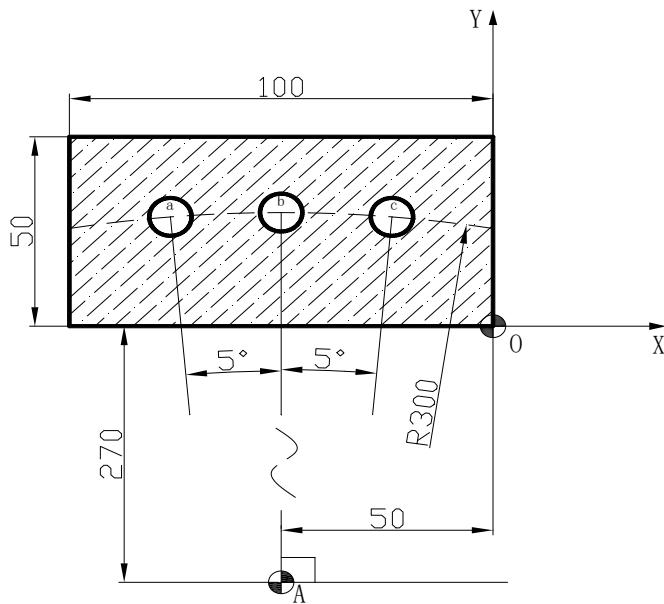
Example 1: Mill a hexagon with the polar coordinate programming, the workpiece origin is set at the center of the hexagon (as shown below), and the processing path is a→b→c→d→e→f.



<b>Processing path</b>	<b>Absolute programming</b>	<b>Incremental programming</b>	<b>Commanded position</b>
Move to point a	G54G0X50Y0	G54G0X50Y0	(X50, Y0)
Polar coordinate command starts	G17G90G16	G17G90G16	(X50, Y0)
a→b	G1X50Y60F120	G1X50Y60F600	(X25, Y43.3)
b→c	Y120	G91Y60	(X-25, Y43.3)
c→d	Y180	Y60	(X-50, Y0)
d→e	Y240	Y60	(X-25, Y-43.3)
e→f	Y300	Y60	(X25, Y-43.3)
f→a	Y360	Y60	(X50, Y0)
Polar coordinate command is disabled	G15	G15	(X50, Y0)
Program ends	M30	M30	

Example 2: As shown in the figure below, use polar coordinate programming to drill 3 holes with a diameter of 10mm on the workpiece.

(The workpiece coordinate system zero is O, and the rotation polar origin A of polar coordinate is outside the worktable the machine tool)



Processing path	Absolute programming	Incremental programming	Command position (X, Y, Z)
Move to a position above zero	G54G0X50Y0Z30	G54G0X50Y0Z30	(50, 0, 30)
Establish G52 local coordinate system	G52X-50Y-270	G52X-50Y-270	(50, 270, Z30)
Polar coordinate command starts	G17G90G16	G17G90G16	(50, 270, Z30)
Drill hole at c point in the plane	G82X300Y85Z-10R5 F100	G82X300Y85Z-10R 5F100	(26.147, 298.858, -10)
Drill hole at b point in the plane	Y90	G91Y5	(0, 300, -10)
Drill hole at a point in the plane	Y95	Y5	(-26.147, 298.858, -10)
Polar coordinate command is disabled	G15	G15	(-26.147, 298.858, 30)
Local coordinate system is cancelled	G52X0Y0	G52X0Y0	(-76.147, 28.858, 30)
Program ends	M30	M30	



### Note

(1) The axis commands accompanied by the following commands will not be regarded as polar coordinate commands;

- Dwell G04
- Programmable data input G10
- Local coordinate system G52
- Workpiece coordinate system change G92

- Machine coordinate system selection G53
- Coordinate rotation G68
- Scaling G51

- (2) In polar coordinate mode, the angle and radius R cannot be specified;
- (3) For polar coordinate programming, when radius is specified in absolute mode, the workpiece origin is set as the polar coordinate center; when radius is specified in incremental mode, the current position is set as the polar coordinate center. However, when only the angle is specified in the command, regardless of whether it is in absolute or incremental mode, the workpiece origin is set as the polar coordinate center.

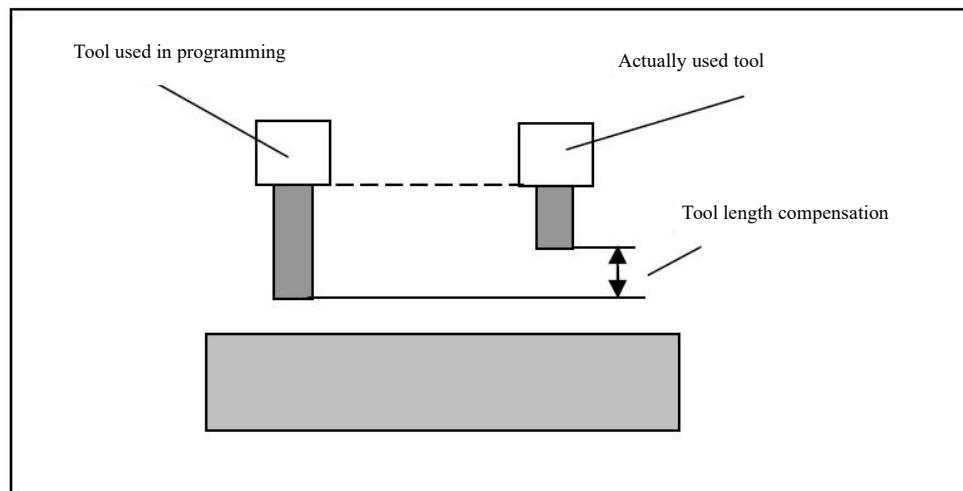
## 12 Tool Compensation Function

### 12.1 Milling Tool Length Compensation (G43/G44/G49) (M)



#### Function and Purpose

It is to set the difference between the tool length during programming and the actual tool length in the tool length compensation register. Calling this function can move the tool to the programmed end position without modifying the program, thus making the program universal.



#### Command Format

G43/G44 H\_ Z\_

.....

G49

Tool length compensation is specified with G43 and G44.

Parameter	Meaning
G43	Tool length compensation plus (The tool length compensation value is added to the theoretical position in the tool axis direction)
G44	Tool length compensation minus (The tool length compensation value is subtracted from the theoretical position in the tool axis direction)
H	The number of tool length compensation amount in the tool compensation table
G49	Cancel tool length compensation



#### Description

### Tool length compensation type

(1) According to the tool length compensation axis, the following two tool length compensation types can be used,

Type	Description	Format
A	Tool length compensation along basic Z axis	G43/G44 Z_H_
B	Tool length compensation along the vertical direction of the selected plane G17: XY plane; G18: ZX plane; G19: YZ plane;	G17 G43/G44 Z_H_ G18 G43/G44 Y_H_ G19 G43/G44 X_H_

(2) The tool length compensation types A and B are set by the parameters, and the related parameter are as below,

Parameter	Description
000012	Tool axis selection mode

000012: This parameter is used to determine which axis the G43/G44 tool length compensation function should be performed on.

0: The tool length compensation is always performed on Z axis;

1: Tool length compensation axis is switched based on the coordinate plane selection (G17/G18/G19) corresponding to Z/Y/X-axis respectively.

### Movement amount of tool length compensation

(1) Movement amount of tool length compensation: when G43 or G44 tool length compensation is executed, the movement amount is calculated according to the below formula:

G43 Z\_H\_; Z\_ + H\_ (tool length compensation) Compensation in + direction

G44 Z\_H\_; Z\_ - H\_ (tool length compensation) Compensation in - direction

As shown in the above calculations, regardless of whether the absolute command or the incremental value is used, the actual end point is of the coordinates which is compensated with the specified compensation amount based on the end point coordinates of programmed traverse command

(2) When there is length wear in the tool compensation table: for the execution of tool length compensation command G43 or G44, the movement amount is calculated according to the following formula

G43 Z\_H\_; Z\_ + H\_ (tool length compensation) + H\_ (tool length wear)

G44 Z\_H\_; Z\_ - H\_ (tool length compensation) - H\_ (tool length wear)

(3) When there is coordinate value in the workpiece coordinate system: for the execution of tool length compensation command G43 or G44, the movement amount is calculated according to the following formula

G43 Z\_ H\_ ; Z (workpiece coordinate system) + Z\_ + H\_ (tool length compensation)

G44 Z\_ H\_ ; Z (workpiece coordinate system) + Z\_ - H\_ (tool length compensation)

(4) When there is coordinate value in the workpiece coordinate system and length wear in the tool compensation table: for the execution of tool length compensation command G43 or G44, the movement amount is calculated according to the following formula

G43 Z\_ H\_ ; Z (workpiece coordinate system) + Z\_ + H\_ (tool length compensation) + H\_ (tool length wear)

G44 Z\_ H\_ ; Z (workpiece coordinate system) + Z\_ - H\_ (tool length compensation) - H\_ (tool length wear)

(5) When there is coordinate value in the workpiece coordinate system, and there is a coordinate value of external zero offset: for the execution of tool length compensation command G43 or G44, the movement amount is calculated according to the following formula

G43 Z\_ H\_ ; Z (workpiece coordinate system) + Z (external zero offset) + Z\_ + H\_ (tool length compensation)

G44 Z\_ H\_ ; Z (workpiece coordinate system) + Z (external zero offset) + Z\_ - H\_ (tool length compensation)

(6) When there is coordinate values in workpiece coordinate system and external zero offset, and there is length wear in the tool compensation table: for the execution of tool length compensation command G43 or G44, the movement amount is calculated according to the following formula

G43 Z\_ H\_ ; Z (workpiece coordinate system) + Z (external zero offset) + Z\_ + H\_ (tool length compensation) + H\_ (tool length wear)

G44 Z\_ H\_ ; Z (workpiece coordinate system) + Z (external zero offset) + Z\_ - H\_ (tool length compensation) - H\_ (tool length wear)

### Tool length compensation number

(1) The working range of the compensation number depends on the parameter setting. The relevant parameters are as follows:

Parameter	Description
000060	Number of tools stored in system

NC000060: This parameter is to set the number of tool of which the data (tool offset, wear, radius, tool nose direction, etc.) is saved in the tool compensation table. The value must be greater than or equal to the sum of the tools in each channel.

Max. value: 1000 Default: 100 Min. value: 0

(2) When the commanded compensation number exceeds the range, the system will give an alarm of "illegal tool compensation number".

(3) After the compensation number specified in G43 or G44 block, it cannot become the modal called later to be effective.

For example, H1 modal in N1 line cannot take effect in N4 line in the following program.

N1 G43 Z0 H1; Perform tool length compensation via H1

N2 G0 X0 Y0;

N3 G49 Z0; Tool length compensation is cancelled

N4 G43 Z0; Tool length compensation will not be performed through H1 again, and the compensation number must be specified again.

(4) In the G43/G44 modal, when G43/G44 is commanded again, the compensation will be performed according to the new compensation number, that is, the new offset value will not be added to the old offset value when the offset number is changed.

For example, the N2 line of the following program is compensated according to the new compensation number H2.

N1 G43 Z0 H1; Tool length compensation is performed via H1

N2 G43 Z0 H2; Tool length compensation is performed with the new compensation number H2

### **Cancel the tool length compensation**

(1) After the system restarts and M02, M30, G49 are executed, tool length compensation is cancelled.

(2) H0 is specified, tool length compensation is cancelled.

(3) When Reset or Emergency Stop is pressed during tool length compensation modal, tool length compensation is cancelled.

(4) When tool length compensation type B is used, the following items must be noted for canceling tool length compensation with G49.

(a) When the length compensation is cancelled with G49, only the length compensation in the last selected plane before G49 command is cancelled;

For example, in the below program, G49 in N6 line only cancels the length compensation in G19 plane.

N1 G28 X0 Y0 Z0;

N2 G92 X0 Y0 Z0;

N3 G17 G43 Z0 H1; Tool length compensation in XY plane is performed via H1

N4 G18 G43 Y0 H2; Tool length compensation in ZX plane is performed via H2

N5 G19 G43 X0 H3; Tool length compensation in YZ plane is performed via H3

N6 G49;

The length compensation only in G19 plane is cancelled

N7 G0 X0 Y0 Z0;

(b) When using G49 to cancel the length compensation in all planes, the plane selection command (G17/G18/G19) must be specified after the G49 command, and it must be specified in a separate line;

For example, the correct programming based on the above is as following

N1 .....

or

N1 .....

.....

.....

N6 G49 G17;

N6 G49 G17;

N7 G49 G18;

N7 G18;

N8 G49 G19;

N8 G19;

N9 .....

N9 .....

Wrong way: G49 G17 G18 G19, only the length compensation in the last plane selected before the G49 command.

#### **Actions when other commands are executed in the tool length compensation modal**

(1) Whether the tool length compensation will be restored after G53 or G28 is executed in the tool length compensation modal depends on the parameter setting. The relevant parameters are as follows:

Parameter	Description
000014	Whether tool length compensation is restored after G53/G28

000014: This parameter is to set whether to automatically restore the tool length compensation function after executing G53/G28 commands.

0: After executing G53/G28 command, the tool length compensation function will not be restored automatically.

1: After executing G53/G28 command, the tool length compensation function will be restored automatically.

(2) Whether the tool length compensation will be restored after the G30 command is executed in the tool length compensation modal depends on the setting of parameter 000014

(3) When G29 is executed in tool length compensation modal, the tool length compensation will not be cancelled, and cannot be controlled by 000014 parameter.

For example, the machine coordinate is Z55.0 after N4 line is executed when H1=50 in the following program

N1 G28 Z10;  
N2 G90 G92 Z0;  
N3 G43 Z0 H1; Tool length compensation is performed via H1.  
N4 G29 Z5; Machine coordinate is Z55.0. Machine coordinate is Z-45.0 when G44 is used.  
N5 G49; Tool length compensation is cancelled.

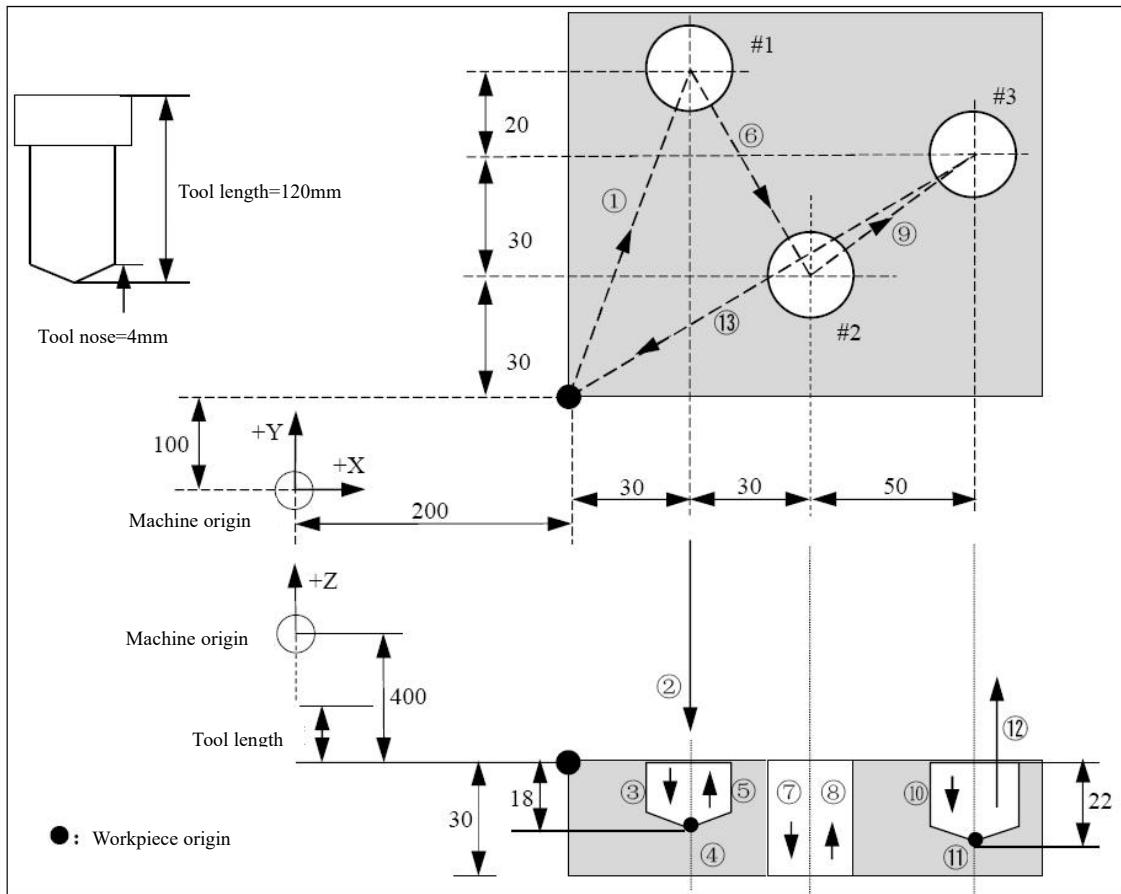
(4) When G54 to G59 commands are executed in the tool length compensation modal to change the workpiece coordinate system, the tool length compensation will not be cancelled, and the end point coordinates of the compensation axis will be recalculated based on the given coordinate system.



### Example

Create the machining program for the parts shown in the figure below with tool length compensation. Requirements are as follows:

- (1) Set the workpiece coordinate system in the G54 coordinate system based on the workpiece zero as shown in the figure
- (2) Process according to the path 1 to 13 indicated by the arrow
- (3) Write out the coordinate value in the workpiece coordinate system and the compensation value in the tool compensation table before programming
- (4) Write the comment and machine coordinate of each line of program
- (5) The program must be safe and reliable



Workpiece coordinate system: G54 (X200, Y100, Z-280) Compensation value: H01=-120

%1234

G54 G90 M03 S600 ; Select workpiece coordinate system G54, use absolute command G90 to program, spindle rotates CW

G00 Z50 ; Rapid traverse to Z50, (Z-230)

X0 Y0 ; X0 Y0, Rapid traverse to X0 Y0, (X200, Y100)

X30 Y80 ; ①, Rapid traverse to X30 Y80 (X230, Y180)

G43 Z5 H01 ; ②, Establish tool length compensation, and rapid traverse to Z25, (Z-395)

G01 Z-18 F300 ; ③, Z-18Process #1 hole to Z-18, (Z-418)

G04 P2000 ; ④, Pause for two seconds at the bottom of the hole

G00 Z5 ; ⑤, Rapid traverse to Z5, (Z-395)

X60 Y30 ; ⑥, Rapid traverse to X60 Y30, (X260, Y130)

G01 Z-40 ; ⑦, Process #2 hole to Z-40, (Z-440)

G00 Z5 ; ⑧, Rapid traverse to Z5, (Z-395)

X110 Y60 ; ⑨, Y60Rapid traverse to X110 Y60, (X310, Y160)

G01 Z-22 ; ⑩, Process #3 hole to Z-22, (Z-422)

G04 P2000 ; ⑪, Pause for two seconds at the bottom of the hole

G49 G0 Z50 ; ⑫, Cancel the tool length compensation, and rapid traverse to Z50, (Z-230)

X0Y0 ; ⑬, Rapid traverse to X0 Y0, (X200, Y100)

M05 ; Spindle stops

M30 ; Program ends



## Note

- (1) The direction of tool length compensation is always perpendicular to the plane selected by G17/G18/G19.
- (2) The compensation number H\_ must be given after G43/G44 command, otherwise the system will issue an alarm of "No compensation number specified".
- (3) The compensation axis (X/Y/Z) must be specified after G43/G44 command, or the traverse command of compensation axis must be specified before the next G43/G44 command, otherwise the length compensation will be invalid.
- (4) G43/G44/G49 are all modal codes and can be mutually cancelled, but they can be mutually cancelled only when they are not specified in the same line. When G43 and G44 are specified in the same line, the system will alarm; when G49 is specified in the same line as G43/G44, G49 will not take effect.
- (5) G43/G44/G49 For G43/G44/G49, after startup, emergency stop and reset, G49 state is the default.
- (6) When using G43/G44 to specify H0, the tool length compensation will be cancelled, but the modal display area is still G43/G44, and will not be changed to G49, so when H\_ is given separately at this time, the tool length compensation will take effect again.
- (7) When G49 is not used, use H0 to cancel the tool length compensation, and then add the tool length compensation with H\_; When H0 is used to cancel the tool length compensation, there is no tool length compensation until H\_ is used again.

For example,

N1 G43 Z0 H1	:	Tool length compensation is performed with H1
N2 G43 Z0 H0	:	Tool length compensation is cancelled with H0
N3 G0 Z5	:	There is no tool length compensation
N4 H2	:	Tool length compensation is performed with H2
N5 G0 Z0	:	There is tool length compensation
N6 G49	:	Tool length compensation is cancelled

- (8) After the tool length compensation is set in MDI, it will always be valid for the subsequent MDI program. The tool length compensation will only be cancelled after H0 is specified with reset, emergency stop and MDI, as well as G49 command being executed on MDI interface.
- (9) After the tool length compensation is set in MDI, it will not be effective for the program in the program file. After switching from the MDI interface to the program interface, the modal becomes the G49 modal, so it will not be effective.
- (10) When the G43/G44 tool length compensation program is stopped with reset or emergency stop, the tool length compensation will be cancelled. When the program is stopped with the dwell or switching mode, the tool length compensation will not be cancelled.

(11) After the tool length compensation is set with G43/G44, the tool length compensation will be performed based on the corresponding H number.

(12) In the auto mode, when using the breakpoint save and restore functions after the tool length compensation command, the system can correctly establish the tool length compensation after the program resumes execution. If there are multiple G43/G44 tool length compensation commands in the program, the system can also correctly establish tool length compensation through the corresponding G43/G44 commands after the breakpoint is restored.

(13) After the tool length compensation command is used to specify the line operation with any line function, the system can correctly establish the tool length compensation; If there are multiple G43/G44 tool length compensation commands in the program, the system can also correctly establish tool length compensation through the corresponding G43/G44 commands.

For example, when the following program runs from line N3 with any line function, the system can correctly establish tool length compensation

```
N1 G43 Z0 H1  
N2 G0 Z5  
N3 G0 Z10;  Use any line function to run from this line  
N4 G0 Z15  
N5 G0 Z20  
N6 G49;
```

## 12.2 Milling Tool Radius Compensation (G40/G41/G42) (M)



### Function and Purpose

When the CNC machine tool mills the contour of the workpiece, the tool center is usually used as the path for easy programming. The tool radius is not considered when programming, and the tool path is programmed based on the contour size of the workpiece. But there will be an offset (tool radius) between the actual tool path and the workpiece contour. Therefore, the offset of the tool center path is needed during programming to make the tool path consistent with the workpiece contour, which is called tool radius compensation function.

In addition, the tool radius is changed due to tool change or tool wear. With this function, user can directly modify the corresponding radius compensation value or wear value in the tool compensation table without modifying programming.

After the tool radius compensation is performed, the tool path is shown as the dotted line in the

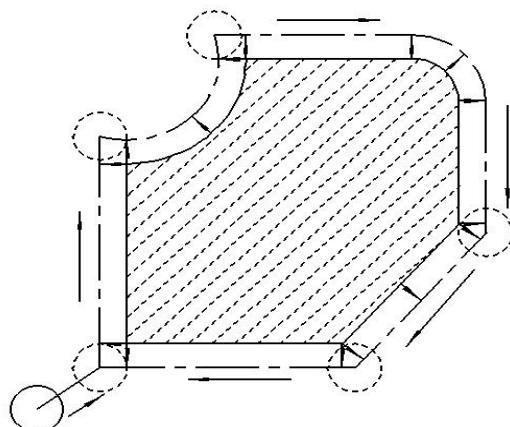


figure below:



### Command Format

G17 G41/G42 {  
  G00 X\_ Y\_ D\_  
  G01 X\_ Y\_ D\_}

G18 G41/G42 {  
  G00 X\_ Z\_ D\_  
  G01 X\_ Z\_ D\_}

G19 G41/G42 {  
  G00 Y\_ Z\_ D\_  
  G01 Y\_ Z\_ D\_}

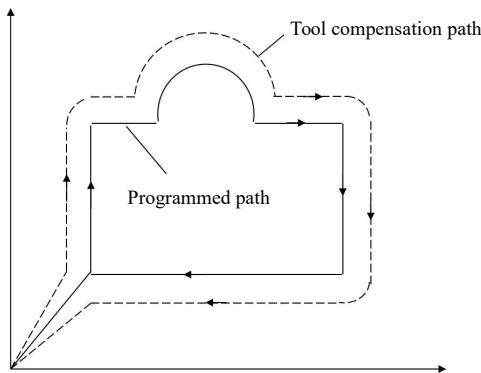
Parameter	Meaning
-----------	---------

	G17/G18/G19	To specify compensation plane, XY, XZ, ZY-plane respectively.
	G41/G42	Tool radius compensation is valid. G41: Tool radius compensation Left; G42: Tool radius compensation Right
	D	To specify the compensation number

## Description

### 1) Tool radius compensation direction

G41: Offset is performed to the left side of the tool path (as shown in the figure a below).



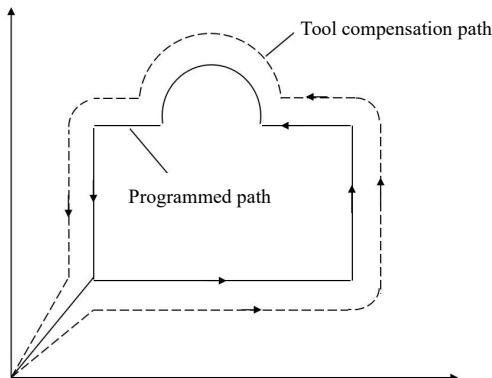
a) Left compensation

#### Description:

G41 Tool radius compensation Left

Viewed from the positive direction to the negative direction of the third axis that is not in the machining plane, the tool is on the left side of the workpiece relative to the direction of tool movement

G42: Offset is performed to the right side of the tool path (as shown in the figure b below).



b) Right compensation

#### Description:

G42 Tool radius compensation Right

Viewed from the positive direction to the negative direction of the third axis that is not in the machining plane, the tool is on the right side of the workpiece relative to the direction of tool movement

### 2) Tool radius compensation number

The effective range of tool compensation numbers in this system defaults to 99 groups, and the effective range of compensation numbers can be set by NC parameter 000060 (number of tool data saved by the system).

### 3) Tool radius compensation plane selection

Offset plane	Plane selection	IP
XY	G17	X_Y_
ZX	G18	X_Z_
YZ	G19	Y_Z_

The radius compensation calculation is performed on the plane determined by the G17/G18/G19 commands. The plane on which the compensation calculation is performed is called the compensation plane. The axis coordinate values that are not in the compensation plane will not be compensated. The projection of the tool path in each plane is compensated at the time of simultaneous 3-axis control.

The compensation plane must be switched when radius compensation is cancelled. If the plane is switched during compensation, the alarm "Coordinate plane cannot be switched during tool radius compensation" will appear and the machine tool will stop.

#### 4) Tool radius compensation amount setting

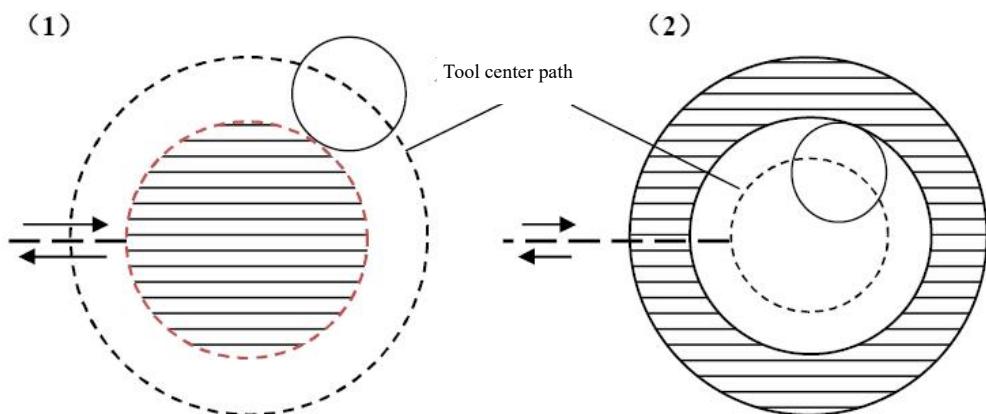
Use the D code to call the compensation amount set in the tool compensation table by specifying the number of the tool radius compensation amount.

The D code remains valid until another D code is designated.

The change of the tool radius compensation amount is usually carried out in the G40, reset or tool change mode.

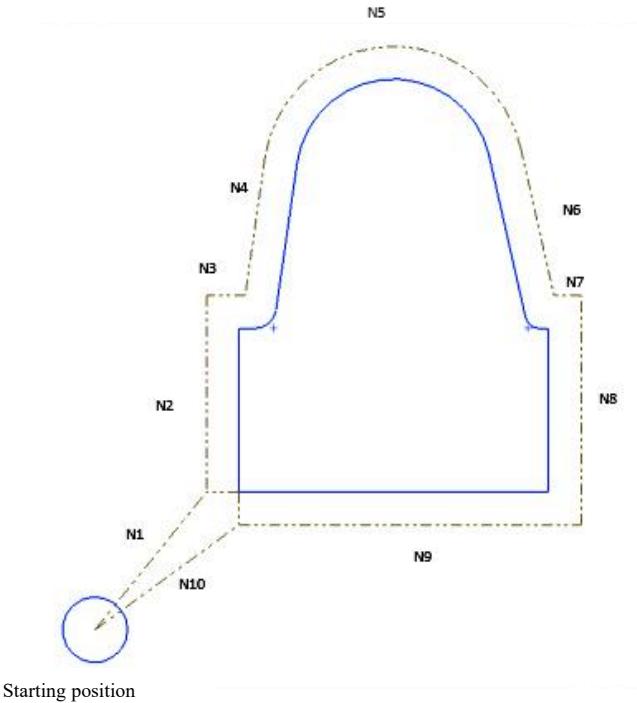
In general, the compensation amount is positive (+). If the compensation amount is negative (-), G41 and G42 are interchanged. If the compensation amount is positive, the tool center moves around the outer contour of the workpiece, then if the compensation is negative, it will move around the inner side, as shown in the figure below.

When the compensation amount is positive, the tool path is shown in Figure (1). If the compensation amount is changed to a negative value (-), the tool path is shown in Figure (2). Therefore, for the same program, both male and female shapes can be processed by the positive and negative values of the compensation, and the gap between them can also be adjusted with the compensation.





## Example



G92 X0 Y0 Z0; The absolute value is specified, and the tool is at the starting point

N1 G90 G17 G00 G41 D01 X25 Y25; Tool radius compensation (tool starts) starts

N2 G01 Y50 F150; Process from N2

N3 X30; Process from N3

N4 G03 X40 Y60 R10.0; Process from N3 to N4

N5 G01 X50 Y90; Process from N4

N6 G02 X90 Y90 R20; Process from N5

N7 G01 X100 Y60; Process from N6

N8 G03 X110 Y50 R10; Process from N6 to N7

N9 G1 X120; Process from N7

N10 X120 Y25; Process from N8

N11 X25 Y25; Process from N9

N12 G00 G40 X0 Y0; Cancel tool radius compensation, and tool returns to the starting position  
(X0,Y0,Z0)



## Note

- 1) The length compensation H command is ignored in the tool radius compensation, and only the D command is valid.
- 2) The plane selection for tool radius compensation is specified by G command (G17/G18/G19), and only the axes in the specified plane are compensated, the axes not in the plane are not compensated.

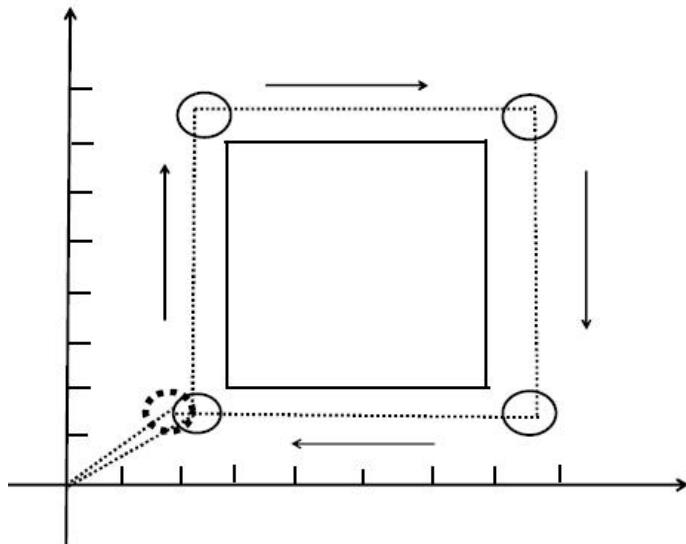
## 12.3 Detailed Explanation of Tool Radius Compensation

### 12.3.1 Tool Radius Compensation Action



#### Function and Purpose

The process of tool radius compensation is divided into three steps: tool compensation establishment, tool compensation in progress and tool compensation cancelation. As shown below:



#### Description

##### Tool radius compensation establishment and start

When the compensation is canceled, and the radius compensation command is used to establish tool radius compensation, if the following compensation establishment conditions are not met, there may occur compensation overcutting, undercutting or alarms.

- (1) The establishment of tool radius compensation mode is valid only in G00/G01 traverse command mode;

- (2) The tool radius must be established on the axis where movement distance is not 0 in the compensation plane. The compensation cannot be established when only the third axis movement is performed; however, in special cases, the system also supports the establishment of tool compensation with a movement amount of 0, and in order to prevent errors, it is recommended to give a movement greater than the tool radius value when creating tool compensation.
- (3) The establishment is usually performed with G01 to ensure the safety of the tool and workpiece
- (4) When the sign of the compensation value changes, the compensation direction of G41/G42 will also change. When the compensation value of G41 is positive, the compensation direction is on the left, and when the compensation value is negative, the compensation direction is on the right. G42 is also like this.
- (5) When using tangential cutting or normal cutting to establish tool compensation, if the establishment conditions are not met, auxiliary line segments can be added to establish tool compensation when cutting into the workpiece.
- (6) The number of tool radius compensation is:  $0 < D <$  maximum compensation number.
- (7) The establishment of tool radius compensation in circular interpolation (G02/G03) is invalid, the system will alarm, and the machine stops moving
- (8) In the process of radius compensation, G00 (rapid traverse positioning), G01 (linear interpolation) or G02/G03 (circular interpolation) is used to realize compensation. If two or more blocks where the tool does not move (such as auxiliary functions, pause, etc.) are executed during radius compensation, there will occur overcutting or undercutting.

### **In the process of tool radius compensation**

- (1) When starting the radius compensation, whether it is in auto mode or single-block mode, three traverse commands must be read in. If there is no three traverse commands, the execution will be performed after reading up to 5 consecutive blocks.
- (2) When the radius compensation is valid, the compensation plane must not be switched, otherwise it will alarm and stop the movement.
- (3) In the state of radius compensation, the linear movement of the milling cutter and the radius for the inner circular cutting must be greater than or equal to the radius of the milling cutter, otherwise it may cause interference and overcutting.

### **When tool radius compensation is cancelled**

The cancellation of tool radius compensation needs to be executed in the G00 or G01 block. When any of the following conditions is met, the system enters the radius compensation cancellation state.

- (1) When the machine is turned on, the system will initialize and restore the default tool compensation cancellation state.
- (2) After machine is reset.
- (3) The tool compensation cancellation command G40 is executed.
- (4) M02 and M30 commands with the reset function are executed.
- (5) When the block where the tool radius compensation offset number is 0 is executed.



### Example

```
%0001
G54G90G17G0Z50
X0Y0
M3S10000
G41G01X30Y20D01 ; Tool radius compensation is established, and register value of
                   No.1 tool compensation is called
Y70
X70
Y20
X30
G40G01X0Y0 ; Tool radius compensation is cancelled.
M30
```



### Note

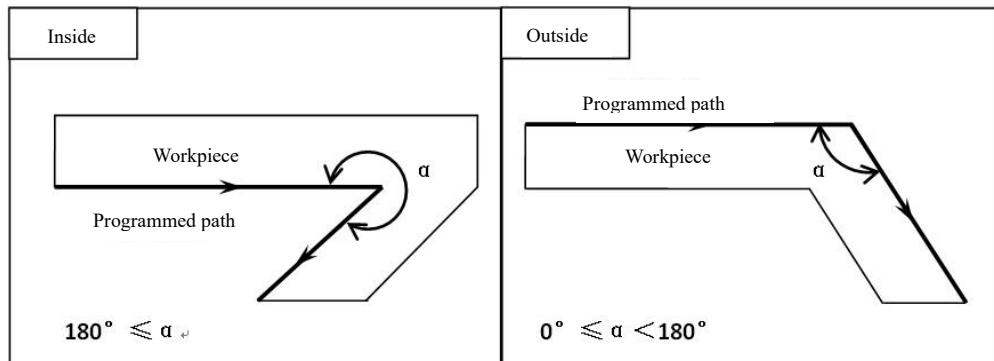
It is invalid when the radius compensation is cancelled by the circular command (G02/G03). If the circular command is designated for the cancellation, an alarm will be issued and the machine tool will stop moving.

#### 12.3.2 Tool Radius Compensation Action Diagram



### Function and Purpose

Inside and outside: When the included angle of the tool path established by two programs exceeds 180°, the path is referred to as "inside". When the included angle is between 0° and 180°, it is referred to as "outside".



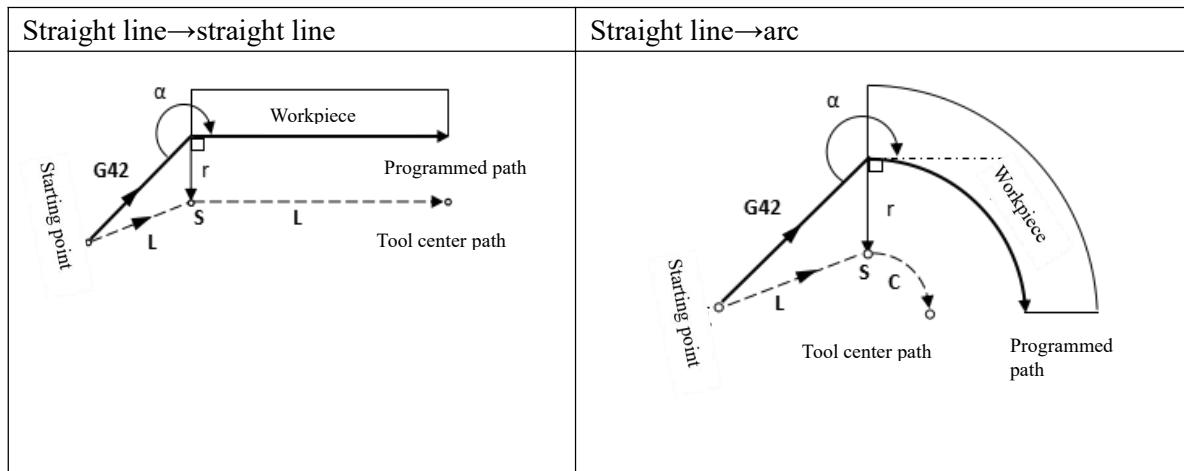
### Description

#### Action of tool radius compensation establishment and start

Meaning of sign

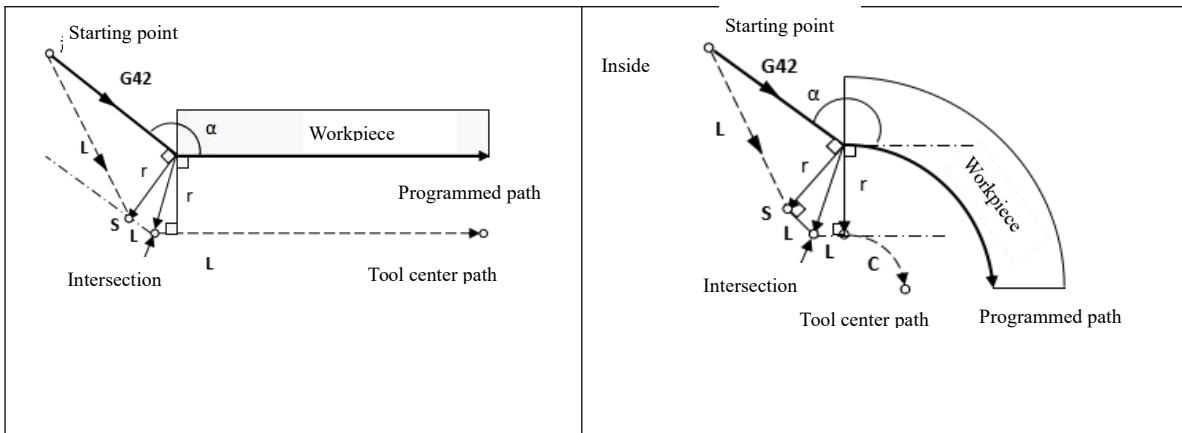
- S indicates that this position is the starting point for cutting.
- L indicates that the tool moves in a straight line.
- C indicates that the tool moves along an arc.
- r indicates tool radius compensation value.

(1) The tool moves around the inside of the corner ( $\alpha \geq 180^\circ$ )

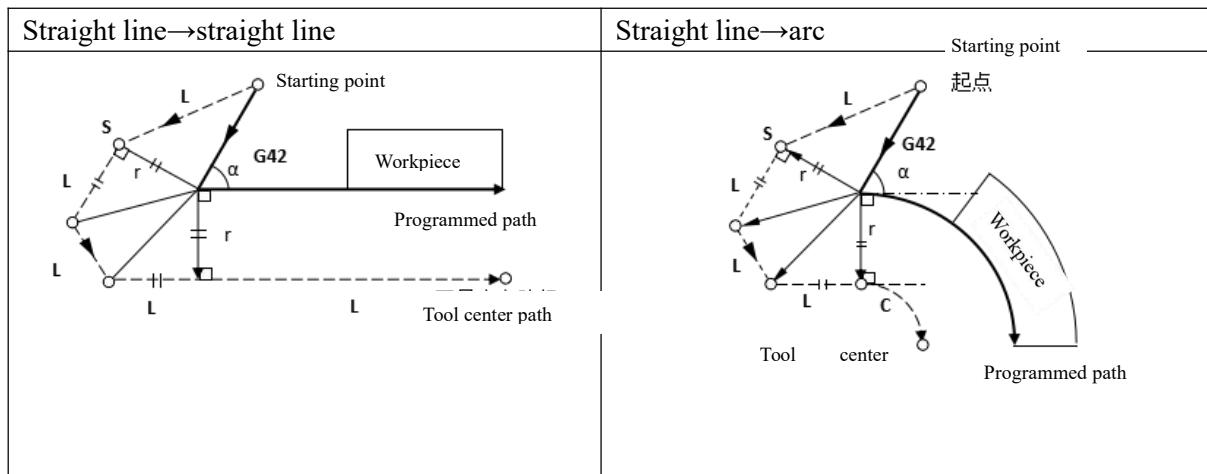


(2) The tool moves around the outside of the corner ( $0^\circ \leqslant \alpha < 180^\circ$ )

<b>Straight line→straight line</b>	<b>Straight line→arc</b>
------------------------------------	--------------------------

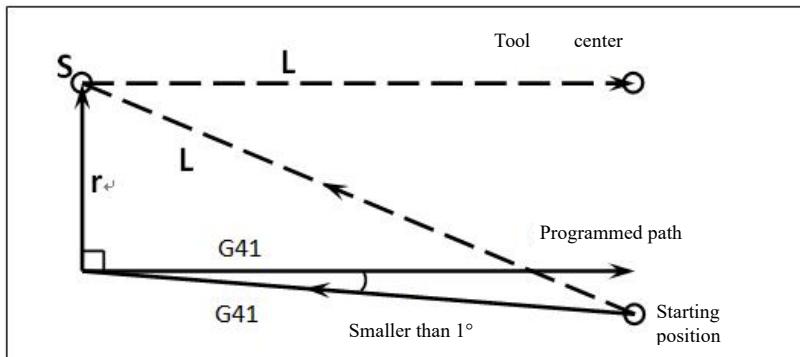


(3) The tool moves around the outside of the corner ( $\alpha < 90^\circ$ )



(4) The tool moves around the outside of the acute corner less than  $1^\circ$  ( $\alpha < 1^\circ$ )

Straight line → straight line



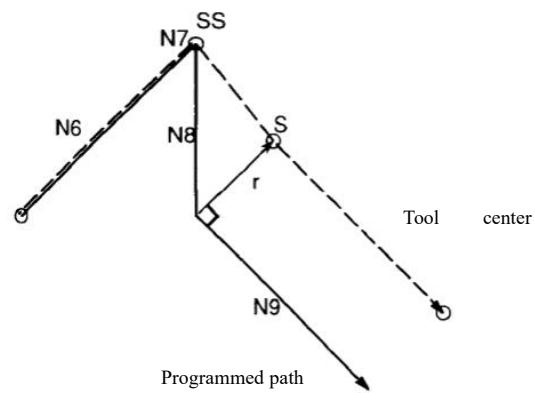
(5) There is no tool movement command in the starting block

If there is no tool movement command in the starting block, no offset is established.

```

G91 G40 .....
.....
.....
N6 X100 Y100
N7 G41 X0
N8 Y-100
N9 Y-100 X100

```



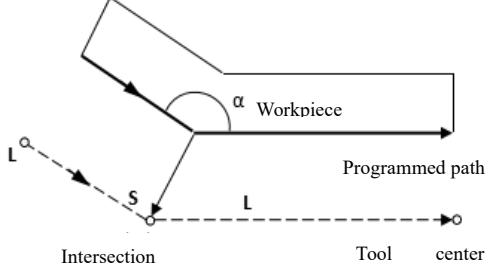
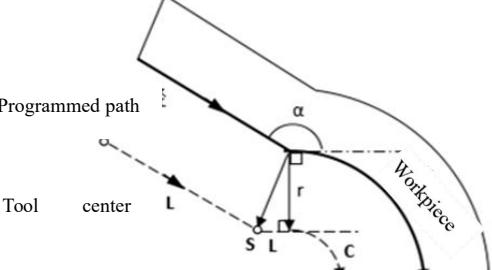
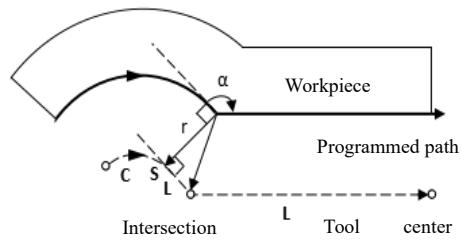
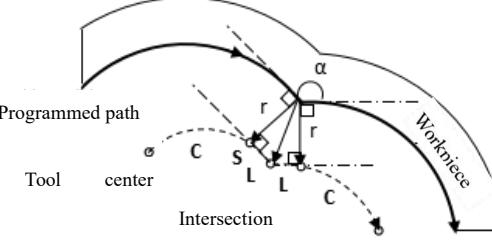
### Action of tool radius compensation in progress

- a) For the programmed path (G00, G01, G02, G03), the system calculates the tool path from a straight line/arc, and performs tool radius compensation.
- b) During the compensation, if the same compensation command (G41/G42) is specified, the second compensation command will be ignored.
- c) During compensation, if five blocks without movement are consecutively specified, overcutting or undercutting will occur.
- d) In tool radius compensation, when M00 is designated, read-ahead is prohibited.

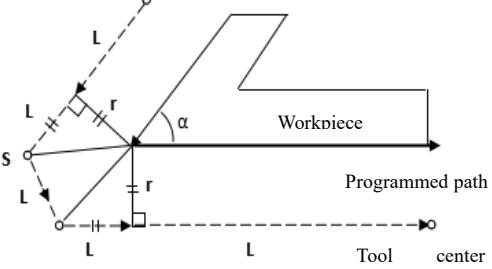
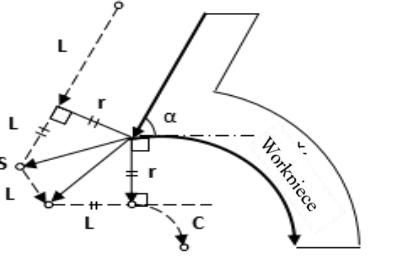
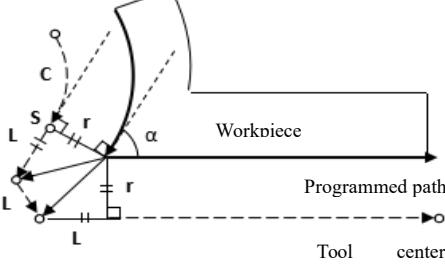
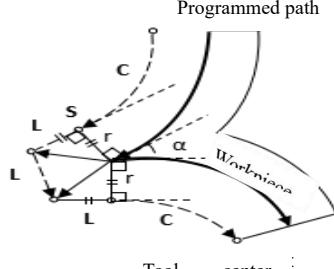
(1) The tool moves around the inside of the corner ( $\alpha \geq 180^\circ$ )

Straight line→straight line	Straight line→arc
Arc→straight line	Arc→arc

(2) The tool moves around the outside of the corner ( $90^\circ \leq \alpha < 180^\circ$ )

Straight line→straight line	Straight line→arc
 <p>Workpiece</p> <p>Programmed path</p> <p>Intersection</p> <p>Tool center</p>	 <p>Programmed path</p> <p>Tool center</p> <p>Intersection</p> <p>Workpiece</p>
Arc→straight line	Arc→arc
 <p>Workpiece</p> <p>Programmed path</p> <p>Intersection</p> <p>Tool center</p>	 <p>Programmed path</p> <p>Tool center</p> <p>Intersection</p> <p>Workpiece</p>

(3) The tool moves around the outside of the corner ( $\alpha < 90^\circ$ )

Straight line→straight line	Straight line→arc
 <p>Workpiece</p> <p>Programmed path</p> <p>Intersection</p> <p>Tool center</p>	 <p>Workpiece</p> <p>Programmed path</p> <p>Tool center</p>
Arc→straight line	Arc→arc
 <p>Workpiece</p> <p>Programmed path</p> <p>Intersection</p> <p>Tool center</p>	 <p>Programmed path</p> <p>Tool center</p> <p>Workpiece</p>

### Action at the time of tool radius compensation cancellation

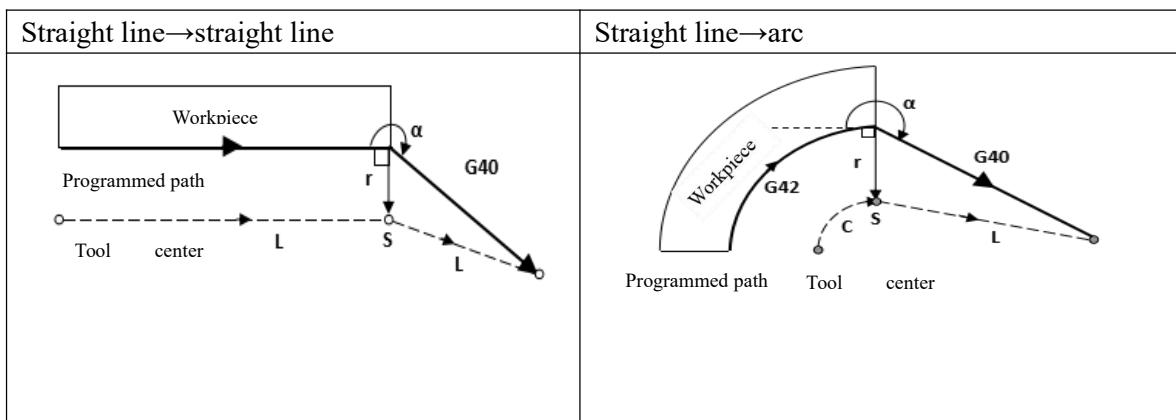
To cancel the tool radius compensation, there must be a movement command other than the circular command. If the radius compensation is canceled in the circular command, the system will issue an alarm.

When any of the following conditions is met, the tool radius compensation is cancelled.

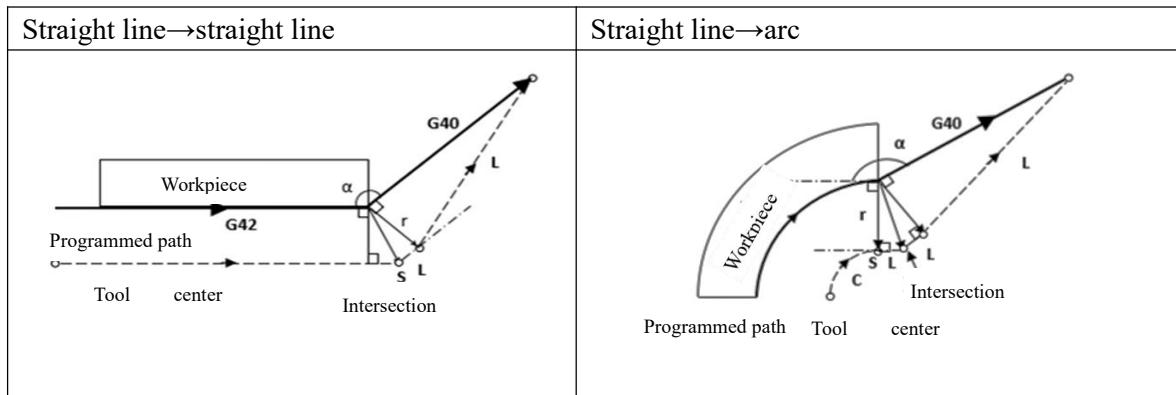
a) G40 is executed.

b) Compensation number D00 is executed.

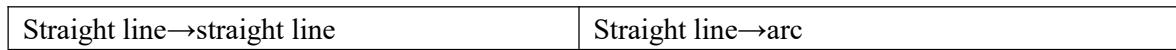
(1) In the block where there is movement cancellation, when the tool moves around the inside of the corner ( $\alpha \geq 180^\circ$ )

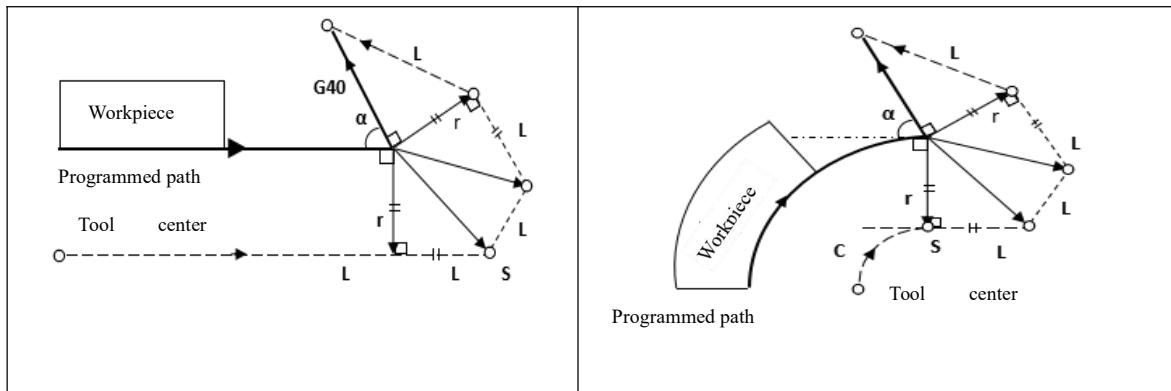


(2) In the block where there is movement cancellation, when the tool moves around the outside of the obtuse angle ( $90^\circ \leq \alpha < 180^\circ$ )



(3) In the block where there is movement cancellation, when the tool moves around the outside of the acute angle ( $\alpha < 90^\circ$ )





### 12.3.3 Compensation Direction Change During Tool Radius Compensation



#### Function and Purpose

The tool radius compensation direction is determined by the tool radius compensation command (G41/G42) and the sign of the compensation value.

Tool radius compensation command	Compensation value sign +	Compensation value -
G41	Compensation left	Compensation right
G42	Compensation right	Compensation left

The system does not support the use of G41 and G42 to change the compensation direction, and an alarm "The tool compensation direction is not allowed to be changed during radius compensation" will appear during use. It is not recommended to change the compensation direction by changing the compensation sign during the compensation process, because different programming compensation methods and use environments may result in different effects.



#### Example

Note: The following changes the compensation direction by changing the sign of the compensation amount during the compensation process. Examples of programming will show the following paths. (It is not recommended to use tool direction change).

#### The compensation direction is changed (straight line to straight line)

- There is a path intersection when changing the compensation direction

	<pre>%1234 G90G54G0X-50Y50 G41G01X-50Y20D1 (compensation value is 5) X-30Y0 X30 X50Y20D2 (compensation value is -5) Y50</pre>
--	---

	M30
--	-----

- There is no path intersection when changing the compensation direction

	%1234 G90 G54 G0 X-60 Y-30 G41 G01 X-50 Y-20 D1 (compensation value is 5) X-30 Y0 X30 Y0 X50 Y-20 D2 (compensation value is -5) Y-50 M30
--	---

#### The compensation direction is changed in the way of (straight line to arc)

- There is a path intersection when changing the compensation direction

	%1234 G90 G54 G0 X-50 Y30 G41 G01 X-50 Y0 D1 (compensation value is 5) X-30 Y0 G2 X30 Y0 I30 J0 D2 (compensation value is -5) G1 X50 Y0 D1 (compensation value is 5) G40 M30
--	---

- There is no path intersection when changing the compensation direction

	%1234 G90 G54 G0 X-50 Y30 G41 G01 X-50 Y0 D1 D1 (compensation value is 5) X-30 Y0 G3 X30 Y0 I30 J0 D2 (compensation value is -5) G1 X50 Y0 D1 (compensation value is 5) M30
--	---

### The compensation direction is changed (arc to arc)

Note: For the direction change programming for arc to arc, the system does not support the following two programming methods.

- There is a path intersection when changing the compensation direction

 G41 feed direction	<pre>%1234 G90 G54 G0 X-50 Y0 G41 G01 X0 Y0 D1 (compensation value is 5) G2X53.64Y18.47I30J0 X140.66Y0I41.55           J-18.47D2 (compensation value is -5) G1X150 M30 (This programming mode is not supported for the direction change)</pre>
------------------------	--

- There is no path intersection when changing the compensation direction

 G41 feed direction	<pre>%1234 G90 G54 G0 X-50 Y0 G41 G01 X0 Y0 D1 (compensation value is 5) G3X18.02Y-4.04I9.03J1.7 X37.26Y-2.18I9.26 J3.7 G2X53.12Y10.61I13.99J-1.11D2 (compensation value is -5) G1X50 M30 (This programming mode is not supported for the direction change)</pre>
------------------------	---

### Linear reciprocating motion changes the direction of tool compensation vector

	<pre>%1234 G90G54G0X-30Y0 G41G1X0Y0D1 (compensation value is 5) X80 G01X0D2 (compensation value is -5) G40 G01 X-30 M30</pre>
--	---

### 12.3.4 When Tool Radius Compensation is not Executed



#### Function and Purpose

In radius compensation mode, when the commands (G28, G53) are executed, the compensation vector will be temporarily invalid. After this type of command is executed, it will automatically return to the compensation mode, and there is no need to cancel or add the compensation. The point where the compensation vector is cancelled is the command point of the program. When the compensation mode is restored, go directly to the command point and complete the restoration of the compensation vector.



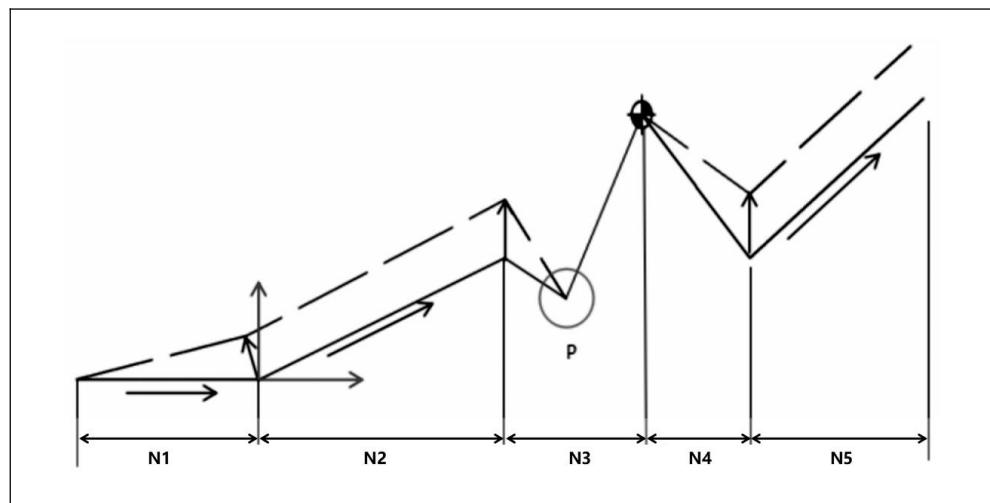
### Description

#### (1) Reference point return command G28 in the radius compensation mode

At the intermediate point (there is no intermediate point when G91 is used, it is directly the reference point), the compensation vector becomes 0

Example: %1234

```
G90G54G0X-30Y0
N1G41G1X0Y0D1
N2X40Y15
N3G28X50Y20
N4X80 Y30
N5X120 Y20
M30
```



----- Tool center path after compensation

— Tool path when compensation is not executed

Point P is the position of the intermediate point at the time of reference point return. If there is no intermediate point, it directly returns to the reference point.

#### (2) Direct machine coordinate system programming command G53 in radius compensation mode

In the G53 command (basic machine coordinate system selection), the compensation vector will

be temporarily cancelled.

### 12.3.5 There is a Block without Movement in Tool Radius Compensation



#### Function and Purpose

In the process of tool compensation creation and execution, the following 5 blocks will be read ahead to establish the tool compensation path, so when there are continuous blocks without movement in the program, the system will deal with it as follows.

The following blocks are regarded as non-moving blocks,

Non-moving block type	Example
M auxiliary code	M03/M04/M05/M06/M08
S speed command	S300
T tool number command	T6/Grouping T101
G04 dwell command	G04 X5/G04 P5000
Programmable data input block	G10 L10 P_
Coordinate system setting	G92 X0 Y0
The third axis movement command in the compensation plane	G17 Z10
G code	G90/G94/G95/G08/G09/G64/G65
The movement amount is 0	G91 X0

M00, M01, M02, and M30 are treated as M codes of read-ahead prohibition.

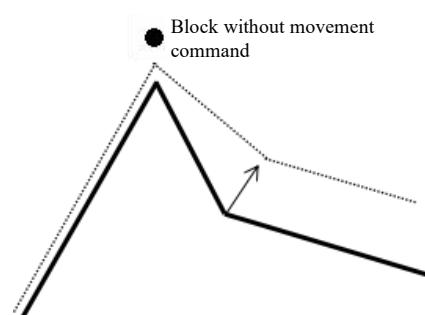


#### Description

##### When starting to establish compensation,

At the beginning of the compensation establishment, there are more than 5 consecutive blocks without movement and the read-ahead prohibition M command, it does not affect the establishment of compensation.

```
%1234
G92X0Y0
G0 X30 Y60
G41 D1
G4X2
F1000
S500
M3
N1G1X20Y-50
X50Y-20
```



(Note 1) When G41 is used to establish tool compensation, there is no movement amount, and there is no movement in 5 consecutive blocks. The tool compensation path is executed when the block N1 is executed. At this time, the compensation path is not affected when the entire program is creating tool compensation.

### In the compensation mode

(1) When there are no over 4 continuous blocks without movement, and there is no M command of read-ahead prohibition in the compensation mode, the vector that the length equal to the compensation value will be generated in the vertical direction of the movement direction of the previous and next blocks. The non-movement block is executed at the vector stop point after compensation.

<pre>%0001 G90G54G0X0Y-30 G42G01X0Y0D1 N1X30Y50 N2G04P1000 ; Program block without movement N3X80 .....</pre>	
---	--

(2) Several blocks without tool movement should not be commanded continuously.

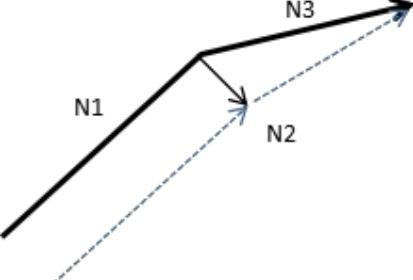
If there are more than 4 consecutive non-movement blocks, and the M commands of read-ahead prohibition, a vector with a length equal to the compensation value will also be generated in the vertical direction of the movement direction of the previous and next blocks, and the non-movement block will stop at the vector point after the compensation.

<pre>%0001 G90G54G0X0Y-30 G42G01X0Y0D1 N1X30Y50 G04P1000 G91X0 M3S300 F2000 M00 ; Non-movement block N3X80 .....</pre>	
--	--

Note: The block without movement in the figure means: execute the program between N1 and N3.

### The non-movement command is executed while the compensation is cancelled

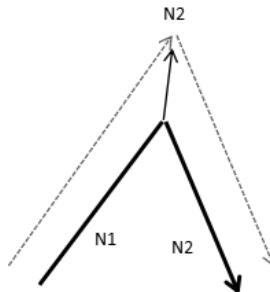
When the non-movement block and G40 command are executed at the same time, only the compensation vector is cancelled.

%0001 G90G54G0X0Y-30 G42G01X0Y0D1 N1X30Y50 N2G40 ; Non-movement block N3X80Y30	
---	--

### 12.3.6 Action Insertion in Tool Radius Compensation

#### MDI insertion command

- 1) Non-movement command is inserted in MDI (tool path will not change)

%0001 G90G54G0X0Y-30 G42G01X0Y0D1 N1X30Y50 N2 ; Insert the execution of M3S1000 in MDI N3X55Y20 .....	
--	---

The MDI mode can be switched to only when the feed is held, so when running to the N1 block, the single-block running mode is switched to, and after entering the feed hold, the MDI mode is switched to for the insertion of a non-movement command.

- 2) Insert a movement command in MDI

The system runs the program of radius compensation in auto mode. If a movement command is input in MDI and the position of the machine tool is changed when the program is paused, the system will alarm that it is not at the breakpoint position when it returns to the program to run. It can continue to run after resuming the breakpoint position, and the compensation is added normally.

#### Manual insertion action

The system runs the program in radius compensation in auto mode. If each axis of the machine tool is moved in JOG mode, and the position of the machine tool is changed when the program is paused, the system will alarm that it is not at the breakpoint position when it returns to the program to run. It can continue to run after resuming the breakpoint position, and the compensation is added normally.

### 12.3.7 Change of Compensation Value in Tool Radius Compensation



#### Function and Purpose

In principle, do not change the compensation number randomly in the radius compensation mode. Different compensation numbers may correspond to different compensation values, and the programmed trajectory will also change. If the compensation number is changed, the following actions are performed.

The program code format for changing compensation number is as follows,

```
G41G01.....D(r1)  
G0/G01/G02/G03 X_ Y_  
G0/G01/G02/G03 X_ Y_  
G0/G01/G02/G03 X_ Y_ D(r2) ; Compensation number is changed from r1 to r2  
G0/G01/G02/G03 X_ Y_  
.....
```

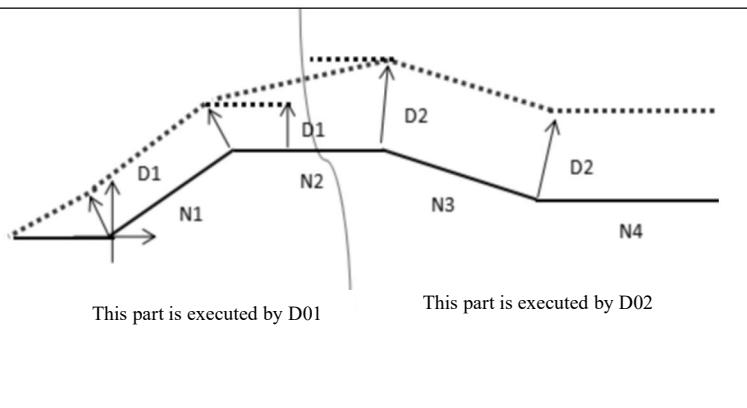


#### Description

##### 1) Path of straight line→straight line

The programmed path is an acute angle,

```
G90G54G0X-30Y0  
G41G1X0Y0D01  
(Compensation value is 5)  
N1X20Y15  
N2X40Y15  
N3X60Y10D02  
( Compensation value is  
10)  
N4X80  
.....
```



----- Tool center path after compensation

——— Tool path before compensation

The programmed path is an obtuse,

G90G54G0X-30Y0

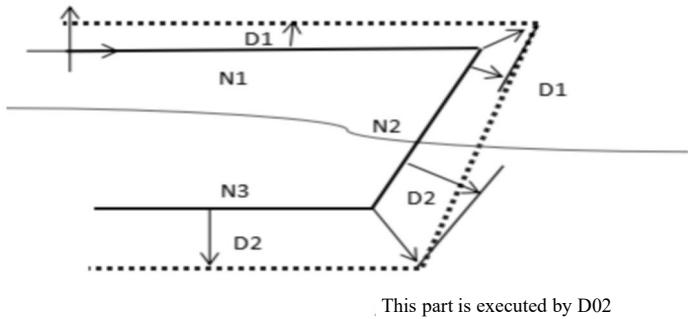
G41G1X0Y0D01

(Compensation value is 5)  
N1X50Y0  
N2X40Y-20

N3X-20D02 (Compensation value is 10)

.....

This part is executed by D01



This part is executed by D02

## 2) Path of straight line→arc

Change of compensation amount inside sharp corners

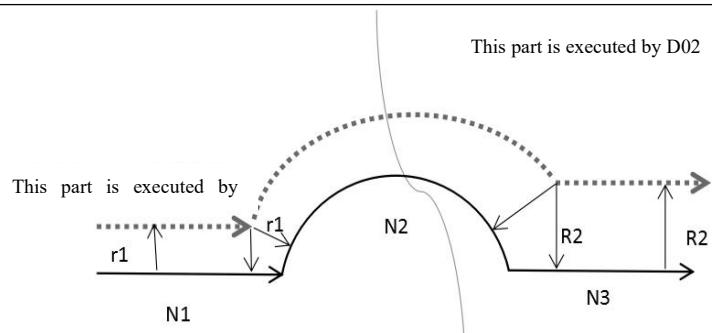
G90G54G0X-30Y0

G41G1X0Y0D01

(Compensation value is 5)  
N1X20Y0  
N2G2X60Y0I20J0D02  
N3X90Y0 ( Compensation value is 10)

.....

This part is executed by D02



Change of compensation amount outside the sharp corner

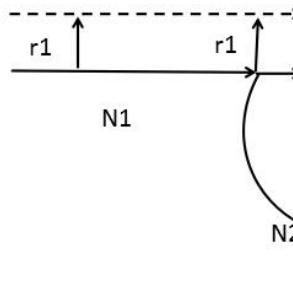
G90G54G0X-30Y0

G41G1X0Y0D01

(Compensation value is 5)  
N1X20Y0  
N2G3X40Y-20I20J0D2  
N3X90 ( Compensation value is 10)

.....

This part is executed by D01



This part is executed by D02

N3

## 12.3.8 Interference Check



### Function and Purpose

Usually, the overcutting of tool may occur after program read-ahead and tool radius compensation, which is referred to as interference. The interference check function can check the tool overcut in advance (even if there is no overcut, the interference check is performed). However, this function cannot find out all interference.



### Description

There are two modes for interference check via parameter setting.

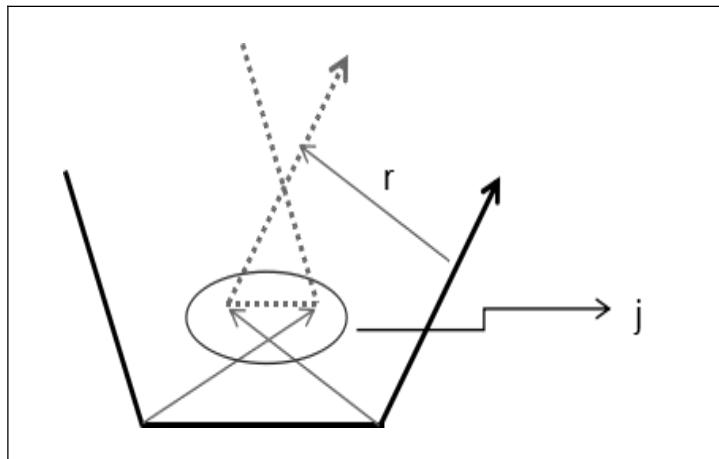
Function	Parameter	Action
Interference check alarm function	Interference alarm control Enable	Before the overcut interference occurs during the compensation, the system will alarm and stop running
Interference check avoidance function	Auto correct interference Enable	The path is changed to avoid overcutting

Note: When parameter 010046 is set to 0, the interference alarm function is turned on.

When parameter 010046 is set to 1, the auto interference correction function is turned on.

### As the compensation interference condition

In the pre-reading 4 blocks, when there are movement commands in 3 blocks, and the compensation calculation vector on each movement command contact crosses the compensation path, it is regarded as the interference.



r: compensation amount      j: the position the cross vector occurs

..... Tool center path after compensation

— Tool path before compensation

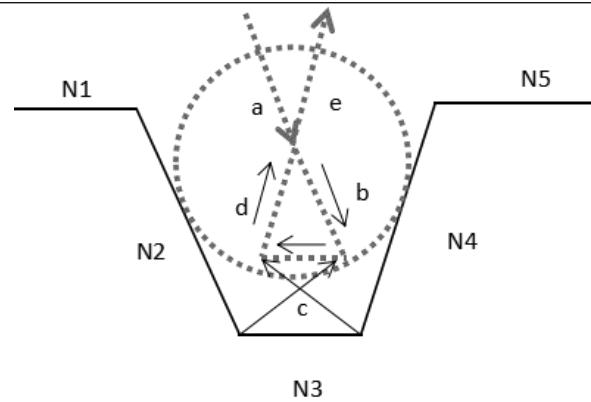
Two modes are set to run the program with interference, the specific situations are as follows:

**Example 1: use a tool with a larger diameter to process a part containing a sharp corner and a line segment**

```

Left compensation
G90G54G0X-30Y0
N1G01G41X0Y0F1000
N2G01G41X20Y-30F1000
N3X30
N4X50Y0
.....

```



### 1) Interference alarm

When parameter 010046 is set to 0, the interference alarm function is turned on. The parameter 010047 is set to 4 by default; When executing the above program, if an alarm is issued before N1 block, system stops running.

### 2) Interference avoidance

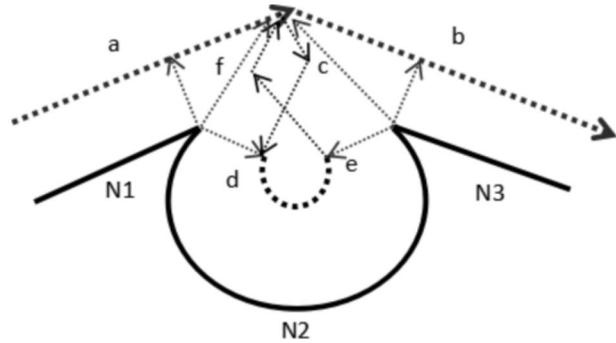
The intersection calculation of N2 and N4 blocks is executed, the interference avoidance vector is created, the compensation path is automatically corrected, and the path is corrected to the a-e path.

### **Example 2: Use a tool with a larger diameter to process the parts containing an arc of a smaller radius**

```

Left compensation
G90G54G0X_Y_
N1G01G41X_Y_F1000
N2G01X_Y_F1000
N3G2X_Y_I_J_
N4X_Y_
.....

```



### 1) Interference alarm

When parameter 010046 is set to 0, the interference alarm function is turned on. The parameter 010047 is set to 4 by default; When executing the above program, if an alarm is issued before N1 block, system stops running.

### 2) Interference avoidance

Through the interference check processing, due to the path crossing occurs at points c and f, the intersection calculation of N1 and N3 blocks is executed, the interference avoidance vector is created, the compensation path is automatically corrected, and the path is corrected to the a-b path.

## 13 Programmable Data Input (G10/G11)

### 13.1 Programmable Data Input Command (G10/G11)



#### Function and Purpose

Through G10/G11 command, user can dynamically modify system data in the program. G10 is a modal command. When G10 is specified, the programming data input mode can be entered, and the modified system data will take effect in time. When G11 command is called, this mode is cancelled.

The function list is as follows:

Function	G code
Input G54~G59 workpiece coordinate system origin	G10 L2 Pp IP_
Input G54.X extended workpiece coordinate system origin	G10 L20 Pp IP_
System parameter output	G10 L53 PpRr
Cancel user-defined input	G11
Milling tool geometry compensation value (length compensation) H input	G10 L10 PpRr
Milling tool geometry compensation value (radius compensation) D input	G10 L12 PpRr
Turning tool offset data input	G10 L14 Pp X_Z_R_Q_Y_J_K_
Single cutting time input	G10 L78 Pp
Coordinates in workpiece coordinate system converts to coordinates in machine coordinate system	G10 L43 PpX_Y_Z_A_C_R_
Coordinates in machine coordinate system converts to coordinates in workpiece coordinate system	G10 L44 PpX_Y_Z_A_C_Rr
Coordinates in workpiece coordinate system converts to coordinates in feature coordinate system	G10 L45 X_Y_Z_I_J_K_Rr
Coordinates in feature coordinate system converts to coordinates in workpiece coordinate system	G10 L46 X_Y_Z_I_J_K_Rr
Coordinates in machine coordinate system converts to coordinates in feature coordinate system	G10 L47 Pp X_Y_Z_A_C_I_J_K_Rr
Coordinates in feature coordinate system converts to coordinates in machine coordinate system	G10 L48 Pp X_Y_Z_A_C_I_J_K_Rr
Capture in feature coordinate system	G10 L49 Pp

### 13.2 Workpiece Coordinate System Origin Input



#### Function and Purpose

According to the G10 command, the workpiece zero point (G54 to G59) offset can be

set/changed from the beginning of the program. In the absolute (G90) mode, the specified compensation amount becomes the new compensation amount; in the incremental (G91) mode, the currently set compensation amount is added to the specified compensation amount to become the new compensation amount.



### Command Format

G10 L2 Pp\_ IP\_

Parameter	Meaning
Pp	To specif the workpiece origin offset of the workpiece coordinate systems 1-6. ➤ 1 corresponds to G54 workpiece coordinate system ➤ 2 corresponds to G55 workpiece coordinate system ➤ 3 corresponds to G56 workpiece coordinate system ➤ 4 Corresponds to G57 workpiece coordinate system ➤ 5 corresponds to G58 workpiece coordinate system ➤ 6 corresponds to G59 workpiece coordinate system
IP	The workpiece origin offset of axis in absolute mode. It will be added to the original offset of the workpiece origin of axis in incremental mode.



### Example

%1002

G54 ; G54 initial value

G01X0Y0Z0

G90G10L2P1X100Y100Z100 ; G54 workpiece coordinate system zero is changed to (100,100,100) in absolute mode.

G11

G01X20Y20Z20 ; The command value of the machine coordinate system is (120, 120, 120)

G91G10L2P1X50Y50Z50 ; G54 workpiece coordinate system zero is changed to (150,150,150) in incremental mode.

G11

G90G01X20Y20Z20 ; The command value of the machine coordinate system is (170, 170, 170)

M30

### 13.3 Extended Workpiece Coordinate System Origin Data Input



### Function and Purpose

According to the G10 command, the offset of the extended workpiece coordinate system (G54.1 to G54.60) can be set/changed from the beginning of the program. In the absolute (G90) mode, the specified compensation amount becomes the new compensation amount; in the incremental (G91) mode, the currently set compensation amount is added to the specified compensation amount to become the new compensation amount.



### Command Format

G10 L20 Pp\_ IP\_

Parameter	Meaning
Pp	The specified code p of the workpiece coordinate system of the workpiece origin offset value: 1 to 60, corresponding to the X value in the G54.X coordinate system;
IP	The workpiece origin offset of axis in absolute mode; It will be added to the original offset of the workpiece origin of axis in incremental mode.



### Example

%1003

G54 ; G54 initial value

G01X0Y0Z0

G90G10L20P1X50Y50Z50 ; G54.1 workpiece coordinate system zero is changed to (50,50,50) in absolute mode.

G11

G01X20Y20Z20 ; The command value of the machine coordinate system is (70, 70, 70)

G91G10L20P1X50Y50Z50 ; G54.1 workpiece coordinate system zero is changed to (100,100,100) in incremental mode.

G11

G90G01X20Y20Z20 ; The command value of the machine coordinate system is (120, 120, 120)

M30

## 13.4 System Parameter Data Output



### Function and Purpose

System parameters are output to the current channel variable specified by Rr, #0~#49



### Command Format

G10 L53 Pp\_ Rr\_

Parameter	Meaning
Pp	Parameter ID index number
Rr	Variable address (#0～#49)



### Example

```
%1004  
G54  
G01X0Y0Z0  
G10L53P010340R1 ; Read the value of machine user parameter 010340 and assign it to  
                    ; variable #1  
G10L53P010341R2 ; Read the value of machine user parameter 010341 and assign it to  
                    ; variable #2  
G11  
M30
```

## 13.5 Milling Tool Length Compensation Data Input



### Function and Purpose

With the G10 command, the milling tool length compensation can be set or changed in the program. In the absolute (G90) mode, the specified compensation amount becomes the new compensation amount; in the incremental (G91) mode, the currently set compensation amount is added to the specified compensation amount to become the new compensation amount.



### Command Format

G10 L10 Pp\_ Rr\_

Parameter	Meaning
Pp	Tool offset number
Rr	Tool compensation data



### Example

```

%0005
G54
G01X100Y100Z100
G90G10L10P1R2 ; No.1 tool length compensation is changed to 2 in absolute mode
G11
G43Z50H1 ; H1=2
G49Z0
G91G10L10P1R8 ; No.1 tool length compensation is changed to ( 8+2=10 ) in
                 incremental mode
G11
G90G43Z50H1 ; H1=10
G49Z0
M30

```



### Note

If the tool length compensation is changed with G10, the tool length compensation needs to be called again with G43 or G44 to take effect.

## 13.6 Milling Tool Radius Compensation Data Input



### Function and Purpose

With the G10 command, the milling tool radius compensation can be set or changed in the program. In the absolute (G90) mode, the specified compensation amount becomes the new compensation amount; in the incremental (G91) mode, the currently set compensation amount is added to the specified compensation amount to become the new compensation amount.



### Command Format

G10 L12 Pp Rr

Parameter	Meaning
Pp	Tool offset number
Rr	Tool compensation data



### Example

```

%0006
G54
G01X100Y100Z100

```

```
G10L12P2R1 ; No.2 tool radius compensation is changed to 1 in absolute mode  
G11  
G41X20Y20D2 ; D2=1  
X30  
G40X0Y0  
G91G10L12P2R1 ; No.2 tool radius compensation is changed to (1+1=2) in incremental  
mode  
G11  
G90G41X20Y20D2 ; D2=2  
X30  
G40X0Y0  
M30
```



#### Note

If the tool radius compensation is changed with G10, the tool radius compensation needs to be called again with G41 or G42 to take effect.

### 13.7 Modify Single Cutting Time



#### Function and Purpose

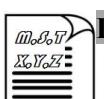
Users can use G10L78 command to modify single cutting time on the main interface of MACH.



#### Command Format

P parameter specifies the single machining time modified, in the unit second.

After “single cutting time” is modified, “this cutting time”, “total cutting time” are updated accordingly and synchronously.



#### Example

```
%0008  
G54  
G01X100Y100Z100  
G10L78P60; Change single cutting time to 60S  
G10L78P1000; Change single cutting time to 1000S  
G11  
M30
```



### Note

#1471: Can read current “this cutting” time, but it is better to add G08 command to pause the command, otherwise the reading time may not be accurate.

## 13.8 Coordinate Transformation



### Function and Purpose

Users can use the command to achieve the transformation among machine coordinate system, current workpiece coordinate system, and tool coordinate system.



### Command Format

The table of G10L\_commands are as follows:

Note: I\_J\_K is the rotation method of tool coordinate system established by G68.3.

Function	G code
Coordinates in workpiece coordinate system converts to coordinates in machine coordinate system	G10 L43 P_X_Y_Z_A_C_R_
Coordinates in machine coordinate system converts to coordinates in workpiece coordinate system	G10 L44 P_X_Y_Z_A_C_R_
Coordinates in workpiece coordinate system converts to coordinates in tool coordinate system	G10 L45 X_Y_Z_I_J_K_R_
Coordinates in feature coordinate system converts to coordinates in workpiece coordinate system	G10 L46 X_Y_Z_I_J_K_R_
Coordinates in machine coordinate system converts to coordinates in feature coordinate system	G10 L47 P_X_Y_Z_A_C_I_J_K_R_
Coordinates in feature coordinate system converts to coordinates in machine coordinate system	G10 L48 P_ X_Y_Z_A_C_I_J_K_R_

Parameter	Meaning	Remark
P	Current tool No.	/
X	X coordinates in coordinate system to be converted	/
Y	Y coordinates in coordinate system to be converted	/
Z	Z coordinates in coordinate system to be converted	/
A	A coordinates in coordinate system	/

	to be converted	
C	C coordinates in coordinate system to be converted	/
I	Angle that feature coordinate system rotates around workpiece coordinate system X	Rotation method of feature coordinate system established by G68.3
J	Angle that feature coordinate system rotates around workpiece coordinate system Y	Rotation method of feature coordinate system established by G68.3
K	Angle that tool coordinate system rotates around workpiece coordinate system Z	rotation method of feature coordinate system established by G68.3
R	Starting macro no. of XYZ of the converted coordinate system. Converted XYZ coordinates are saved	Range from 0 to 197, 50000 to 59997



### Example

%0008

G54

G10L43P2X10Y20Z30A0C0R5 ;

Convert (10,20,30,0,0) in workpiece coordinate system into coordinates in machine coordinate system, and the coordinates saved to #5, #6, #7

G10L44P2X10Y20Z30A0C0R5 ;

Convert (10,20,30,0,0) in machine coordinate system into coordinates in workpiece coordinate system, and the coordinates are saved to #5, #6, #7

G10L45X10Y20Z30I45J0K0R5 ;

Convert (10,20,30) in workpiece coordinate system to the coordinates in the feature coordinate systems which is formed by 45-degree rotation of workpiece coordinate system around X axis, and the coordinates are saved to #5, #6, #7

G10L46X10Y20Z30I45J0K0R5 ;

Convert (10,20,30) in the feature coordinate systems which is formed by 45-degree rotation of workpiece coordinate system around X axis into coordinates in workpiece coordinate system, and the coordinates are saved to #5, #6, #7

G10L47P2X10Y20Z30A0C0I45J0K0R5; Convert (10,20,30,0,0) in machine coordinate system

into coordinates in the feature coordinate system which is formed by 45-degree rotation of workpiece coordinate system around X axis, and the coordinates are saved to #5, #6, #7

G10L48P2X10Y20Z30A0C0I45J0K0R5; Convert (10,20,30) in the feature coordinate system which is formed by 45-degree rotation of workpiece coordinate system around X axis into coordinates in machine coordinate system, and the coordinates are saved to #5, #6, #7

G11

M30



#### Note

- 1) R is followed by the starting address which is to save macro variable, and 3 bits are occupied. Therefore, it ranges from 0 to 197 and 50000 to 50007; otherwise, an assignment error may occur.
- 2) When using 3-axis coordinate transformation function, the rotary axis in above command must be 0; otherwise, the output value may be incorrect.
- 3) Users must cancel the coordinate transformation with G11 after using it; otherwise, an alarm will be issued.

### 13.9 Feature Coordinate System Capture



#### Function and Purpose

The coordinates of block skip position in feature coordinate system can be achieved by the command, that is, the feature coordinates of #1360, #1361, #1362, #1363, and #1364. It needs to be used with G31 block skip, and generally used in measurement.



#### Command Format

**G10 L49 R\_**

Parameter	Meaning	Range
R	Starting macro variable No. of XYZ in the converted coordinate system. The converted XYZ coordinates are saved	Variable address (#50000 to #59997)

Meaning: Coordinates in the corresponding feature coordinate system of current machine position are captured. If the feature coordinate system is not established, the coordinates in

workpiece coordinate system are captured.



### Example

```
%0008  
G54 G90  
G43.4 H1 ; Enable RTCP  
G68.3 X0 Y0 Z0 I-90 J0 K0 ; Establish feature coordinate sysstem  
G53.1 ; Straighten tool axis  
G91  
G31 L-4 X10. Y0 Z0 A10 B10 ;Use block skip movement, save the coordinates of  
block skip position into macro variables  
X-5 ; Movement in reverse direction  
G10 L49 R50001 ;Obtain coordinates of block skip position in  
tool coordinate system  
G11 ; Cancel programmable data input  
G69 ; Cancel tool coordinate system  
G49 ; Disable RTCP  
M30
```



### Note

- 1) This function can be used in 3-axis, but tool length compensation must be called and rotary axis coordinates must be 0;
- 2) This function can be used when tool coordinate system is not established. At this time, coordinates in workpiece coordinate system is captured.
- 3) The coordinate transformation must be cancelled by G11 after it is used; otherwise, an alarm will be issued.
- 4) It is must be used with block skip command; otherwise, the value of the last block skip record is captured.

## 13.10 Capture Direction Vector in Feature Coordinate System



### Function and Purpose

Via the command, current machine position of rotary axis or input machine coordinates of rotary axis can be converted into IJK values of G68.3 command in the tool coordinate system of automatic measurement.



### Command Format

G10 L50 A\_ B\_ C\_ R\_

Parameter	Meaning	Range
A, B, C	ABC coordinates in machine coordinate system can be omitted. System automatically reads machine coordinates of ABC in current modal	None
R	Starting macro variable No., to store converted IJK values of G68.3	Variable address (#50000-#59997)



### Example

```
%0001  
G54 G90  
A30 C60 ; Rotary axis rotates to specified angle  
G01 X0 Y0 ; Move to workpiece origin  
G10 L50 R50001 ; Obtain IJK values of corresponding tool  
coordinate system based on rotary axis angle  
G11 ; Cancel programmable data input  
M30
```



### Note

- 1) The coordinate transformation must be cancelled by G11 after it is used; otherwise, an alarm will be issued.

## 13.11 Data Printout (WRITE)



### Function and Purpose

The printout function of internal data can be achieved by the command, that is, a file is created automatically, and required macro variable in written, which can be sued form coordinate extraction and data analysis.



### Command Format

WRITE (\*Filename”, “Content”):

DEL (“Filename”)

Parameter	Meaning
-----------	---------

Filename	Start with the letter “o”
Content	Can be characters and macro variables. Macro must be bracketed by []

Meaning:

WRITE File writing command. The content in the first quote after the command is the name of the file to be written; The content inside the second quote is the content to be written to the file. If there is a macro variable in the quotation marks, the value of the macro variable is automatically written to the file. A maximum of 4 macro variables are supported.

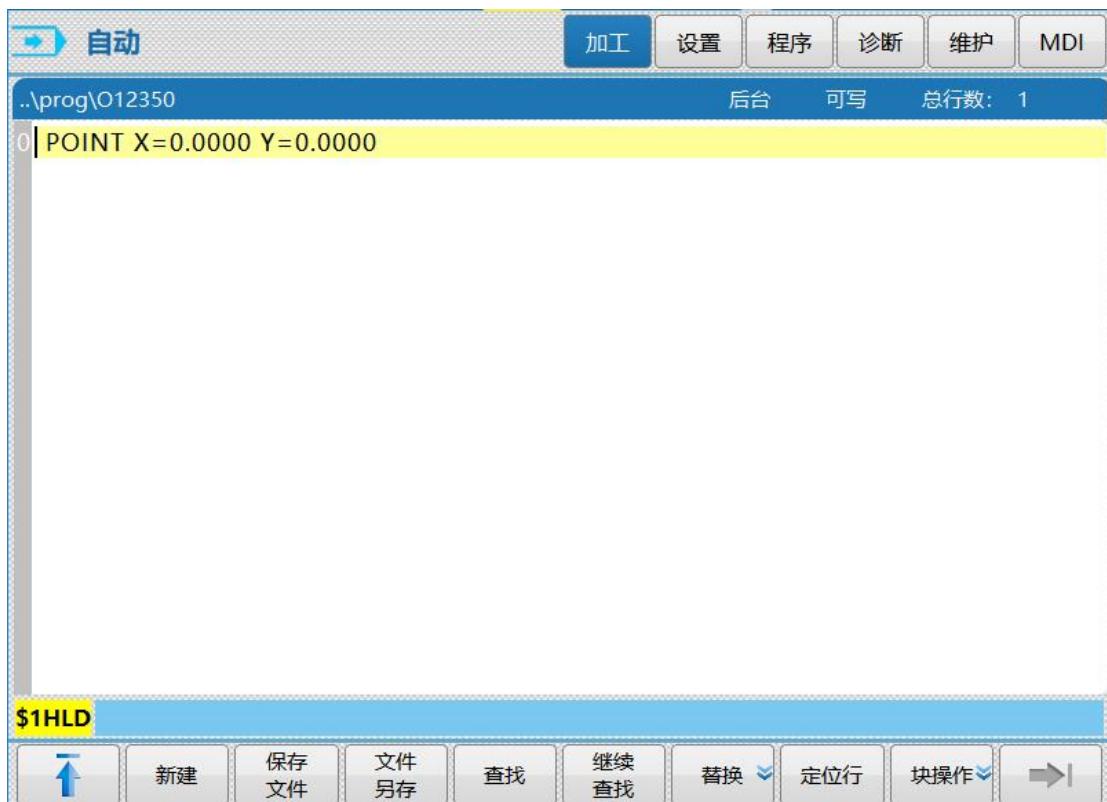
DEL File deletion command. The content in the quote after the command is the name of the file to be deleted.



### Example

```
%0008
G54 G90
G01 X100
WRITE (O1235, POINT X=[#1] Y=[#2]) ; Write data, and generate O1235 file
X0
M00
DEL (O1235) ; Delete file
M30
```

The contents of the generated file:



### Note

- 1) The generated file is saved in the PROG directory;
- 2) Macro variable must be bracketed with 【】 , and must be preceded by #. [] does not support tabs such as Spaces, otherwise the value of the macro variable cannot be read.
- 3) The output content cannot contain the right parentheses ") " , the output will end when the right parentheses ")" is encountered during the output, and the content after the right parentheses") "will be discarded.
- 3) If there is a G code file in the PROG directory with the same file name as the current written file, the written content will be added at the end of the file.
- 4) A maximum of 4M text files can be written. If the range is exceeded, the original content will be deleted and the generated text will be re-written.

## 14 Canned Cycle for Milling System (M)

### 14.1 Standard Canned Cycle for Milling System



#### Function and Purpose

There is a relatively fixed operating sequence for the processing of hole parts. With this function, the canned cycle subprogram can be called through a single block to complete a fixed processing action. Therefore, programming can be simplified, and memory can be effectively used. Table 15.1(a) is the canned cycle command list of the CNC system.

**Table 15.1 (a) Drilling canned cycle list**

G command	Drilling (-Z direction)	Action at hole bottom	Retraction (+Z direction)	Use
G73	Intermittent cutting feed	Dwell	Rapid traverse retract	High-speed deep hole drilling cycle
G74	Cutting feed	Dwell—spindle rotation CW	Cutting retract	Reverse tapping
G76	Cutting feed	Spindle orientation	Rapid traverse retract	Fine boring
G80	—	—	—	Cancel cycle
G81	Cutting feed	—	Rapid traverse retract	Spot drilling, boring
G82	Cutting feed	Dwell	Rapid traverse retract	Drilling, boring
G83	Cutting feed	Dwell	Rapid traverse retract	Deep hole drilling cycle
G84	Cutting feed	Dwell—spindle rotation CCW	Cutting retract	Tapping cycle
G85	Cutting feed	—	Cutting retract	Boring
G86	Cutting feed	Dwell—spindle stop	Rapid traverse retract	Boring
G87	Cutting feed	Spindle rotation CW	Rapid traverse retract	Reverse boring
G88	Cutting feed	Dwell—spindle stop	JOG	Boring
G89	Cutting feed	Dwell	Cutting retract	Boring



#### Description

Generally there are the following six sequential actions for the hole machining cycle:

Sequential action 1: X and Y axis positioning (different planes may have different positioning axes)

Sequential action 2: rapid traverse to machining plane R point

Sequential action 3: execute drilling action

Sequential action 4: action at hole bottom (hole bottom level Z point)

Sequential action 5: retract to R point

Sequential action 6: retract to the initial level B point in rapid traverse

Detailed breakdown is shown in Figure 1.1 (a)

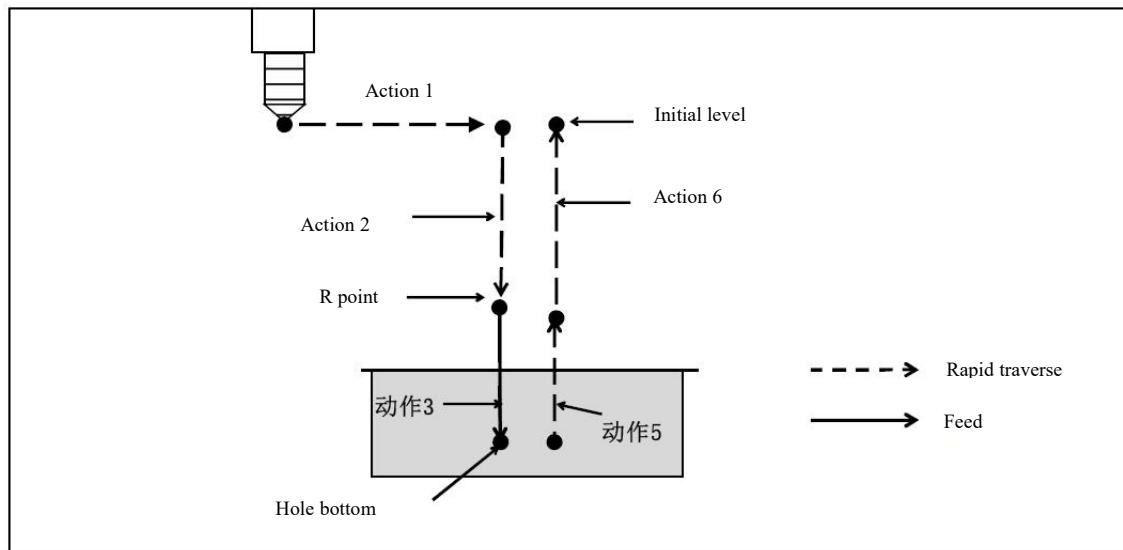


Figure 1.1 (a)

### ● Positioning plane

The positioning plane is determined by the plane selection mode G17, G18, and G19.

The positioning axis is an axis other than the drilling axis.

Positioning plane	Positioning axis
G17	X, Y
G18	X, Z
G19	Y, Z

### ● Drilling axis

Hole machining canned cycles include drilling cycles, tapping cycles, boring cycles, etc., but in order to simplify the description, this section will collectively refer to various canned cycles as drilling cycles, and drilling axis, tapping axis, and boring axis are collectively referred to as drilling axis.

The drilling axis is a reference axis (X, Y, Z) that does not form the positioning plane or an axis parallel to it.

The reference axis or parallel axis used as the drilling axis is determined by the positioning

plane of drilling (G17, G18, G19).

If the axis address of drilling axis is not specified, the reference axis is assumed to be the drilling axis.

Positioning axis	Drilling axis
G17	Z-axis
G18	Y-axis
G19	X-axis

### ● Drilling data

G73, G74, G76 and G81 to G89 are all modal G code commands, which are valid until they are cancelled. In these drilling cycle commands, the specified parameters are also modal data, and are kept until they are modified or cleared.

### ● Length compensation G43/G44/G49

G73, G74, G76, and G81 to G89 drilling canned cycles can use tool length compensation. The compensation point is used to establish compensation in the initial plane. G43 is for positive compensation, and G44 is for negative compensation. The use of compensation needs to be established with the tool compensation table. Different tool compensation registers are called to achieve different compensation data.

Note: Through NC parameter 000012 Tool Axis Selection Mode, the Z axis can always be set as the drilling axis. When the parameter is set to 0, the tool length compensation is always compensated on the Z axis. When the parameter is set to 1, the compensation axis is switched based on the machining coordinate selection plane. See drilling axis positioning plane.

### ● Movement amount of drilling axis G90/G91

The movement amount on the drilling axis can be expressed by the coordinate value of the positioning point or the relative movement amount, which is specified by the G90 or G91 command in the program, as shown in Figure 1.1(b):

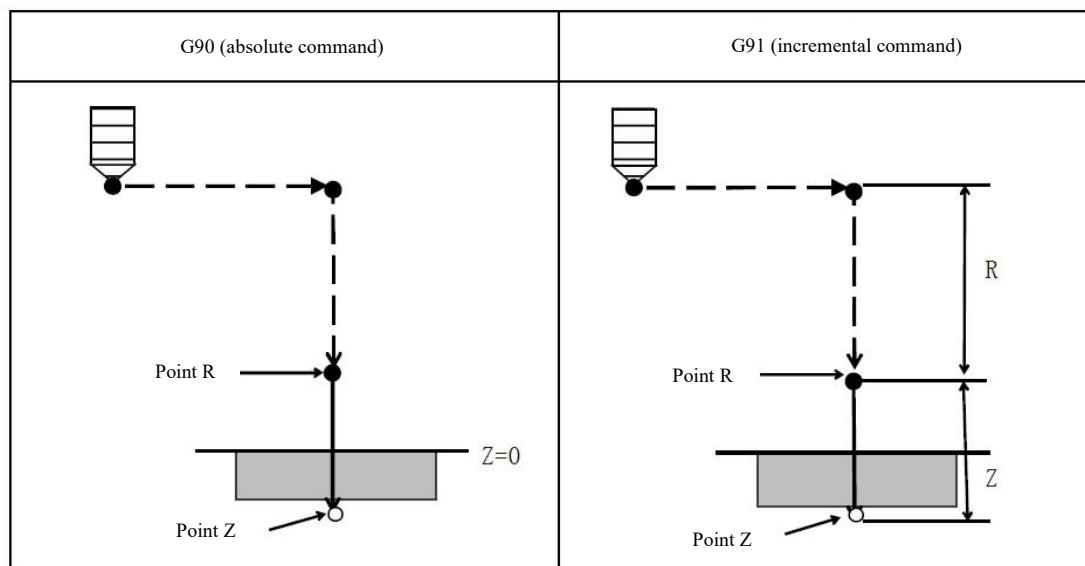


Figure 1.1(b)

- **Return to plane G98/G99**

Whether to return the tool from the hole bottom to the machining level (point R) or to the initial level (point B) is specified by G98 and G99. Figure 1.1(c) shows the action when G98 or G99 is specified. Generally, G99 is used for the first drilling and G98 is used for the final drilling. Even if drilling is performed in G99 mode, the initial level will not be changed.

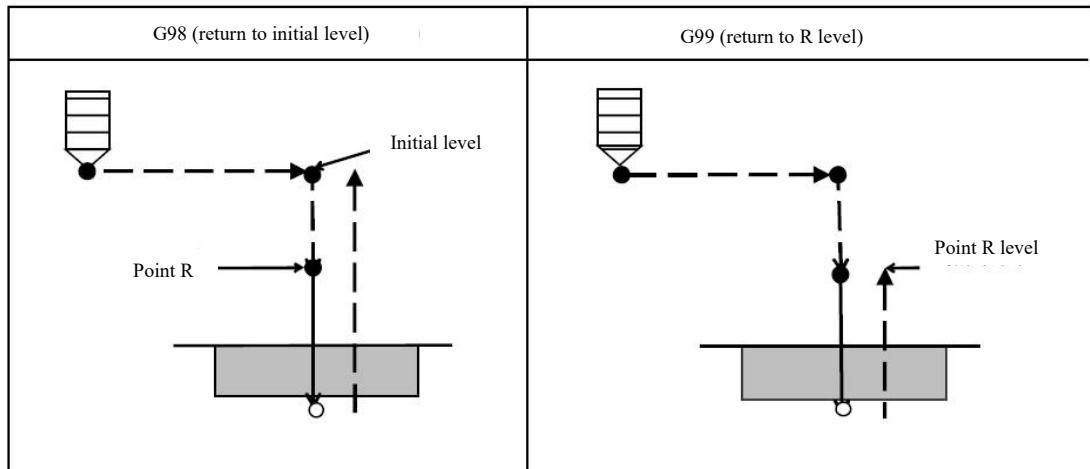


图 1.1(c)

- **Repeat**

When user wants to repeat equidistant drilling, use L\_ to specify the number of repetitions with G91 relative coordinate command.

L is only valid in the block where it is specified.

Specify the position of the first hole in incremental mode (G91).

If it is specified in absolute mode (G90), the drilling is repeated at the same hole position.

Maximum value of number of repetitions L is 9999

Specify 0 or an integer value from 1 to 9999 for L.

- **Single block**

When the hole machining cycle is performed in a single block, the control device stops at the end points 1, 2, and 6 in Figure 1.1(a). Therefore, 3 times are required to drill a hole. At the end of actions 1 and 2, the indicator light of feed dwell lights u. At the end of action 6, if the number of repetitions is left, it will stop by feeding dwell. If there is no repetition number, it will stop in the single block stop state. In addition, the R point of G87 will not stop. G88 also stops after dwell at point Z.

- **Cancel**

G80 or the 01 group of G codes is used to cancel the canned cycle.

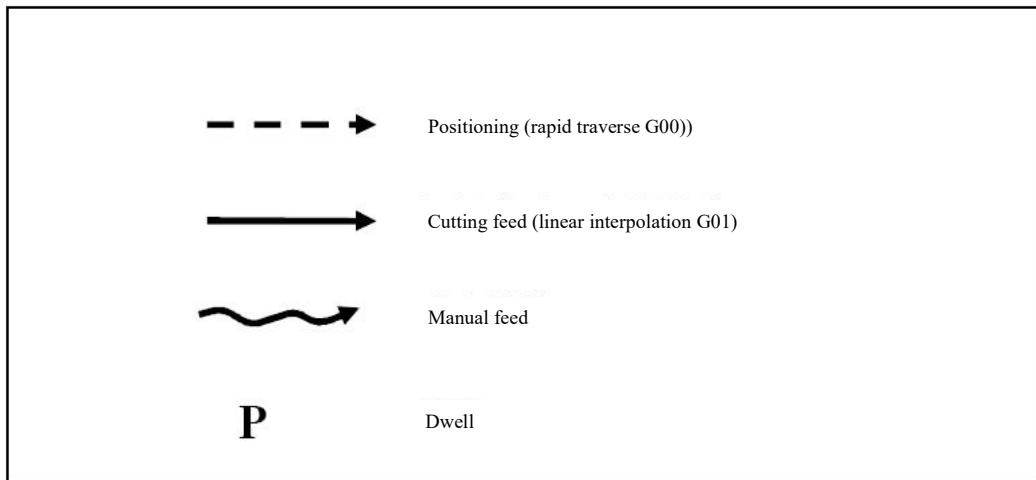
The 01 group of G codes include:

- G00 : positioning (rapid traverse)
- G01 : linear interpolation
- G02 : circular interpolation or helical interpolation (CW)
- G03 : circular interpolation or helical interpolation (CCW)
- G60 : unidirectional positioning

#### ● Explanation of symbols in the figure

The following describes each canned cycle.

The images used in these descriptions are represented by the following symbols.



#### Note

- 1) When executing a canned cycle block that does not contain X, Y, Z traverse axis commands, this line will not produce tool movement, but the cycle parameter modal value of the current line will be saved;
- 2) Specifying the 01 group of G codes or specifying G80 will cancel the current canned cycle G code modal, and also clear the cycle parameter modal value;
- 3) If the canned cycle needs to be repeated by specifying L, when L is specified as 0, an alarm message will appear;
- 4) When using G53 command in a canned cycle block, its positioning data X, Y are still the original workpiece coordinate system data, not the coordinate system data specified by G53;
- 5) When switching the drilling axis for drilling, please cancel the drilling canned cycle;
- 6) To use this canned cycle function, users need to set the machine user parameter 010083 drilling canned cycle type to 0 to call the canned cycle.

## 14.2 High-speed Deep-hole Drilling Cycle (G73)



### Function and Purpose

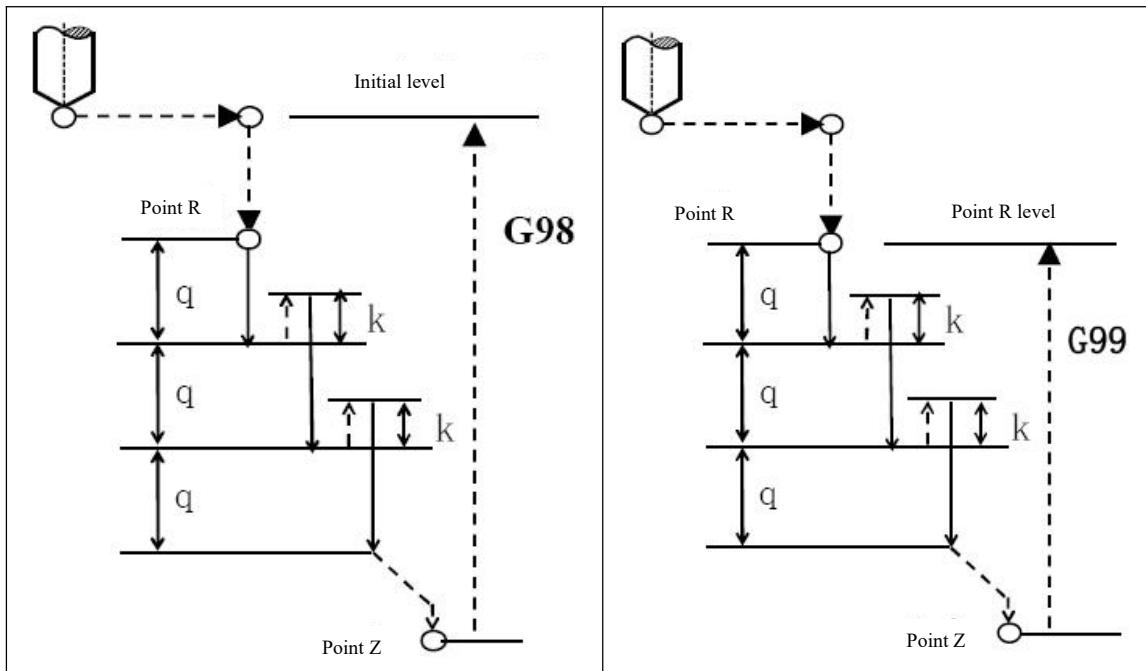
This cycle is for high-speed deep hole drilling. When this command is executed, the tool intermittently cuts and feeds to the bottom of the hole. Intermittent feed makes it easy to break chips, remove chips, add coolant adding during deep hole machining, and the amount of tool retraction is not large.



### Command Format

(G98/G99) G73 X\_ Y\_ Z\_ R\_ Q\_ P\_ K\_ F\_ L\_;

Parameter	Meaning
X Y	Coordinate position of hole center in XY plane in absolute programming (G90); The incremental value of hole center relative to the starting point in XY plane in incremental programming (G91);
Z	Coordinate value of Z point of hole bottom in absolute programming; incremental value of Z point of hole bottom relative to the reference point R in incremental programming (G91);
R	Coordinates of reference point R in absolute programming (G90); the incremental value of reference point R relative to the initial point B in incremental programming (G91);
Q	Hole drilling depth downward (incremental value, negative);
P	Dwell time at the hole bottom, in the unit of ms
K	Retraction amount upward (incremental value, positive)
F	Feedrate of drilling;
L	Number of cycles (when drilling needs to be repeated)
G73 (G98)	
G73 (G99)	



### Description

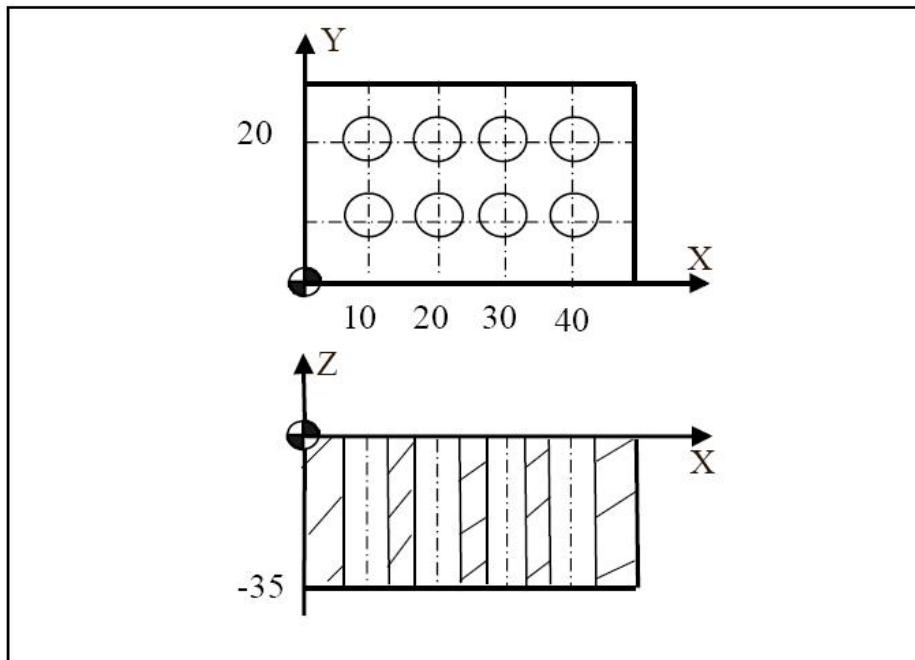
- Drilling action
  - (1) Tool position point moves to B point above the hole center in rapid traverses;
  - (2) Rapid traverse to workpiece surface R point;
  - (3) Drill downward at F speed with depth of q;
  - (4) Tool retracts upward with distance of K;
  - (5) Repeat steps 3 and 4 several times;
  - (6) Drill to Z point at hole bottom;
  - (7) Pause at the hole bottom P seconds (spindle keeps rotating);
  - (8) Return to R point (G99) or B point upward.
- The high-speed deep hole drilling cycle executes intermittent feed along Z axis. When this cycle is used, the chips can be easily discharged from the hole, and a small retraction value can be set, which allows effective drilling.
- Use the auxiliary function to rotate the spindle before specifying G73 (M code).
- When G73 code and M code are specified in the same block, the M code will be executed at the same time as the first positioning action, and then the system will process the next drilling action.
- When the number of repetitions L is specified, the M code is only executed in the first hole, and the M code is not executed in the second and subsequent holes

- When the tool length offset (G43, G44 or G49) is specified in the canned cycle, the offset is added while positioning to the R point
- When Z, K, Q movement amounts are zero, this command is not executed.
- $|Q| > |K|$ ;



### Example

Process the holes as shown in the figure below:



#### Example 1 (absolute programming, return to R level):

```

N10 G54 G0 X0 Y0 Z80; Establish coordinate system, move to the safe starting point
N20 M03 S500; Spindle rotates CW
N30 G0 Z20; Position to the initial level
N40 G99 G73 X10 Y10 Z-35 R5 Q-3 K1 F200; After positioning, perform drilling 1,
                                                and return to R level
N50 X20; After positioning, complete all drilling, and return to R level
N60 X30
N70 X40
N80 Y20
N90 X30
N100 X20
N110 X10
N120 G80; Cancel G73 canned cycle
N130 G28 G91 X0 Y0 Z0; Return to reference point
N140 M30; Program ends

```

**Example 2 (absolute and incremental mixed programming, return to the initial level):**

```
N10 G54 G90 G0 X0 Y0 Z80; Establish coordinate system, move to the safe starting point  
N20 M03 S500; Spindle rotates CW  
N30 G0 Z20; Position to the intial level  
N40 G98 G73 X10 Y10 Z-35 R5 Q-3 K1 F200; After positioning, perform drilling 1, and return to R level  
N50 G91 X10 L3; Increment X10 in turn to complete all drilling, and then return to the initial level  
N60 Y10  
N70 X-10 L3  
N80 G80; Cancel G73 canned cycle  
N90 G28 G91 X0 Y0 Z0; Return to reference point  
N100 M30; Program ends
```



**Note**

- (1) Axis switching: Before switching the drilling axis, the canned cycle must be cancelled.
- (2) Modality: G73 command data is stored as modal data, and the same data can be omitted.
- (3) Drilling: Do not drill in the block that does not include X, Y, Z, R or any other additional axis. If the moving position of Z is zero, the command is not executed.
- (4) Q/R: Specify Q/R in the drilling block. If they are specified in the drilling block, they cannot be stored as modal data.
- (5) Cancel: Do not specify the G codes of group 01 (G00 to G03, etc.) in the G73 block. Otherwise, G73 will be cancelled.
- (6) Tool position offset: In the drilling canned cycle, the tool position offset is ignored.

## 14.3 Reverse Tapping Cycle (G74)



### Function and Purpose

This cycle is for reverse tapping. There are two types of reverse tapping. One is the reverse tapping cycle. The tapping trajectory goes directly from point R to the point Z at the bottom of the hole; the other is the reverse pecking tapping cycle. Repeated intermittent feed is performed during the tapping process.

In the reverse tapping cycle, when the bottom of the hole is reached, the spindle rotates CW and exits. During the tapping or retraction, the tool feeds a thread lead along the tapping axis for each revolution of the spindle, the feed relationship does not change even during acceleration and deceleration.

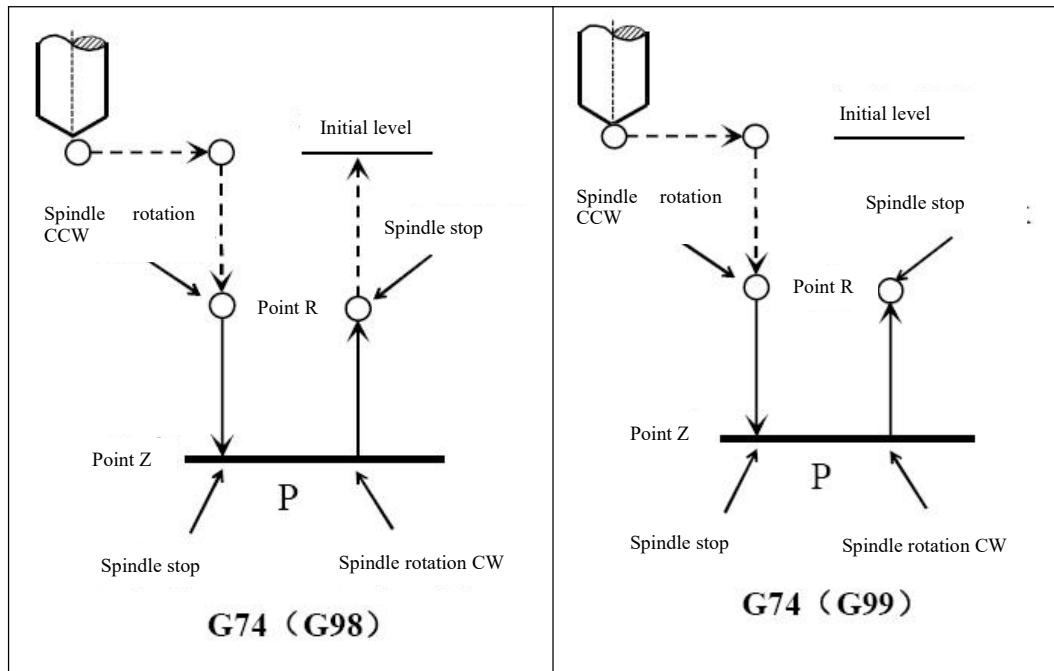


### Command Format

#### 14.3.1 Reverse Tapping Cycle

(G98/G99)G74 X\_ Y\_ Z\_ R\_ P\_ F\_ L\_ J\_;

Parameter	Meaning
X Y	Absolute position of hole in absolute programming (G90); The distance from the current position to the hole position in incremental programming (G91).
Z	Absolute position of hole bottom in absolute programming (G90); The distance from hole bottom to R point in incremental programming (G91).
R	Absolute position of R point in absolute programming (G90); The distance from R point to initial level in incremental programming (G91).
P	The dwell time at the hole bottom, in the unit of ms.
F	Thread lead.
L	Number of repeats (can be omitted when L=1).
J	J1 A-axis tapping; J2 B-axis tapping; J3 C-axis tapping.
<b>G74 (G98)</b>	
<b>G74 (G99)</b>	



- Reverse tapping action:

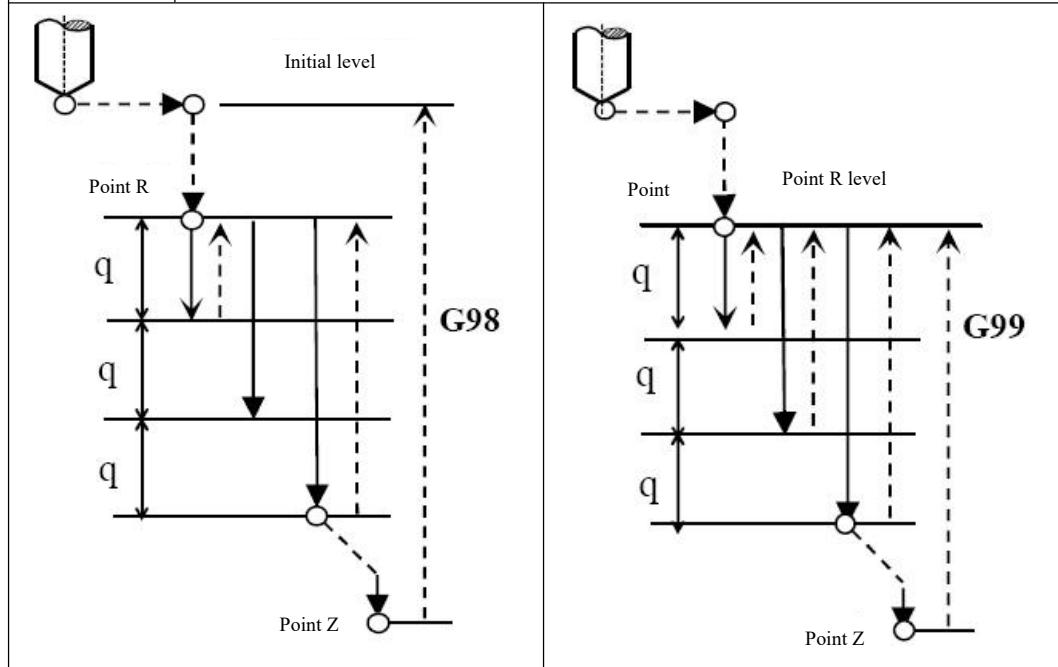
- (1) Rotate the spindle through the auxiliary function, and the tool position point moves to point B above the hole center in rapid traverse;
- (2) The spindle rotates counterclockwise and rapid traverse to the surface of the workpiece to point R
- (3) The system calculates the feedrate based on the pitch speed, and taps at the feedrate downward. The depth is Z;
- (4) Tap to the hole bottom, and spindle stops;
- (5) Dwell at the hole bottom after the dwell time (P) is specified;
- (6) Spindle rotates CW, return to R point upward;
- (7) Spindle stops;
- (8) Return to R point (G99) or B point (G98);

### 14.3.2 Reverse Peck Tapping Cycle

(G98/G99)G74 X\_ Y\_ Z\_ Q\_ K\_ R\_ P\_ F\_ L\_ E\_ J\_ ; (Peck tapping)

Parameter	Meaning
X Y	The absolute position of hole in absolute programming (G90); The distance from the current position to the hole position in incremental programming (G91).
Z	The absolute position of hole bottom in absolute programming (G90); The distance from hole bottom to R point in incremental programming (G91).

Q	The feed amount in peck tapping;
K	The retraction amount in peck tapping;
R	The absolute position of R point in absolute programming (G90); The distance from R point to the initial level in incremental programming (G91).
P	The dwell time at the hole bottom, in the unit of ms;
F	The thread lead;
L	Repeat times (it can be omitted when L=1);
E	E1: Peck tapping, feed Q, retract K; E2: Peck tapping, feed Q, return to R level.
J	J1 A-axis tapping; J2 B-axis tapping; J3 C-axis tapping.



#### ● Reverse tapping cycle action (peck tapping):

- (1) Rotate the spindle through the auxiliary function, and the tool position point moves to point B above the hole center in rapid traverse;
- (2) The spindle rotates counterclockwise and rapid traverse to the surface of the workpiece to point R;
- (3) The system calculates the feedrate based on the pitch speed, and taps at the feedrate downward. The depth is Q;
- (4) Spindle stops;
- (5) When dwell time (P) is specified, dwell is performed;
- (6) Spindle rotates clockwise, taps upwards and returns to R point;

- (7) Spindle stops;
- (8) Spindle rotates counterclockwise. Tap downward at the feedrate, the depth is (times\*Q);
- (9) Repeat steps 4, 5, 6, 7, 8, and arrive at Z point of hole bottom;
- (10) Dwell P ms at hole bottom;
- (11) Spindle rotates clockwise. Retract upward to R point (G99) or B point (G98) in rapid traverse.



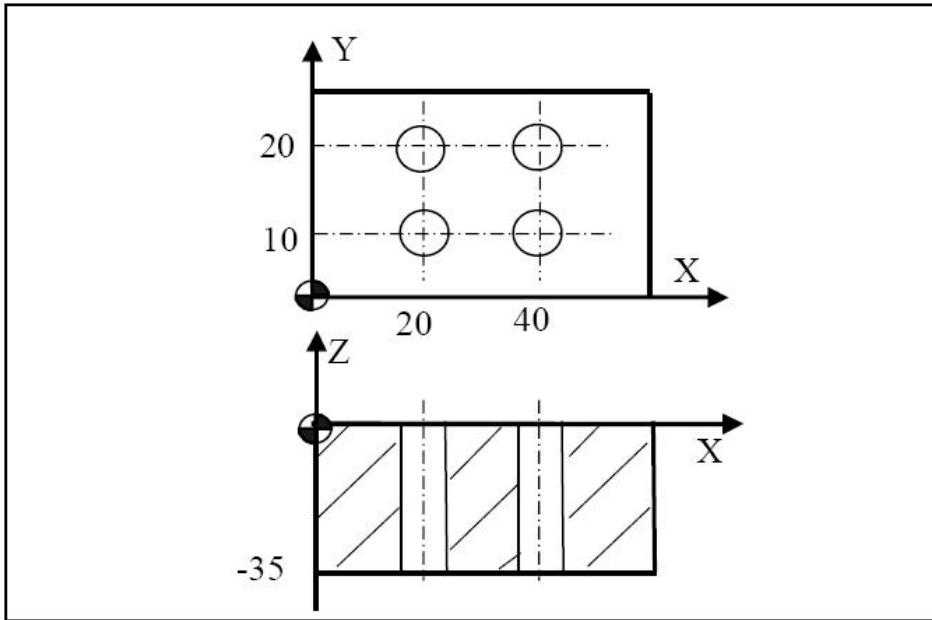
### Description

- Perform tapping with spindle rotation CCW. When it reaches the bottom of the hole, the spindle rotates clockwise for return. This cycle processes a reverse thread.
- During reverse tapping, the feedrate override is omitted. The feed is paused, and the machine doesn't stop until the retraction is completed.
- Before G74 is specified, use the auxiliary function (M code) to counterclockwise rotate spindle.
- When G74 command and M code are specified in the same block, the M code will be executed at the same time as the first positioning action, and then the system will process the next drilling action.
- When the number of repetitions L is specified, the M code is only executed for the first hole, and is not executed for the second and subsequent holes.
- When the tool length offset G43, G44 or G49 is specified in the canned cycle, the offset is added while positioning to the R point.



### Example

Process the holes as shown in the figure below:



**Example 1 (Absolute programming, tapping, return to R level)**

%3343

N10 G54 G0 X0 Y0 Z80; Establish coordinate system, move to safe starting point;  
 N20 M04 S500; Spindle rotation CCW starts;  
 N30 G0 Z20; Position to the initial level;  
 N40 G99 G74 X20 Y10 Z-35 R5 P500 F1; Complete the tapping of hole 1 after  
     positioning, then return to R level  
 N50 X40; Complete tapping of all holes, then return to R level  
 N60 Y20  
 N70 X20  
 N80 G80; Cancel G74 tapping cycle  
 N90 G28 G91 X0 Y0 Z0; Return to reference point  
 N100 M30; Program ends

**Example 2 (absolute, incremental mixed programming, peck tapping, return to initial level)**

%3343

N10 G54 G90 G0 X0 Y0 Z80; Establish coordinate system, move to safe starting point;  
 N20 M04 S500; Spindle starts;  
 N30 G0 Z20; Position to the initial level;  
 N40 G98 G74 X20 Y10 Z-35 R5 Q-3 K2 E1 F1; Perform peck tapping of hole 1 after  
     positioning, then return to initial level;  
 N50 G91 X20; Perform peck tapping of the remaining 3 holes, then return to initial  
     level;  
 N60 Y10  
 N70 X-20  
 N80 G80; Cancel G74 canned cycle;

N90 G28 G91 X0 Y0 Z0; Return to reference point;

N100 M30; Program ends.



### Note

- (1) F feedrate in tapping: F (feedrate) specified in the program is invalid during rigid tapping, and the feedrate along the tapping axis is calculated by the following formula: feedrate = spindle speed × thread lead
- (2) Tapping method: C-axis tapping, the servo spindle is regarded as the C-axis, and the interpolation method is used to tap, which can achieve high-speed and high-precision tapping.
- (3) Axis switching: please cancel canned cycle before switching drilling axis.
- (4) Modality: G74 command data is stored as modal data, and the same data can be omitted.
- (5) Reverse tapping: do not drill in the block that does not contain X, Y, Z, R or any other additional axis. If the moving position of Z is zero, the command will not be executed; point Z must be lower than the level of point R, otherwise alarm will be issued.
- (6) Position mode G108 or STOC: Before using the tapping command G74, please pay attention to use STOC command to switch the control mode of the spindle servo motor from speed mode to position mode. After tapping is completed, user can use CTOS to switch the control mode of the spindle servo motor from position mode to speed mode, and the servo spindle is used as a normal spindle.
- (7) Cancel: Do not specify the G codes of group 01 (G00 to G03, etc.) in the G74 block. Otherwise, G74 will be cancelled.
- (8) Tool position offset: In the drilling canned cycle mode, the tool position offset is ignored.
- (9) R: Specify R in the drilling block. If R is specified in the non-drilling block, it cannot be stored as modal data.
- (10) P: Please specify P in the drilling block. If it is specified in the non-drilling block, it cannot be stored as modal data.
- (11) Q: Please specify Q in the drilling block. If it is specified in the non-drilling block, it cannot be stored as modal data.
- (12) Reset: When the reset is performed during rigid tapping, the rigid tapping mode cannot be released, and the machine tool cannot stop the tapping action. Emergency stop is available.
- (13) Feed hold, single block: In G74 (G84) mode, the feed hold will be executed after each tapping action is completed, and the subsequent tapping will continue to be performed after pressing the cycle start button. In single block mode, the feed hold will be executed after each tapping action is completed, and the next tapping action will be completed after pressing the cycle start button.
- (14) Machine lock: The machine lock is also valid for G74 (G84). Even if G74 (G84) is

executed when the machine is locked, the drilling axis will not move. Therefore, the spindle will not move.

#### 14.4 Fine Boring (G76)



##### Function and Purpose

This cycle is for precision hole boring.

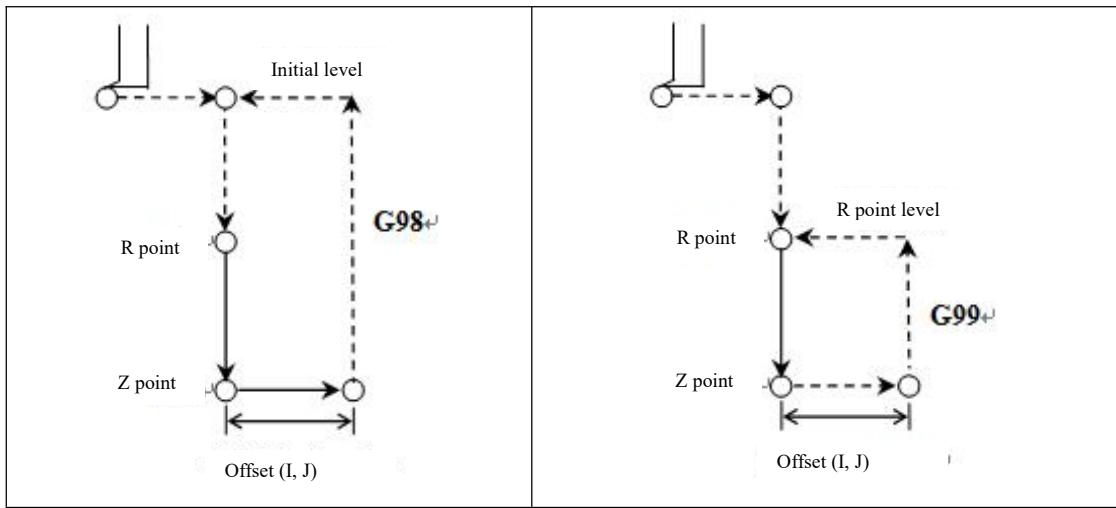
In the fine boring cycle, when the bottom of the hole is reached, the spindle stops cutting, and the tool nose leaves the machining surface of the workpiece and returns.



##### Command Format

(G98/G99) G76 X\_ Y\_ Z\_ R\_ I\_ J\_ P\_ F\_ L\_ ;

Parameter	Meaning
X Y	Absolute position of hole in absolute programming (G90); Distance from the current position to position of hole in incremental programming (G91). UV programming is not supported.
Z	Absolute position of hole bottom on Z in absolute programming (G90); Distance from the hole bottom to R point in incremental programming (G91).
R	Absolute position of R point on Z in absolute programming (G90); Distance from R point to initial level in incremental programming (G91).
I	Offset on X, can only be positive;
J	Offset on Y, can only be positive;
P	Dwell time at hole bottom (unit: ms);
F	Cutting feedrate;
L	Number of repeat (it can be omitted when L=1)
G76 (G98)      G76 (G99)	



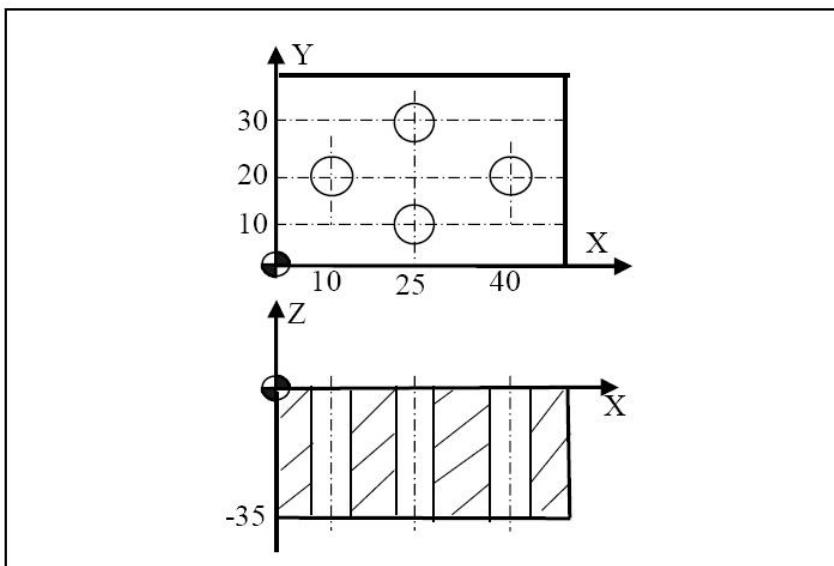
### Description

- Fine boring cycle action
  - (1) Move to the tool position to point B above the hole center in rapid traverse
  - (2) Move close to the surface of the workpiece to point R in rapid traverse
  - (3) Bore downward at F speed, reach point Z at the bottom of the hole
  - (4) Dwell Z ms at hole bottom (spindle keeps rotating)
  - (5) Spindle orientation, spindle stops rotating
  - (6) The boring tool quickly moves I or J in the opposite direction of the tool nose
  - (7) Retract upward to R level (G99) or B level (G98) in rapid traverse
  - (8) Quickly move I or J in the positive direction of the tool nose, and the tool position point will return to point R or B above the hole center
  - (10) Spindle resumes CW rotation
  - The drilling axis must be Z axis;
  - Z point must be lower than R level; otherwise an alarm will be issued;
  - G76 command data is stored as modal data, the same data can be omitted;
  - Before using the command G76, please use the corresponding M code to rotate the spindle.



### Example

Process the hole as shown below,



**Example 1 (absolute programming, return to R level):**

```
%3341
N10 G54 G90 G0 X0 Y0 Z80; Establish coordinate system, move to safe starting point
N20M03 S600; Spindle rotation CW starts
N30G00 Z20; Position to initial level
N40 G99 G76X10Y20 Z-35 R5 I1 P2000 F100; Complete boring of hole 1 after
positioning, return to the level of point R
N50X25 Y30; Complete boring of the remaining holes after positioning, return to the
level of point R
N60 X40 Y20
N70 X25 Y10
N80 G80; Cancel G76 boring cycle
N90 G91G28 X0 Y0 Z0; Return to reference point
N100 M30; Program end
```

**Example 2 (absolute and incremental mixed programming, return to the initial level):**

```
%3343
N10 G54 G90 G0 X0 Y0 Z80; Establish coordinate system, move to safe starting point
N20 M03 S500; Spindle rotation CCW starts
N30 G0 Z20; Position to initial level
N40 G98 G76 X10 Y20 Z-35 R5 I5 P500 F100; Complete boring of hole 1 after
positioning, return to the level of point R
N50 G91 X15 Y10; Complete boring of the remaining holes in incremental
programming, return to the initial level
N60 X15 Y-10
N70 X-15 Y-10
N80 G80; Cancel G76 boring cycle
N90 G28 G91 X0 Y0 Z0; Return to reference point
N100 M30; Program end
```



### Note

- (1) Axis switching: Before switching the boring axis, please cancel the canned cycle.
- (2) Modality: G76 command data is stored as modal data, the same data can be omitted;
- (3) Boring processing: do not drill in the block that does not include X, Y, Z, R or any other additional axis. If the moving position of Z is zero, the command is not executed;
- (4) I J R: if specify I J R in the boring block, I or J can only be a positive value. If I or J is specified as a negative value, the sign is ignored. If they are specified in the non-boring block, they cannot be stored as modal data;
- (5) Cancel: Do not specify the G codes of group 01 (G00 to G03, etc.) in the G76 block. Otherwise, G76 will be cancelled;
- (6) Tool position offset: in the boring canned cycle mode, the tool position offset is ignored.

## 14.5 Drilling Cycle (Center Drills) (G81)



### Function and Purpose

This cycle is for the normal drilling.

The feed cutting is performed to the hole bottom, and the tool returns from the hole bottom in rapid traverse.

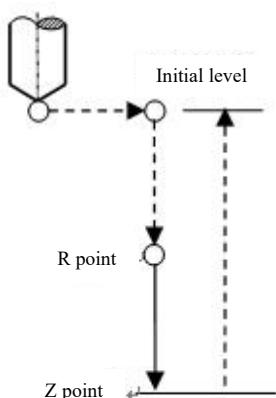


### Command Format

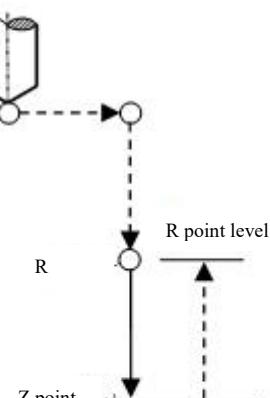
(G98/G99) G81 X\_ Y\_ Z\_ R\_ F\_ L\_ ;

Parameter	Meaning
X Y	The hole position data. The absolute position of the hole in absolute programming, and the distance from the current position to the hole position in incremental programming;
Z	The position of hole bottom. The absolute position of hole bottom on Z in absolute programming (G90); the distance from hole bottom to R point in incremental programming (G91);
R	Position of R point. The absolute position of R point on Z in absolute programming (G90); the distance from R point to initial level in incremental programming (G91);
F	Cutting feedrate
L	Number of repetitions (can be omitted when L=1, generally used for multi-hole processing, so X and Y should be incremental values)

#### G81 (G98)



#### G81 (G99)



### Description

#### ● Action

Tool position point moves to the B point above hole center in rapid traverse;

Move close to the workpiece surface to R point in rapid traverse;

Drilling downward at F speed to the hole bottom Z point;

Spindle keeps rotating; retract upward to R point (G99) or B point (G98) in rapid traverse.

- **Spindle rotation**

Before G81 is specified, the auxiliary function (M code) is used to rotate spindle.

- **Auxiliary function**

When G81 and M code are specified in the same block, the M code is executed during the initial positioning.

When the number of repetitions L is specified, the above actions will only be executed for the first time. The M code will not be executed after the second time.

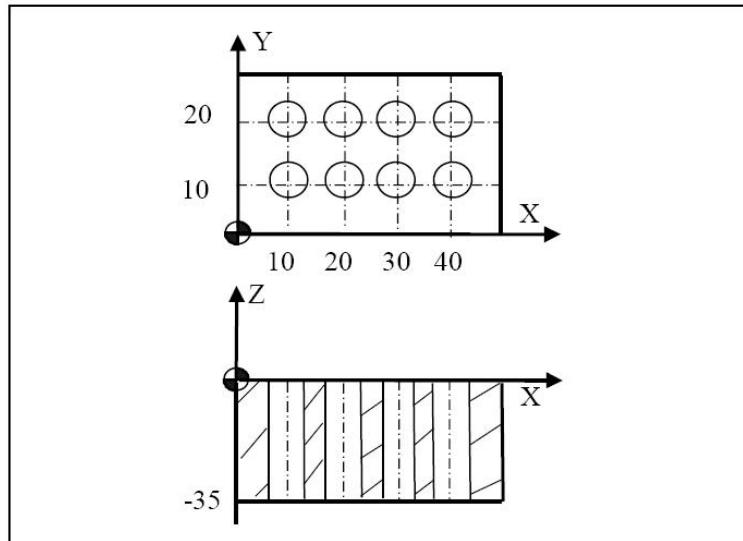
- **Tool length compensation**

When tool length compensation (G43, G44, G49) is specified in the drilling canned cycle, the compensation is used when positioning to the R point.



### Example

Process the hole shown as below,



### Example 1

%3343

G54G0 X0 Y0 Z30; Return to the safe height of workpiece zero

M03 S600; Spindle rotation CW

G0 Z10; Position to the initial plane

G90G99 G81 X10 Y10 R5 Z-35 F200; Position to the hole (10 10), perform drilling, return to R level

G91X10L3; Drill the last three holes on horizontal axis, return to R level  
Y10; Position to the hole (40 20), perform drilling, return to R level  
G91X10L3; Drill the last three holes on horizontal axis  
X-10L3; Drill the first three holes on horizontal axis, and return to R level  
G80; Cancel drilling canned cycle  
G28 G91 Z0; Return to machine zero of Z axis  
G28 G91 X0 Y0; Return to machine zero of X axis and Y axis  
M30; Program end



#### Note

- (1) Axis switching: please cancel canned cycle before switching drilling axis.
- (2) Modality: G81 command data is stored as modal data, the same data can be omitted;
- (3) Drilling: Drilling cannot be in the block that does not include X, Y, Z, R or any other additional axis. If the moving position of Z is zero, the command is not executed;
- (4) Cancel: Do not specify the G codes of group 01 (G00 to G03, etc.) in the G81 block. Otherwise, G81 will be cancelled.
- (5) Tool position offset: In the drilling canned cycle mode, the tool position offset is ignored.

## 14.6 Drilling Cycle with Pause (G82)



### Function and Purpose

This cycle is used for normal drilling, counternboring, and blind hole processing.

The cutting feed proceeds to the bottom of the hole. Tool pauses at the bottom of the hole, and then retracts from the bottom of the hole in rapid traverse.

This cycle can improve the accuracy of the hole depth.

This command is the same as G81 except that it needs to pause at the bottom of the hole.

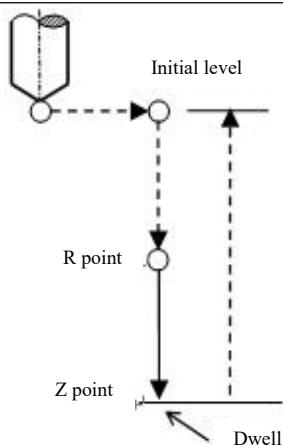


### Command Format

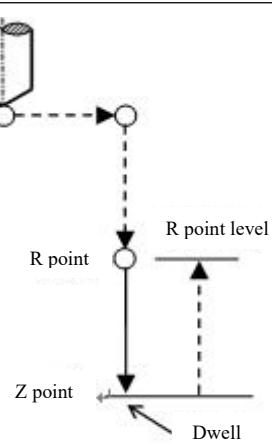
(G98/G99) G82 X\_ Y\_ Z\_ R\_ P\_ F\_ L\_ ;

Parameter	Meaning
X Y	The absolute position of the hole in absolute programming, and the distance from the current position to the hole position in incremental programming;
Z	The absolute position of hole bottom in absolute programming (G90); the distance from hole bottom to R point in incremental programming (G91);
R	The absolute position of R point in absolute programming (G90); the distance from R point to initial level in incremental programming (G91);
P	Dwell time at the hole bottom (unit: ms)
F	Cutting feedrate
L	Number of cycles (can be omitted when L=1, generally used for multi-hole processing)

#### G82 (G98)



#### G82 (G99)





## Description

### ● Action

- (1) Tool position point moves to B point above hole center in rapid traverse;
- (2) Move close to the workpiece surface to R point;
- (3) Drill downward at F speed to Z point of hole bottom;
- (4) Spindle keeps original rotating. Pause P ms
- (5) Retract upward to R point (G99) or B point (G98)

### ● Spindle rotation

Before G82 is specified, the auxiliary function (M code) can be used to rotate spindle.

### ● Auxiliary function

When G81 and M code are specified in the same block, the M code is executed during the initial positioning.

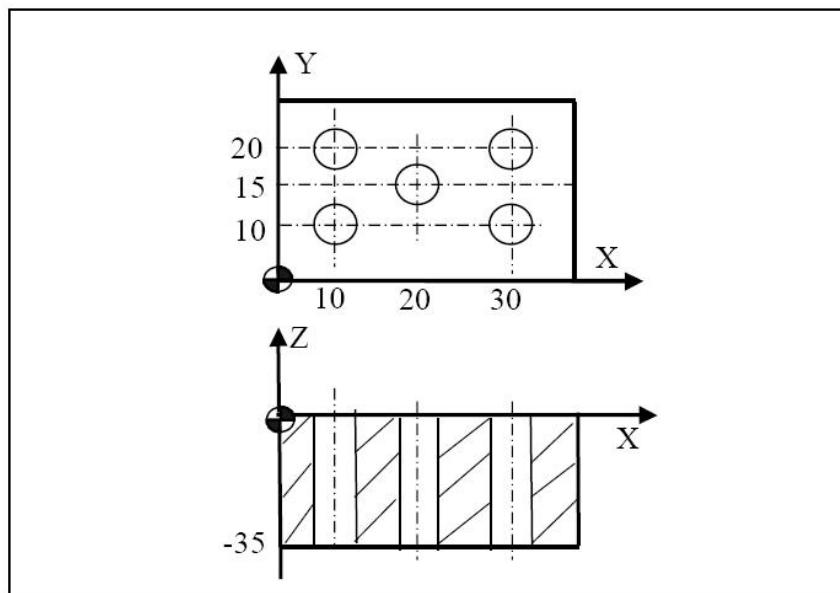
When the number of repetitions L is specified, the above actions will only be executed for the first time. The M code will not be executed after the second time.

### ● Tool length compensation

When tool length compensation (G43, G44, G49) is specified in the drilling canned cycle, the compensation is used when positioning to the R point.



## Example



### Example 1

%3343

G54G0 X0 Y0 Z30; Return to the safe height of workpiece zero

M03 S600; Spindle rotation CW

G0 Z10; Position to the initial level

G99 G82 X10 Y10 R5 Z-35 P1000 F200; Position to the hole (10 10), perform drilling, return to R level

X10Y20; Position to the hole (10 20), perform drilling, return to R level

Y20Y15; Position to the hole (20 15), perform drilling, return to R level

X30Y10; Position to the hole (30 10), perform drilling, return to R level

X30Y20; Position to the hole (30 20), perform drilling, return to R level

G80; Cancel drilling canned cycle

G28 G91 Z0; Return to machine zero of Z axis

G28 G91 X0 Y0; Return to machine zero of X axis and Y axis

M30



#### Note

- (1) Axis switching: please cancel canned cycle before switching drilling axis;
- (2) Modality: G81 command data is stored as modal data, the same data can be omitted;
- (3) Drilling: Drilling cannot be in the block that does not include X, Y, Z, R or any other additional axis. If the moving position of Z is zero, the command is not executed;
- (4) Cancel: Do not specify the G codes of group 01 (G00 to G03, etc.) in the G82 block. Otherwise, G82 will be cancelled.
- (5) Tool position offset: In the drilling canned cycle mode, the tool position offset is ignored.
- (6) P: Please specify P in the drilling block. If it is specified in the non-drilling block, it cannot be stored as modal data.

### 14.7 Deep Hole Drilling Cycle (G83)



#### Function and Purpose

This cycle is for deep hole processing.

This canned cycle is used for intermittent feed on Z axis. After drilling of each hole downward, the tool quickly retracts to the reference point R. The retraction amount is larger, which is better for chip removal and coolant adding.



#### Command Format

(G98/G99) G83 X\_ Y\_ Z\_ R\_ Q\_ K\_ F\_ L\_ P\_;

Parameter	Meaning
X Y	The absolute position of the hole in absolute programming, and the distance from the current position to the hole position in incremental programming;
Z	The absolute position of hole bottom in absolute programming (G90); the distance from hole bottom to R point in incremental programming (G91);
R	The absolute position of R point in absolute programming (G90); the distance from R point to initial level in incremental programming (G91);
Q	Drilling depth downward (incremental value, negative)
K	Distance from the upper surface of the machined hole (incremental value, positive) Note: K cannot be larger than Q
F	Cutting feedrate
L	Number of repetitions (can be omitted when L=1, generally used for multi-hole processing)
P	Dwell time at the hole bottom (unit: ms)
<b>G83 (G98)</b>	
<b>G83 (G99)</b>	



## Description

### ● Action

- (1) Tool position point moves to B point above hole center in rapid traverse;
- (2) Move close to the workpiece surface to R point;
- (3) Drill downward at F speed with depth of q;
- (4) Retract upward to R point;
- (5) Move down to the top of the processed hole, at a distance of k;

- (6) Drill downward at F speed with depth of  $(q+k)$  ;
- (7) Repeat steps 4, 5, 6. Reach Z point at hole bottom;
- (8) Pause P ms at hole bottom (Spindle keeps original rotating).
- (9) Retract upward to R point (G99) or B point (G98).

- **Spindle rotation**

Before G83 is specified, the auxiliary function (M code) can be used to rotate spindle.

- **Auxiliary function**

When G83 and M code are specified in the same block, the M code is executed during the initial positioning. When the number of repetitions L is specified, the above actions will only be executed for the first time. The M code will not be executed after the second time.

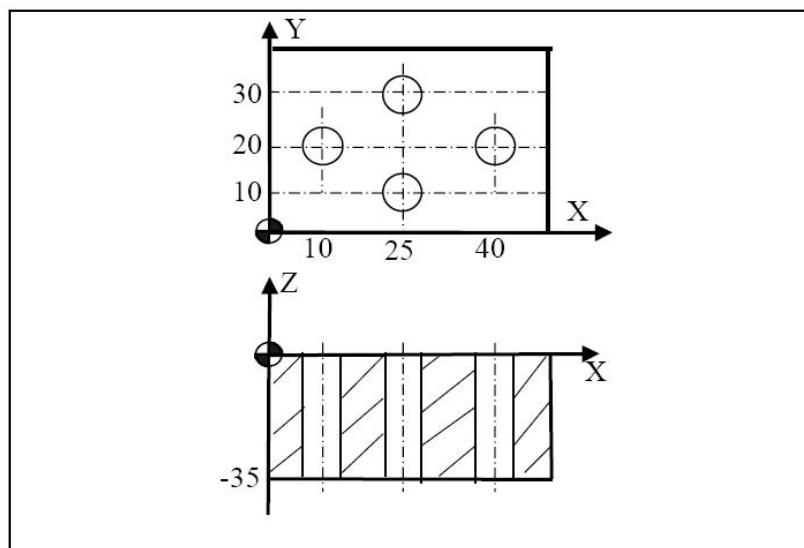
- **Tool length compensation**

When tool length compensation (G43, G44, G49) is specified in the drilling canned cycle, the compensation is used when positioning to the R point.



### Example

Process the hole as shown below.



#### Example 1

%3343

G54G0 X0 Y0 Z30; Return to the safe height of workpiece zero

M03 S800; Spindle rotation CW

G0 Z10; Position to the initial level

G99 G83 X10 Y20 R5 Z-35 Q-1 K0.2 F200; Position to the hole (10 20), perform drilling, return to R level

X25Y30; Position to the hole (25 30), perform drilling, return to R level  
X40Y20; Position to the hole (40 20), perform drilling, return to R level  
X25Y10; Position to the hole (25 10), perform drilling, return to R level  
G80; Cancel drilling canned cycle  
G28 G91 Z0; Return to machine zero of Z axis  
G28 G91 X0 Y0; Return to machine zero of X axis and Y axis  
M30; Program end;



#### Note

- (1) Axis switching: please cancel canned cycle before switching drilling axis.
- (2) Modality: G81 command data is stored as modal data, the same data can be omitted;
- (3) Drilling: Drilling cannot be in the block that does not include X, Y, Z, R or any other additional axis. If the moving position of Z is zero, the command is not executed;
- (4) Cancel: Do not specify the G codes of group 01 (G00 to G03, etc.) in the G81 block. Otherwise, G81 will be cancelled.
- (5) Tool position offset: In the drilling canned cycle mode, the tool position offset is ignored.
- (6) P: Please specify P in the block of drilling. If it is specified in a non-drilling block, it cannot be stored as modal data.
- (7) Q: Please specify Q in the block of drilling. If it is specified in a non-drilling block, it cannot be stored as modal data.

## 14.8 Tapping Cycle (G84)



#### Function and Purpose

With this function, the tapping of spindle rotation CW can be realized. There are two types of reverse tapping. One is the tapping cycle, that is, the tapping path goes directly from point R to point Z at the bottom of the hole; the other is the peck tapping cycle, that is, repeated intermittent feed is performed during the tapping process.

In the tapping cycle, when the spindle rotates clockwise in tapping, and reaches the bottom of the hole, the spindle rotates counterclockwise and exits. During the tapping or exit process, the spindle feeds a thread lead along the tapping axis for each revolution of the spindle, and the feed relationship does not change even during acceleration and deceleration.

When the VFC spindle is used, the tapping spindle moves synchronously with the spindle, which is referred to as following tapping; when the servo spindle is used, both the spindle motor and servo motor work in the position control mode, and the tapping is performed via the interpolation between tapping axis and spindle, which is referred to as the synchronous tapping.

The programming commands are the same for the following tapping and synchronous tapping.

Note that the pitch of the tap used for tapping should be consistent with that in the programming

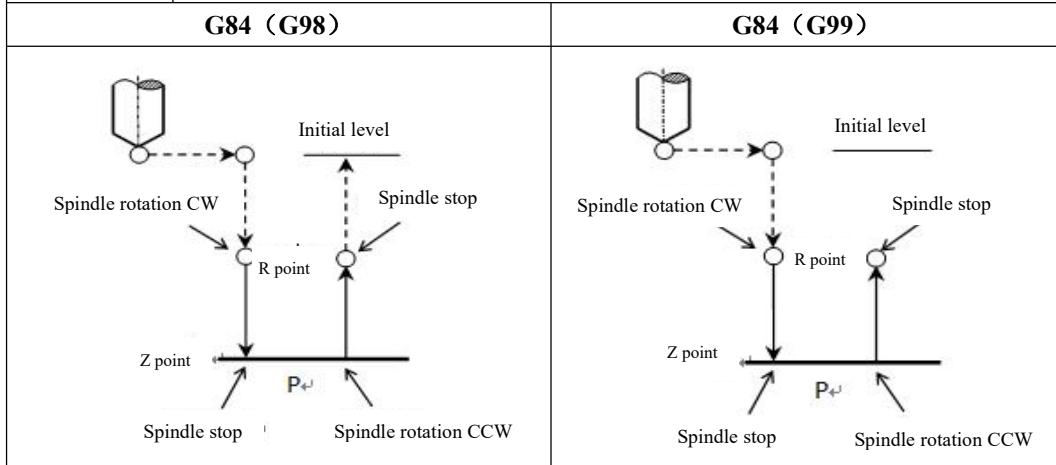
### 14.8.1 Tapping Cycle (G84)



#### Command Format

(G98/G99)G84 X\_ Y\_ Z\_ R\_ P\_ F\_ L\_\_J\_; (straight tapping)

Parameter	Meaning
X Y	The absolute position of the hole in absolute programming (G90), and the distance from the current position to the hole position in incremental programming (G91);
Z	The absolute position of hole bottom in absolute programming (G90); the distance from hole bottom to R point in incremental programming (G91);
R	The absolute position of R point in absolute programming (G90); the distance from R point to initial level in incremental programming (G91);
P	Dwell time at the hole bottom (unit: ms)
F	Thread lead
L	Number of repeats (can be omitted when L=1)
J	J1 A-axis tapping; J2 B-axis tapping; J3 C-axis tapping



#### ● Action (straight tapping)

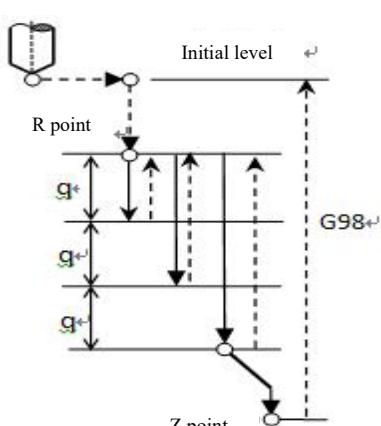
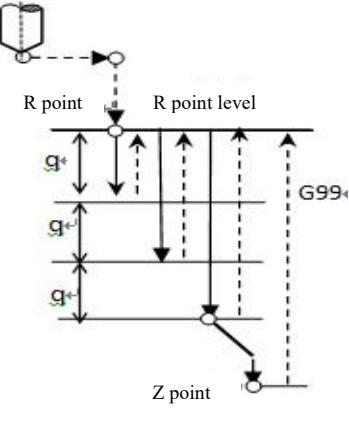
- (1) Rotate the spindle through the auxiliary function, and the tool position point will move to point B above the hole center in rapid traverse;
- (2) Spindle rotates CW, and approaches to the workpiece surface in rapid traverse, and reaches to R point;
- (3) System calculates feedrate base on the pitch speed; tap downward at the feedrate with the depth of Z;
- (4) Tap to the hole bottom, spindle stops;

- (5) After the dwell time P is specified, pausing at hole bottom is performed;
- (6) Spindle rotates CCW, tap upward in rapid traverse, retract to R point;
- (7) Spindle stops;
- (8) Retract upward to R point (G99) or B point (G98) in rapid traverse.

### 14.8.2 Peck Tapping Cycle (G84)

(G98/G99)G84 X\_ Y\_ Z\_ Q\_ K\_ R\_ P\_ F\_ L\_ E\_ J\_ ; (peck tapping)

Parameter	Meaning
X Y	The absolute position of the hole in absolute programming (G90), and the distance from the current position to the hole position in incremental programming (G91)
Z	The absolute position of hole bottom in absolute programming (G90); the distance from hole bottom to R point in incremental programming (G91)
Q	Feed amount
K	Retraction amount
R	The absolute position of R point in absolute programming (G90); the distance from R point to initial level in incremental programming (G91);
P	Dwell time at the hole bottom (unit: ms)
F	Thread lead
L	Number of repetitions (can be omitted when L=1)
E	E1: peck tapping, feed Q, retract K E2, peck tapping, feed Q, retract to R level
J	J1 A-axis tapping; J2 B-axis tapping; J3 C-axis tapping

#### ● Peck tapping cycle action

- (1) Rotate the spindle through the auxiliary function, and the tool position point will move to point B above the hole center in rapid traverse;

- (1) Spindle rotates CW; approaches to the workpiece surface in rapid traverse, and reaches to R point;
- (2) System calculates feedrate based on the pitch speed, tap downward at the feedrate with the depth of Z;
- (3) Spindle stops;
- (4) After the dwell time P is specified, pausing at hole bottom is performed;
- (5) Spindle rotates CCW; tap upward in rapid traverse, retract to R point;
- (6) Spindle stops;
- (7) Spindle rotates CW, tap downward at the feedrate with the depth of (times\*Q)
- (8) Repeat steps 4, 5, 6, 7, 8. Reach Z point at hole bottom;
- (9) Dwell P ms at hole bottom (spindle keeps original rotation)
- (10) Retract upward to R point (G99) or B point (G98) in rapid traverse.



### Description

- **Spindle rotation**

Before G84 is specified, the auxiliary function (M code) can be used to rotate spindle. The spindle revolutions may affect the tapping speed.

- **Auxiliary function**

When G84 and M code are specified in the same block, the M code is executed during the initial positioning. When the number of repetitions L is specified, the above actions will only be executed for the first time. The M code will not be executed after the second time.

- **Tool length compensation**

When tool length compensation (G43, G44, G49) is specified in the drilling canned cycle, the compensation is used when positioning to the R point.

- **Feedrate in tapping**

During rigid tapping, the F (feedrate) specified in the program is invalid, and the feedrate along the tapping axis is calculated by the following formula:

Feedrate = spindle speed × thread lead

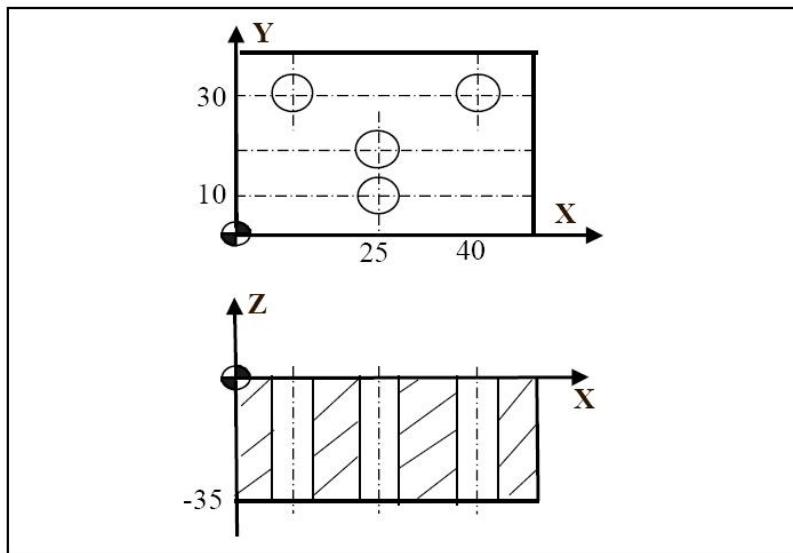
- **Tapping mode**

C-axis tapping: The servo spindle is used as the C-axis. High-speed and high-precision tapping can be achieved using interpolation for tapping;



### Example

Process the hole as shown below.



### Example 1

%3343

G54G0 X0 Y0 Z30; Return to the safe height of workpiece zero  
M03 S3000; Spindle rotation CW  
G0 Z10; Position to the initial level  
G90G99 G84 X25 Y10 R5 Z-35P1000 F1; Position to the hole (25 10), perform drilling, return to R level  
X25Y20; Position to the hole (25 20), perform drilling, return to R level  
X10Y30; Position to the hole (10 30), perform drilling, return to R level  
X40Y30; Position to the hole (40 30), perform drilling, return to R level  
G80; Cancel canned cycle;  
G28 G91 Z0; Return to machine zero on Z axis  
G28 G91 X0 Y0; Return to machine zero on X axis and Y axis  
M30; Program end



### Note

- 1) Axis switching: Cancel canned cycle before switching drilling axis.
- 2) Modality: G84 command data is stored as modal data, the same data can be omitted.
- 3) Drilling: Drilling cannot be in the block that does not include X, Y, Z, R or any other additional axis. If the moving position of Z is zero, the command is not executed. Z point must be lower than R level, otherwise an alarm will be issued.
- 4) Position mode G108 or STOC: Before the tapping command G84 is used, please switch the spindle servo motor from the speed mode to the position mode by the STOC command. After the tapping, user could switch the spindle servo motor from position mode to speed mode by

CTOS command, and use the servo spindle as the ordinary spindle.

- 5) Scaling and Rotation: the rotation or scaling are not supported in the process of rigid tapping.
- 6) Cancel: Do not specify the G codes of group 01 (G00 to G03, etc.) in the G84 block. Otherwise, G84 will be cancelled.
- 7) Tool position offset: In the drilling canned cycle mode, the tool position offset is ignored.
- 8) P: Please specify P in the drilling block. If it is specified in the non-drilling block, it cannot be stored as modal data.
- 9) Q: Please specify Q in the drilling block. If it is specified in the non-drilling block, it cannot be stored as modal data.
- 10) Reset: when the reset is executed during rigid tapping, the rigid tapping mode cannot be released, and the machine tool cannot stop tapping.
- 11) Emergency stop can be effective.
- 12) Feed hold, single block: In G84 (G74) mode, the feed hold will be executed after each tapping action is completed, and the subsequent tapping will continue after pressing the cycle start button.
- 13) The feed hold is executed after each tapping action is completed in single block mode, and the next tapping action will be completed after pressing the cycle start button.
- 14) Machine lock: machine lock is also effective to G84 (G74).
- 15) Even if G84 (G74) is executed in the machine lock state, the drilling axis will not move. Therefore, the spindle will not move.

## 14.9 Boring Cycle (G85)



### Function and Purpose

This cycle is for hole boring.

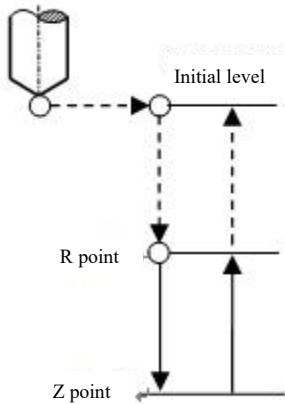
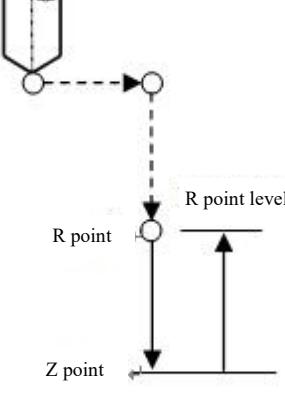
In the boring cycle, when the bottom of the hole is reached, the cutting feed is executed until tool returns to the R point. If in G98 mode, the tool will quickly return to the initial level after reaching R point.



### Command Format

(G98/G99) G85 X\_ Y\_ Z\_ R\_ P\_ F\_ L\_ ;

Parameter	Meaning
-----------	---------

X Y	The absolute position of the hole in absolute programming, and the distance from the current position to the hole position in incremental programming;
Z	The absolute position of hole bottom in absolute programming (G90); the distance from hole bottom to R point in incremental programming (G91);
R	The absolute position of R point on Z in absolute programming (G90); the distance from R point to initial level in incremental programming (G91);
P	Dwell time at the hole bottom (unit: ms)
F	Cutting feedrate
L	Number of repeats (can be omitted when L=1)
<b>G85 (G98)</b>	
	
<b>G85 (G99)</b>	



## Description

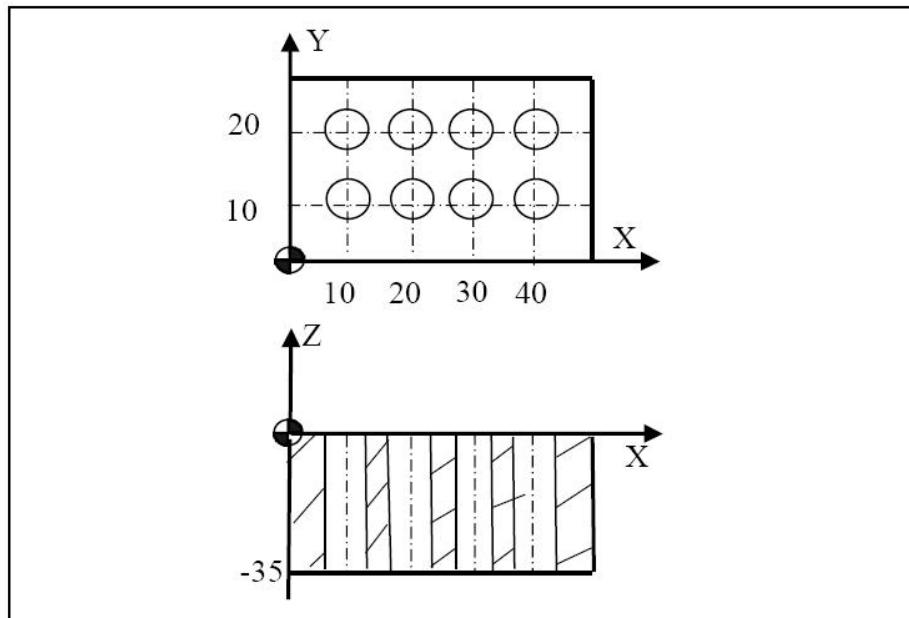
- Boring cycle actions
  - (1) Tool position point moves to B point above hole center in rapid traverse;
  - (2) Move close to the workpiece surface, and reach to R point;
  - (3) Bore downward at F speed;
  - (4) Reach Z point at hole bottom;
  - (5) Retract upward to R point at F speed (spindle keeps rotating);
  - (6) Retract upward to B point in rapid traverse if in G98.
- The drilling axis must be Z axis;
- Z point must be lower than B level; otherwise, the alarm will be issued;
- If the movement amounts of Z, Q, K are zero, then the command will not be executed;

- G85 command data is stored as the modal data, and the same data can be omitted;
- Please use corresponding M code to rotate spindle before G85 is used;
- When G85 and M code are specified in the same block, the M code is executed at the same time as the first positioning action, and then the system processes the next boring action;
- When the number of repetitions L is specified, the M code is only executed for the first hole, and the M code is not executed for the second or later holes;
- When the tool length offset (G43, G44 or G49) is specified in the canned cycle, the offset will be added while positioning to the R point;



### Example

Machine the hole as shown below,



#### Example 1 (absolute programming, return to R level)

%3341

N10 G54 G90 G0 X0 Y0 Z80; Establish coordinate system, move to the safe initial point

N20M03 S600; Spindle rotates CW

N30G00 Z20; Position to initial level

N40 G99 G85 X10Y10Z-35 R5 P500 F100; After positioning, complete boring 1, then return to R level

N50X20; After positioning, complete all boring, then return to R level

N60 X30

N70 X40

N80 Y20

N90 X30  
N100 X20  
N110 X10  
N120 G80; Cancel G85 boring cycle  
N130 G91G28 X0 Y0 Z0; Return to reference point  
N140 M30; Program end

#### **Example 2 (absolute and incremental mixed programming, return to the initial level)**

%3343  
N10 G54 G90 G0 X0 Y0 Z80; Establish coordinate system, move to the safe initial point  
N20 M03 S500; Spindle rotates CW  
N30 G0 Z20; Position to initial level  
N40 G98 G85 X10 Y10 Z-35 R5 P500 F100; After positioning, complete boring 1, then return to R level  
N50 G91 X10 L3; Increment X10 in turn to complete boring 3 holes, and then return to the initial level  
Y10  
X-10 L3  
N60 G80; Cancel G85 boring cycle  
N70 G28 G91 X0 Y0 Z0; Return to reference point  
N80 M30; Program end



#### **Note**

- (1) Axis switching: Before switching the boring axis, the canned cycle must be cancelled.
- (2) Modality: G85 command data is stored as modal data, and the same data can be omitted.
- (3) Boring: Drilling is not performed in the block that does not include X, Y, Z, R or any other additional axis. If the moving position of Z is zero, this command is not executed.
- (4) Cancel: Do not specify the G codes of group 01 (G00 to G03, etc.) in the G85 block. Otherwise, G85 will be cancelled.
- (5) Tool position offset: In the boring canned cycle mode, the tool position offset is ignored.

#### **14.10 Boring Cycle (G86)**



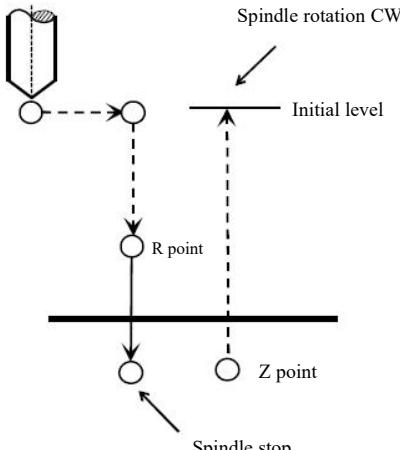
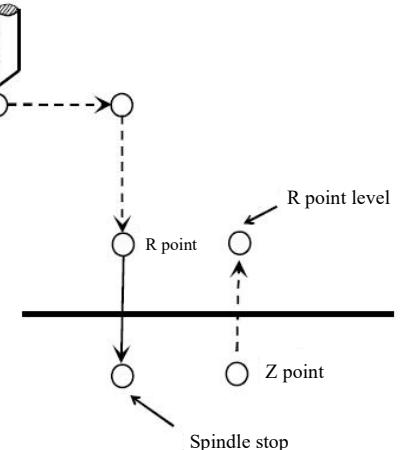
#### **Function and Purpose**

The action performed by G86 is the same as that of G81, but the spindle stops at the bottom of the hole and then quickly retracts. It is mainly used for low precision boring.



#### **Command Format**

(G98/G99) G86 X\_ Y\_ Z\_ R\_ F\_ L\_;

Parameter	Meaning
X Y	The absolute position of the hole in absolute programming(G90), and the distance from the current position to the hole position in incremental programming(G91);
Z	The absolute position of hole bottom in absolute programming (G90); the distance from hole bottom to R point in incremental programming (G91);
R	The absolute position of R point in absolute programming (G90); the distance from R point to initial level in incremental programming (G91);
F	Cutting feedrate
L	Number of repeats (can be omitted when L=1)
<b>G86 (G98)</b>	
	
<b>G86 (G99)</b>	
	



## Description

### ● Action

After positioning along X-axis and Y-axis, the tool position quickly moves to point B above the hole center;

Move close to the workpiece surface, and reach to R point;

Drill downward at F speed;

Reach to Z point of hole bottom;

Spindle stops rotating;

Retract upward to R point (G99) or B point (G98)

Spindle resumes CW rotation.

### ● Spindle rotation

Rotate spindle with auxiliary function (M code) before using G86.

When continuously performing the drilling with a short distance from the hole position and the initial level to the R point level, the spindle may not be able to rotate normally before entering the hole cutting action. In this case, do not specify the number of repetitions L, and user needs to insert GO4-based pause before each drilling action to let time out.

### ● Tool length compensation

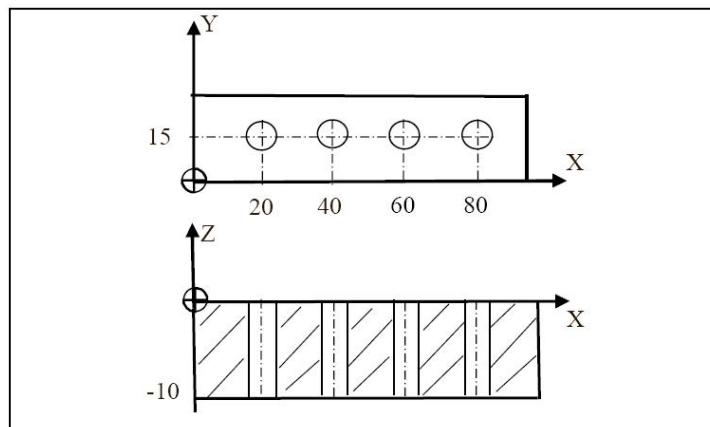
When the tool length compensation (G43, G44, G49) is specified in drilling canned cycle, this compensation should be used at the time of positioning to R point.

### ● Auxiliary function

When G86 command and M code are specified in the same block, the M code is executed during the initial positioning. When the number of repeats L is specified, the above actions will be executed only the first time, and M codes will not be executed after the second time.



### Example



### Example 1:

%3353; Reaming with a reamer

G54G00X0Y0Z50; Establish coordinate system, reach to the safe starting point

M3 S2000; Spindle starts

G99 G86G90X20Y15R20 Z-10 F120; After positioning, drill hole 1, and return to R level

G91 X20 L3; Reram holes 2, 3, 4 in turn, and return to the R level after each hole is milled

G80 G91 G28 X0 Y0 Z0; Cancel G86 boring cycle, return to the reference point

M30; Program end



### Note

- (1) Cancel canned cycle before switching drilling axis.
- (2) The drilling axis must be Z axis in G17 plane.
- (3) If the moving position is zero on Z, this command will not be executed.
- (4) G86 data is saved as the modal data, and the same data can be omitted.
- (5) Z point must be lower than R level, otherwise the alarm will be issued.
- (6) Drilling is not performed in the blocks that not includes X, Y, Z, R or any other additional axis.
- (7) The tool position offset is omitted in the drilling canned cycle mode.
- (8) Do not specify the G code (G00-G03) of group 01 in the G86 block; otherwise, G86 will be cancelled.

#### 14.11 Reverse Boring Cycle (G87)



##### Function and Purpose

This command is generally used for boring the hole with small upper surface and large lower surface, and Z point at hole bottom is generally above the reference point R, which is different from other commands.



##### Command Format

(G98/G99) G87X\_ Y\_ Z\_ R\_ I\_ J\_ P\_ F\_ L\_ ;

Parameter	Meaning
X Y	The absolute position of the hole in absolute programming(G90), and the distance from the current position to the hole position in incremental programming(G91);
Z	The absolute position of hole bottom on Z in absolute programming (G90); the distance from hole bottom to R point in incremental programming (G91);
R	The absolute position of R point in absolute programming (G90); the distance from R point to initial level in incremental programming (G91);
I	Offset amount on X axis;
J	Offset amount on Y axis;
P	Dwell time at hole bottom (unit: ms)
F	Cutting feedrate;

L	Number of repeats (can be omitted when L=1);	
<b>G87 (G98)</b>	<b>G87 (G99)</b>	

Initial point offset (I, J)

Z point

Positioning R point

R

Reverse offset (I, J)

Unavailable



## Description

### ● Actions

- (1) Tool position point moves to B point above hole center in rapid traverse, after positioning along X axis and Y axis
- (2) Spindle orientates and stops rotation
- (3) The boring tool moves I or J in the opposite direction of tool nose;
- (4) Move to R point in rapid traverse
- (5) The boring tool moves I or J in the positive direction of tool nose, tool position point returns to hole center X, Y
- (6) Spindle rotates CW
- (7) Boring upward at F speed, reach to Z point at hole bottom;
- (8) Dwell P ms at hole bottom (spindle keeps rotating)
- (9) Spindle orientates and stops rotating
- (10) Tool moves I or J in the opposite direction of the tool nose;
- (11) Retract to B point (G98) upward in rapid traverse
- (12) Move I or J in the positive direction of tool nose, tool position point returns to B point above hole center
- (13) Spindle restores to CW rotation.

### ● Spindle rotation

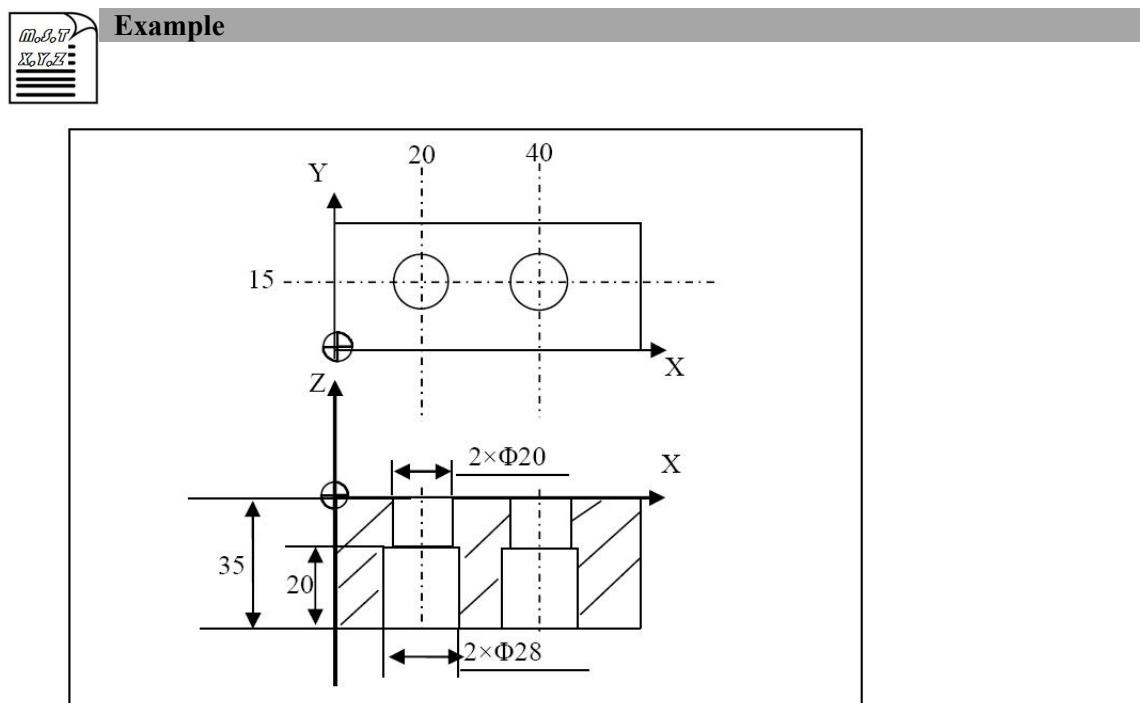
Rotate spindle with auxiliary function (M code) before using G87.

### ● Tool length compensation

When the tool length compensation (G43, G44, G49) is specified in drilling canned cycle, this compensation should be used at the time of positioning to R point.

### ● Auxiliary function

When G87 command and M code are specified in the same block, the M code is executed during the initial positioning. When the number of repetitions L is specified, the above actions will be executed only at the first time, and M codes will not be executed after the second time.



%3355

G54G0X0Y0Z50; Establish coordinate system, reach to safe starting point

M03 S600; Spindle starts

G54G0Y15

G98G87G90 X20I5R-40 P2000 Z-15 F120; Bore hole 1 after positioning

G91 X20; Bore hole 2 after positioning

G80 G91 G28 X0 Y0 Z0; Cancel G87 reverse cycle, return to reference point

M30; Program end



### Note

- (1) Cancel canned cycle before switching drilling axis.
- (2) The drilling axis must be Z axis in G17 plane.
- (3) If the moving position is zero on Z, this command will not be executed.
- (4) Z point must be higher than R level, otherwise the alarm will be issued.

- (5) G87 data is saved as the modal data, and the same data can be omitted.
- (6) G87 can only use G98.
- (7) Rotate spindle with the corresponding M code before using G87.
- (8) Drilling is not performed in the blocks that not includes X, Y, Z, R or any other additional axis.
- (9) The tool position offset is omitted in the drilling canned cycle mode.
- (10) Do not specify the G code (G00-G03) of group 01 in the G87 block; otherwise, G87 will be cancelled.

## 14.12 Boring Cycle (Hand) (G88)



### Function and Purpose

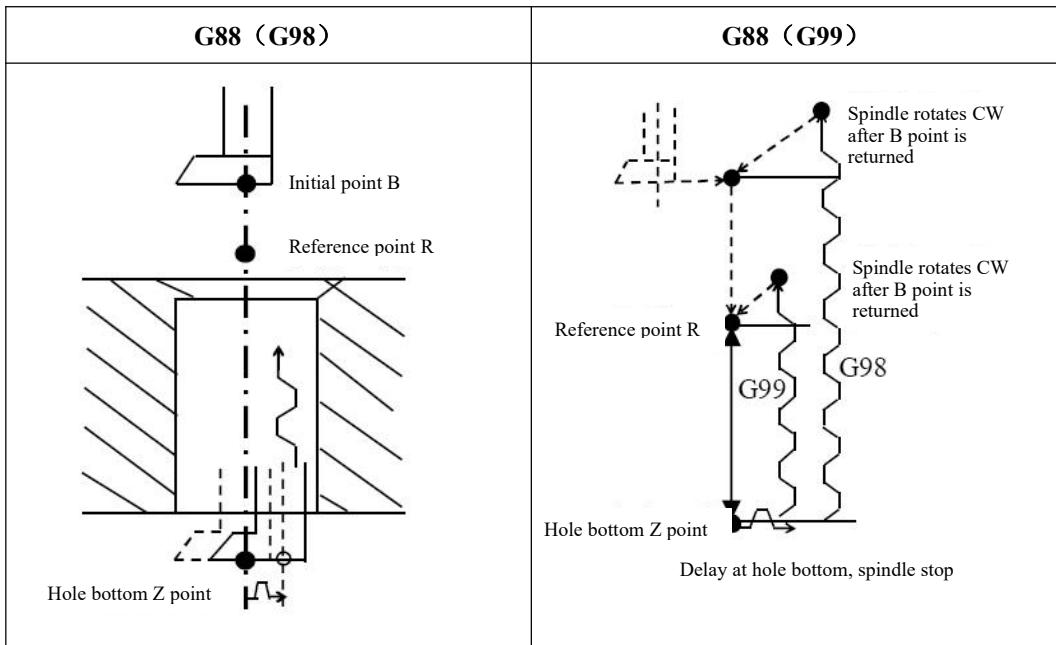
With this command, the position of the initial point B or reference point R is memorized before boring. When the boring tool automatically processes to the bottom of the hole, the machine stops running, and the working mode is manually changed to JOG. After moving radially in the opposite direction of the tool nose for a certain distance, the tool moves to above the height of point B or point R and avoids the workpiece. Then the working mode is restored to auto, the program is cycle restarted, and the tool position point returns to point B or point R. General milling machines can complete fine boring with this command without the spindle exact stop function.



### Command Format

G98 (G99) G88 X\_ Y\_ Z\_ R\_ P\_ F\_ L\_ ;

Parameter	Meaning
X Y	The absolute position of the hole in absolute programming(G90), and the distance from the current position to the hole position in incremental programming(G91);
Z	The absolute position of hole bottom on Z in absolute programming (G90); the distance from hole bottom to R point in incremental programming (G91);
R	The absolute position of R point on Z in absolute programming (G90); the distance from R point to initial level in incremental programming (G91);
P	Dwell time at hole bottom (unit: ms)
F	Feedrate of boring;
L	Number of cycles (generally for multi-hole processing, X and Y are incremental values)



## Description

### ● Action

- (1) The tool position point moves to B point above hole center after positioning along X axis and Y axis;
- (2) Move close to workpiece surface, reach to R point;
- (3) Boring downward at F speed, reach to Z point at hole bottom;
- (4) Dwell Pms at hole bottom (spindle keeps rotating);
- (5) Spindle stops;
- (6) In JOG mode, tool moves radially in the opposite direction of the tool nose for a certain distance, reaches to above the height of B point or R point, avoiding workpiece;
- (7) Press cyclestart button in autot mode, the tool moves to R point (G99) or B point (G98) in rapid traverse;
- (8) Spindle restores to rotation CW automatically;

### ● Spindle rotation

Rotate spindle with auxiliary function (M code) before using G88.

### ● Tool length compensation

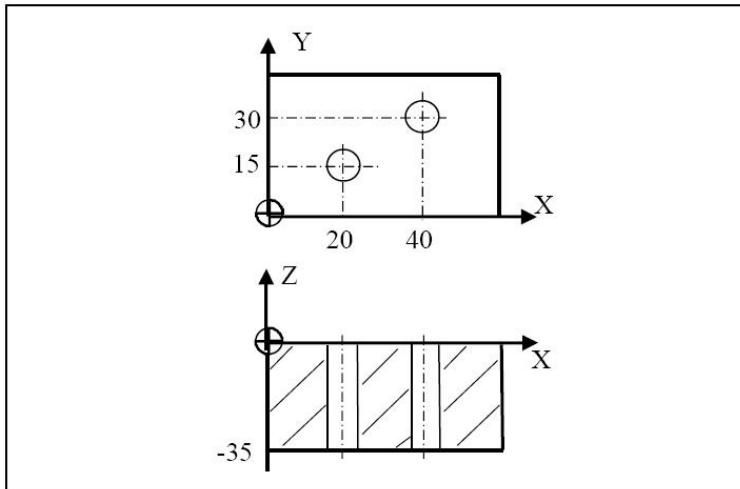
When the tool length compensation (G43, G44, G49) is specified in drilling canned cycle, this compensation should be used at the time of positioning to R point.

### ● Auxiliary function

When G87 command and M code are specified in the same block, the M code is executed during the initial positioning. When the number of repetitions L is specified, the above actions will be executed only for the first time, and M codes will not be executed after the second time.



### Example



%3357

G54G01X0Y0Z50; Boring with a single-edge boring tool

M03 S600; Spindle starts

G98G88G90 X20Y15R5 P2000Z-40F100; After positioning, drill hole 1, return to R level,  
pause 2 seconds at hole bottom

G99 G91 X20 Y15; After positioning, drill hole 2, return to initial level

G80 G28 G91 X0 Y0 Z0; Cancel G88, return to reference point

M30; Program end



### Note

- (1) Cancel canned cycle before switching drilling axis.
- (2) The drilling axis must be Z axis in G17 plane.
- (3) If the moving amount is zero on Z, this command will not be executed.
- (4) Z point must be lower than R level, otherwise the alarm will be issued.
- (5) G88 data is saved as the modal data, and the same data can be omitted.
- (6) If G99 is used, manually move the tool to the position higher than R point.
- (7) If G98 is used, manually move the tool to the position higher than R point.
- (8) Use corresponding M code to rotate spindle before using G88.
- (9) Drilling is not performed in the blocks that not includes X, Y, Z, R or any other additional

axis.

- (10) The tool position offset is omitted in the drilling canned cycle mode.
- (11) Do not specify the G code (G00-G03) of group 01 in the G88 block; otherwise, G88 will be cancelled.

### 14.13 Boring Cycle (G89)



#### Function and Purpose

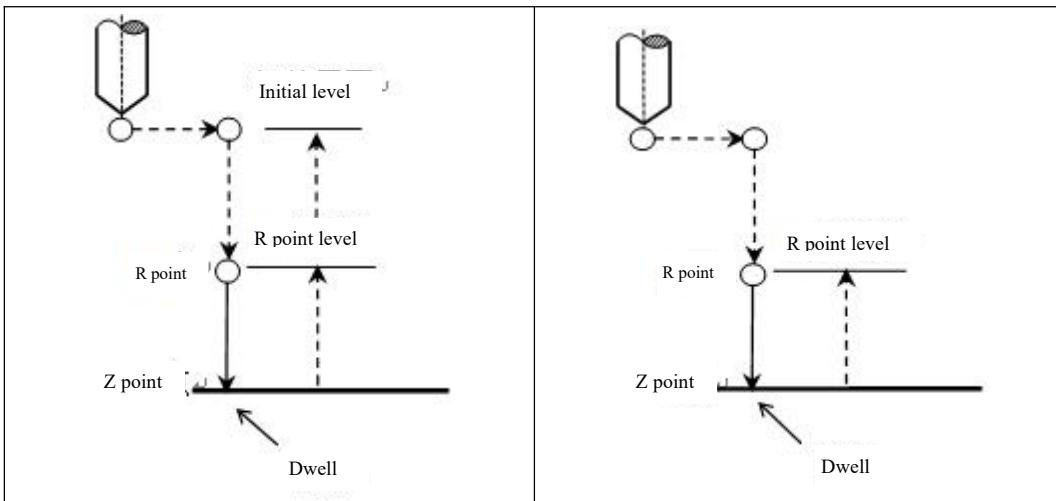
The cycle is for boring.



#### Command Format

(G98/G99) G89 X\_ Y\_ Z\_ R\_ P\_ F\_ L;

Parameter	Meaning
X Y	The absolute position of the hole in absolute programming(G90), and the distance from the current position to the hole position in incremental programming(G91);
Z	The absolute position of hole bottom in absolute programming (G90); the distance from hole bottom to R point in incremental programming (G91);
R	The absolute position of R point in absolute programming (G90); the distance from R point to initial level in incremental programming (G91);
P	Dwell time at hole bottom (unit: ms)
F	Cutting feedrate
L	Number of repeats (usually used for multi-hole processing, so X or Y should be an incremental value)
G89 (G98)	G89 (G99)



## Description

- Actions

This cycle is similar as G86, and the dwell is performed at hole bottom.

- Spindle rotation

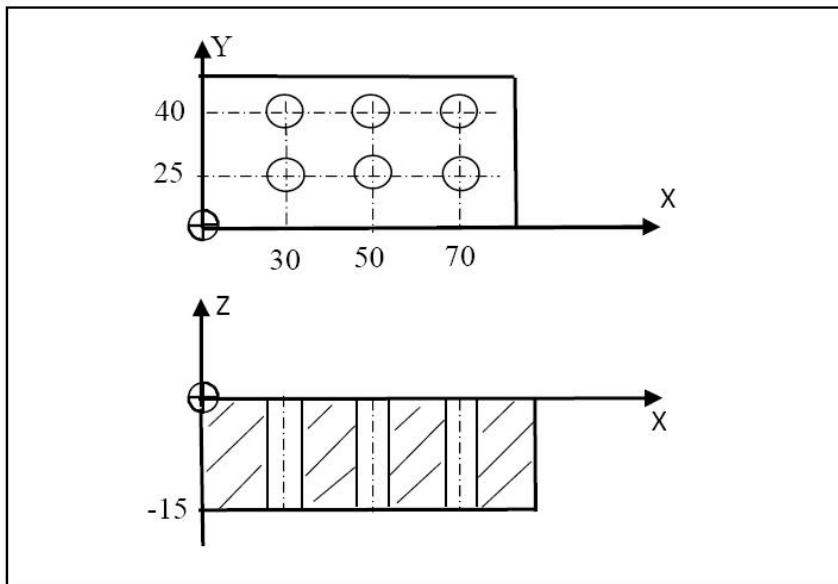
Rotate spindle with auxiliary function (M code) before using G89.

- Auxiliary function

When G89 command and M code are specified in the same block, the M code is executed during the initial positioning. When the number of repetitions L is specified, the above actions will be executed only for the first time, and M codes will not be executed after the second time.



## Example



G54G01X0Y0Z50; Safe start point

M3 S1000; Spindle starts rotating

G90 G99 G89 X30 Y25 Z-15 R10 P1000 F120; After positioning, bore hole 1, pause 1 second at hole bottom, return to R point

X50Y25; Bore hole 2, pause 1 second at hole bottom, return to R point

X70Y25; Bore hole 3, pause 1 second at hole bottom, return to R point

X70Y40; Bore hole 4, pause 1 second at hole bottom, return to R point

X50Y40; Bore hole 5, pause 1 second at hole bottom, return to R point

G98 X30Y40; Bore hole 6, pause 1 second at hole bottom, return to initial level

G80 G28 G91 X0 Y0 Z0; Cancel boring, return to reference point

M30; Program end



#### Note

- (1) Cancel canned cycle before switching drilling axis.
- (2) The drilling axis must be Z axis in G17 plane.
- (3) Z point must be lower than R level, otherwise the alarm will be issued.
- (4) G89 data is saved as the modal data, and the same data can be omitted.
- (5) G89 is similar as G86, and the dwell is performed at hole bottom.
- (6) If the moving amount on Z is zero, G89 is not executed.
- (7) Use corresponding M code to rotate spindle before using G89.
- (8) Drilling is not performed in the blocks that not includes X, Y, Z, R or any other additional axis.

- (9) The tool position offset is omitted in the drilling canned cycle mode.
- (10) Do not specify the G code (G00-G03) of group 01 in the G89 block; otherwise, G86 will be cancelled.

#### 14.14 Drilling Canned Cycle Cancel (G80)



##### Function and Purpose

This command is used to cancel drilling canned cycle



##### Command Format

G80;



##### Example

```
N0 M3 S1000; Spindle starts rotation
N10 G0 Z20; Position to initial level
N20 G90 G99 G81 X30. Y25. Z-2. R5.F120.; Move to hole 1, return to R point
N30 Y50; Move to hole 2, return to R point
N40 Y70; Move to hole 3, return to R point
N50 X100; Move to hole 3, return to R point
N60 Y80; Move to hole 4, return to R point
N70 G98 Y100; Move to hole 6, return to initial level
N70 G80 G28 G91 X0 Y0 Z0; Cancel canned cycle, return to reference point
N80 M5; Spindle stops rotating
N90 M30; Program end
```



##### Note

- (1) After canceling all drilling canned cycles, resume the normal operation;
- (2) Cancel R level and Z level;
- (3) Other drilling parameter data are also cancelled; after canceling all drilling canned cycles, normal operation will be resumed;

# 15 5-Axis Function

## 15.1 Overview



### Function and Purpose

In conventional 3-axis CNC machine tool, direction of tool axis remains unchanged during machining, and the machine tool perform interpolation motion only on 3 linear axes. Compared with the 3-axis machine tool, 5-simultaneously-axis machine tool has additional two rotational degrees of freedom, and the tool movement is more flexible, which is beneficial for the tool to maintain the best cutting state and effectively avoid machining interference. Therefore, five-simultaneous-axis CNC machining has significant advantages when processing complex free-form surfaces.

G codes of 5-axis machining are shown as below:

G code	Group No.	Function
G41.4	09	5-axis side milling tool compensation left
G42.4		5-axis side milling tool compensation right
[G40]		Cancel radius compensation
G43.4	10	RTCP rotation angle programming
G43.5		RTCP tool vector programming
[G49]		Cancel RTCP function
G53.1	00	Tool axis direction control (only for rotary axis movement)
G53.2		Tool axis direction control (tool nose moves with tool axis direction)
G53.3		Normal feed & retract
G53.4		Software limit normal-retract
G68.1	05	Tool coordinate system establishment with 3-point
G68.2		Tool coordinate system establishment with Euler angle
G68.3		Tool coordinate system establishment with space angle
G68.4		Tool coordinate system establishment with current attitude
[G69]		Cancel feature coordinate system

G94.6		5-axis constant feedrate
G140	25	Linear interpolation
G145	00	RTCP parameter switching

## 15.2 Tool Axis Direction (G43.4 to G43.5)



### Function and Purpose

According to machining mode, 5-axis machining function is divided into simultaneous 5-axis machining and 5-axis orientation machining (or inclined surface machining).

In simultaneous 5-axis machining, the tool may produce continuous or intermittent 5-coordinate motion relative to the workpiece at any time, and the tool axis vector direction is also constantly changing; for 5-axis orientation machining (or inclined surface machining), different from conventional three-axis programming, it is necessary to define a unique tool axis vector direction.

Therefore, compared with ordinary three-axis programming, five-axis programming mainly focuses on the direction of tool axis. Find below table for the change of tool axis direction.

G code	Specifying mode
G43.4 H_	Position specifying mode (it also includes the tool length compensation function, which is introduced in the next section)
G43.5 H_	Vector specifying mode (It also includes the tool length compensation function, which is introduced in the next section)
G49	Cancel tool axis specifying mode

### 15.2.1 Position Specifying Mode G43.4



### Command Format

G43.4 H\_;

G49

Parameter	Meaning
H	Number of tool compensation amount in tool compensation



The position specifying mode is also referred to as rotation angle programming. When RTCP function is enabled with G43.4, and the position of the rotary axis (A, B, C) is specified, CNC will perform tool length compensation in real time based on current position of rotary axis, to ensure tool center moves along specified path.

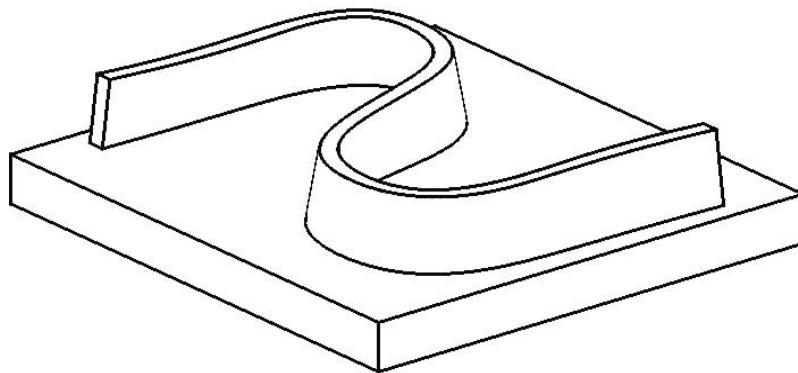


### Example

Example of NC program block format

G43.4 H01	Enable RTCP function, position specifying mode, Call length composition of tool 1
G01 X6.994 Y-22.71 Z116.425 A-2.984 C270.	Specify positions of linear axis and rotary axis (simultaneous 5-axis)
X9.642 Y11.694 Z37.863 A-10.326 C269.994	Specify positions of linear axis and rotary axis (simultaneous 5-axis)
.....	
G49	Cancel RTCP function, cancel tool length composition

### Example 1



%123

G54

G43.4 H01

G01 X6.019 Y-22.492 Z115.476 A0.0 C0.0 F3000. S5000 M03

X6.019 Y-22.492 Z116.476 A-2.984 C270.

X2.031 Y-21.714 Z36.622 A-3.174 C270. F1500.

X2.579 Y-19.274 Z36.738 A-3.767 C270.

X3.993 Y-12.853 Z37.038 A-5.292 C270.

.....

X8.293 Y9.452 Z37.959 A-9.922 C269.997

X8.669 Y11.837 Z38.04 A-10.326 C269.994

X9.254 Y15.816 Z38.167 A-10.955 C269.983

.....

G49

G91 G28 Z0

M30

### 15.2.2 Vector specifying mode G43.5



#### Command Format

G43.5 H\_;

G49

Parameter	Meaning
H	Number of tool compensation amount in tool compensation



#### Description

RTCP function is enabled with G43.5. The subsequent command is to replace the position of rotary axis, and specify the direction (I, J, K) of tool axis at the end of each block in the workpiece coordinate system; the position of rotary axis calculated by CNC based on the value calculated by RTCP function makes the tool move in the specified direction.



#### Example

G43.5 H01	Enable RTCP function, tool vector programming, Call No. 1 tool length composition
G01 X-27.748 Y-23.632 Z15.435 I-.324 J.324 K.889	Specify positions of linear axis and direction of tool axis (simultaneous 5-axis)
Y-4.983 Z11.296 I-.341 J.068 K.938	Specify positions of linear axis and direction of tool axis

	(simultaneous 5-axis)
.....	
G49	Cancel RTCP function



### Note

- (1) Both G43.4 and G54.5 are to enable RTCP function and tool length compensation;
- (2) G49 is to cancel RTCP function and tool length compensation. When there are G43.4, G43.5 commands and inclined surface machining commands, they must correspond to each other, otherwise if the coordinate value executed is incorrect, an "overtravel" alarm error will occur.
- (3) For simultaneous 5-axis machining, the direction of the tool axis changes continuously in fact.
- (4) When executing G43.4 or G43.5 program, if "feed hold" is selected or program is suddenly interrupted in RTCP state, users should press RESET or EMERGENCY STOP first, otherwise it is easy for the tool to interfere with the workpiece or the machine tool during manual operation

## 15.3 Length Compensation on tool axis (G43.4, G43.5/G49)



### Function and Purpose

In machining of rotary axis (multi-axis), because RTCP function (tool nose following function) is usually used, the system needs to associate the control point with the tool center, so that the interpolation path is the path required. In addition, different five-axis machine tools have different tool length measurement methods, so in multi-axis machining, the tool length compensation needs to be specified in the direction of tool axis.

G43.4 and G43.5 can be used to specify both tool axis direction and tool length compensation.

Through real-time tool length compensation, the system positions the control point on the tool center and turns on the RTCP function to ensure that the tool center point moves along the specified path.



### Command Format

G43.4 H\_ ; Tool length compensation in tool axis direction; position specifying mode

G43.5 H\_ ; Tool length compensation in tool axis direction; vector specifying mode

G49 ; Cancel tool length compensation

Parameter	Meaning
H	Number of tool compensation amount in tool compensation



## Description

### 1) Speed control

In the program, F specifies the moving speed of the tool center in the workpiece coordinate system. In five-axis machining, due to the addition of rotary axis, the moving speed of the tool center may be inconsistent with the actual moving speed of machine tool, and sometimes the speed of the sub-axis may exceed the set maximum speed limit. In this case, CNC system will reduce the processing speed to ensure that the sub-axis speed is within the set range.

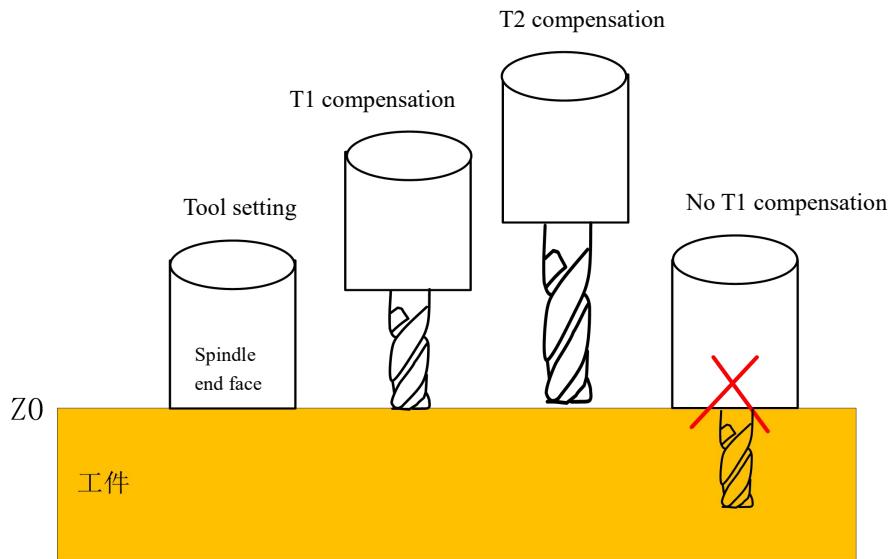
### 2) Tool setting mode

System provides two tool setting modes for users: tool setting of spindle end face and tool setting of tool nose. The former is the default.

#### Tool setting of spindle end face

When the channel parameter 040403 is set to 0, tool setting of spindle end face is enabled. After tool setting is completed on Z, it is necessary to offset a tool length in the negative direction, and set the spindle end face as the workpiece coordinate origin. In this tool setting mode, there is no need to perform tool setting again after tool change, and the previously set coordinate system can continue to be used.

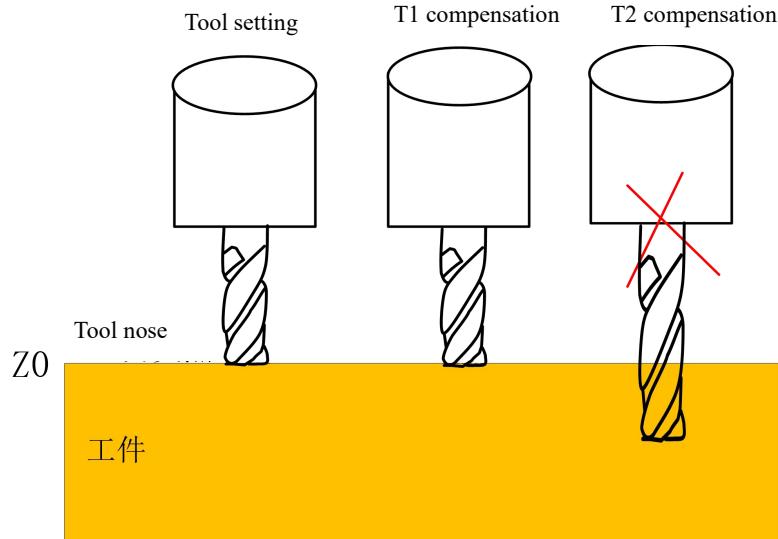
Note: During tool setting of spindle end face, if RTCP mode is not enabled, when Z axis moves to the area near workpiece origin, the interference between tool and workpiece may occur.



**Tool setting spindle end face**

#### Tool setting of tool nose

When the channel parameter 040403 is set to 1, tool setting of tool nose is enabled. In this mode, the tool nose is set as the workpiece coordinate origin after tool setting on Z is completed. During tool setting of tool nose, tool setting must be performed again after tool change, and new workpiece origin is set.



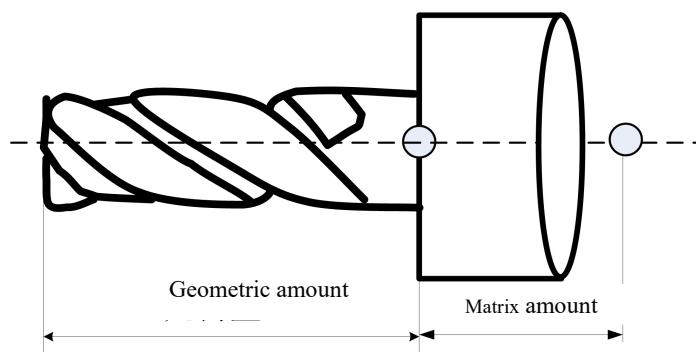
#### Tool setting of tool nose

##### 3) Tool length compensation amount

Tool length compensation includes geometric amount, wear amount and matrix amount: the geometric amount is the actual measured length of the tool, the wear amount is the length change of the tool after a long time cutting, and the matrix amount is the retract amount along the compensation direction. After the RTCP function is activated, its compensation is the sum of the three components.

Generally, users only need to set the geometric amount of the tool length compensation on Z. When using the bidirectional tool length compensation of 90° head, the tool length compensation on X or Y is required. Refer to Section 3.7 for this function.

$$\text{Tool length compensation} = \text{Geometric amount} + \text{wear} + \text{matrix}$$



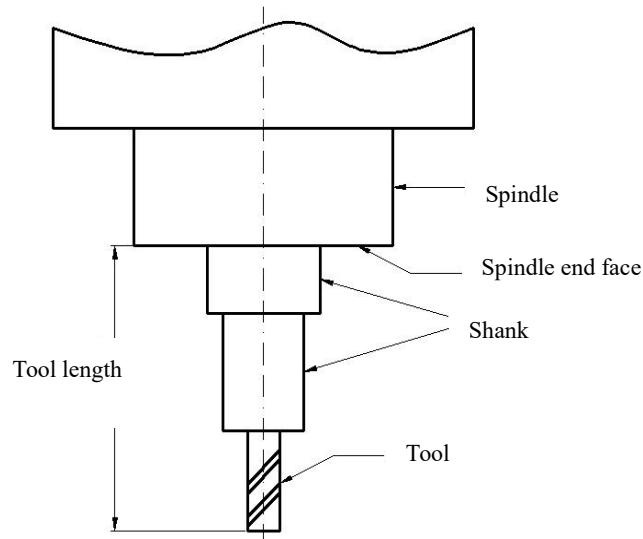
4) G43, G44 and G43.4, and G43.5 are the same group of G codes. Therefore, these compensations cannot be performed at the same time. And G49 can be used to cancel these G commands.

5) G43.4 H\_ and G43.5 H\_ are generally specified on a separate line, and also can be on the same line with X, Y, Z. When G43.4 H\_ and G43.5 H\_ are specified on a separate line for execution, machine will not move, and will perform the movement value after tool length compensation until there is Z movement amount in program.

6) The tool length compensation process for different machine tool structures is as follows:

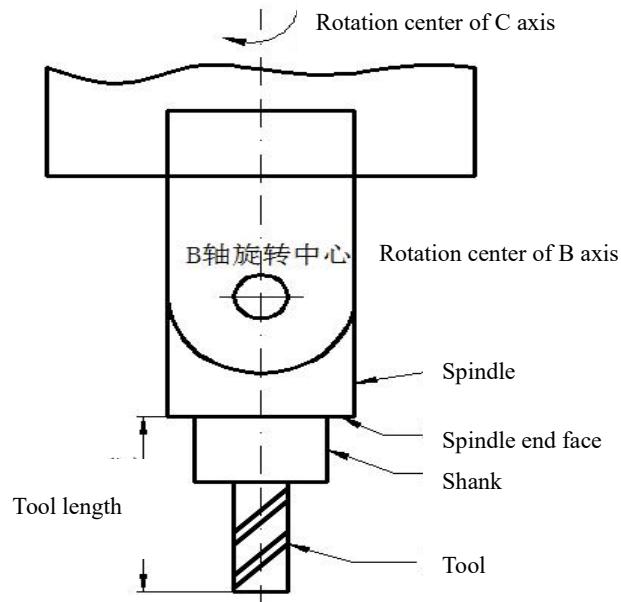
- a) For machine tool with dual swivel head AC or BC, perform tool length measurement first,

and the measurement of tool length is shown as below:



Enter the tool length value shown in the figure into the geometric length compensation Z in tool compensation table, and offset current Z coordinate of workpiece coordinate system downward by the tool length value. Use G43.4 for calling in program to complete tool length compensation and RTCP function.

b) For machine tool with dual swivel head BC, perform tool length measurement first, and the measurement of tool length is shown as below:



Enter the tool length value shown in the figure into the geometric length compensation Z in tool compensation table, and offset Z coordinate of currently used workpiece coordinate system downward by the tool length value. Use G43.4 to call in program to complete tool length compensation and RTCP function.

For the measurement of tool length shown in the figure, users can install an infrared probe on machine for the automatic measurement, and also can manually use level indicator or gauge

block for the measurement.



### Example

G43.5 H01	Enable RTCP, tool vector programming, call No. 1 tool length compensation
G01 X-27.748 Y-23.632 Z15.435 I-.324 J.324 K.889	To specify position of linear axis and tool axis direction (simultaneous 5-axis)
Y-4.983 Z11.296 I-.341 J.068 K.938	To specify position of linear axis and tool axis direction (simultaneous 5-axis)
.....	
G49	Cancel RTCP function



### Note

- (1) Both G43.4 and G54.5 are to enable RTCP function and tool length compensation;
- (2) G49 is to cancel RTCP function and tool length compensation. When there are G43.4, G43.5 commands and inclined surface machining commands, they must correspond to each other, otherwise if the coordinate value executed is incorrect, an "overtravel" alarm error will occur.
- (3) For simultaneous 5-axis machining, the direction of the tool axis changes continuously in fact.
- (4) When executing G43.4 or G43.5 program, if "feed hold" is selected or program is suddenly interrupted in RTCP state, users should press RESET or EMERGENCY STOP first, otherwise it is likely for the tool to interfere with the workpiece or the machine tool during manual operation

## 15.4 5-Axis Bevel Machining



### Function and Purpose

In five-axis machining, the machining of inclined surfaces is often encountered. In order to simplify the programming and processing of inclined surfaces, this function can translate and rotate the workpiece coordinate system in the conventional plane through the setting of a special coordinate system. That is, after origin is moved on the X, Y, and Z axes of the current workpiece coordinate system and rotation angle of rotary axis is defined, a new coordinate system and coordinate plane are established. This coordinate system is called the feature coordinate system (TCS). After the feature coordinate system is set, programming and processing can be performed in the usual way.

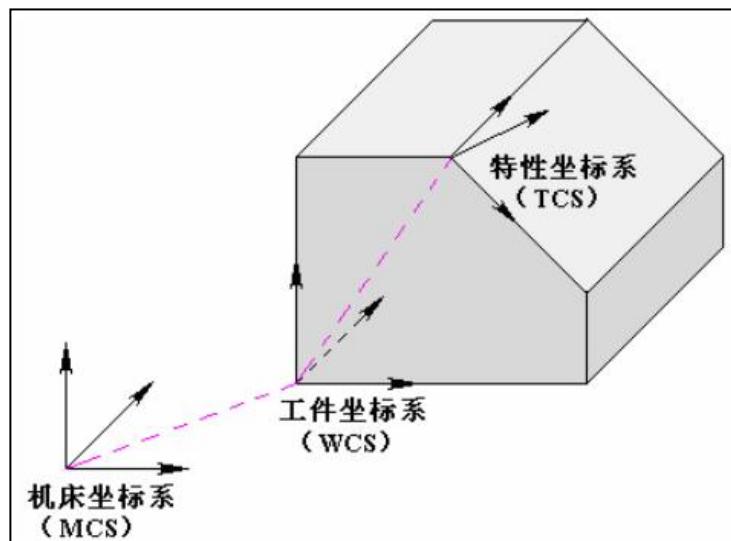
### Note

- Users should specify G43.4/G43.5 to enable feature coordinate system before use;
- After feature coordinate system is established, all programming coordinates are the coordinate values under feature coordinate system;
- After feature coordinate system is established, no rotating of rotary axis is allowed.

There are two ways to specify the tool coordinate system on workpiece. One is to enter tool coordinate system data on CNC interface and use G68.1 command to select a group of data for tool coordinate system establishment, and the system provides 20 tool coordinate system to use; **the other is to use G68.2 command to establish feature coordinate system via Euler angle**, and G69 is to cancel currently established feature coordinate system.

In addition, the tool axis direction needs to be controlled under the newly defined feature coordinate system, so that the tool axis swings to a direction parallel to the Z axis of the feature coordinate system (perpendicular to the inclined surface). If only the feature coordinate system (inclined surface) is specified in the program without tool axis direction control, the rotary axis will not generate angle rotation, or an alarm will be issued.

The following figure shows the relationship between machine coordinate system, workpiece coordinate system, and feature coordinate system.



MCS: Machine coordinate system

WCS: Workpiece coordinate system

TCS: Feature coordinate system

#### 15.4.1 3-point Feature Coordinate System Setting (G68.1)



##### Function and Purpose

The feature coordinate system data input is set in the CNC system. The feature coordinate system data is established based on specifying three points, and an inclined surface is formed by the three points.



### Command Format

G68.1 Q\_ ; Select a group of feature coordinate system

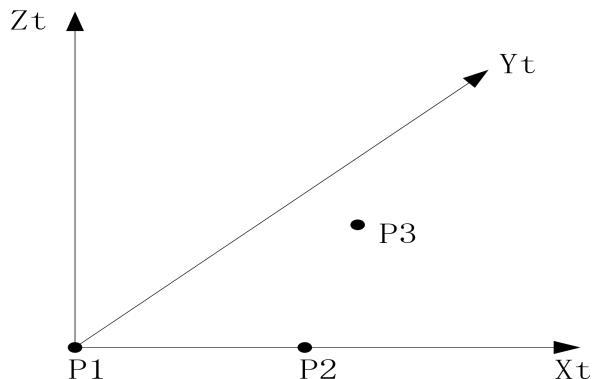
G69 ; Cancel feature coordinate system

Parameter	Meaning
Q	Select a group of feature coordinate system, ranging from 1 to 20



### Description

The establishment of feature coordinate system data is established by specifying the following three points. These three points establish an inclined surface, that is, the feature coordinate system, as shown in the figure:



P1: Zero of feature coordinate system;

P2: Any point in X positive direction of feature coordinate system (Z axis is the X axis of tool axis)

P3: Any point in quadrants 1 or 2 of the XY plane in feature coordinate system.

Characteristic coordinate system					
		X	Y	Z	
-Q1					
-Q2	P1	0.0000	0.0000	0.0000	
-Q3	P2	0.0000	0.0000	0.0000	
-Q4	P3	0.0000	0.0000	0.0000	
-Q5					
-Q6					
-Q7					
-Q8					
-Q9					
-Q10					

Descript

Characteristic coordinate system(TCS)  
P1: TCS zero  
P2: Any point in the positive X direction

\$1

- (1) X, Y, and Z values of points P1, P2, and P3 are coordinate values in workpiece coordinate system.
- (2) Point P1 is the zero of feature coordinate system, and the direction from P1 to P2 is the X positive direction.
- (3) P1, P2, and P3 are preset inputs in the CNC system. The above figure is the display interface of feature coordinate system of CNC system. The three points are input into any Q\_, and the system supports 20 groups of feature coordinate systems.
- (4) A group of Q feature coordinate system is selected with G68.1.

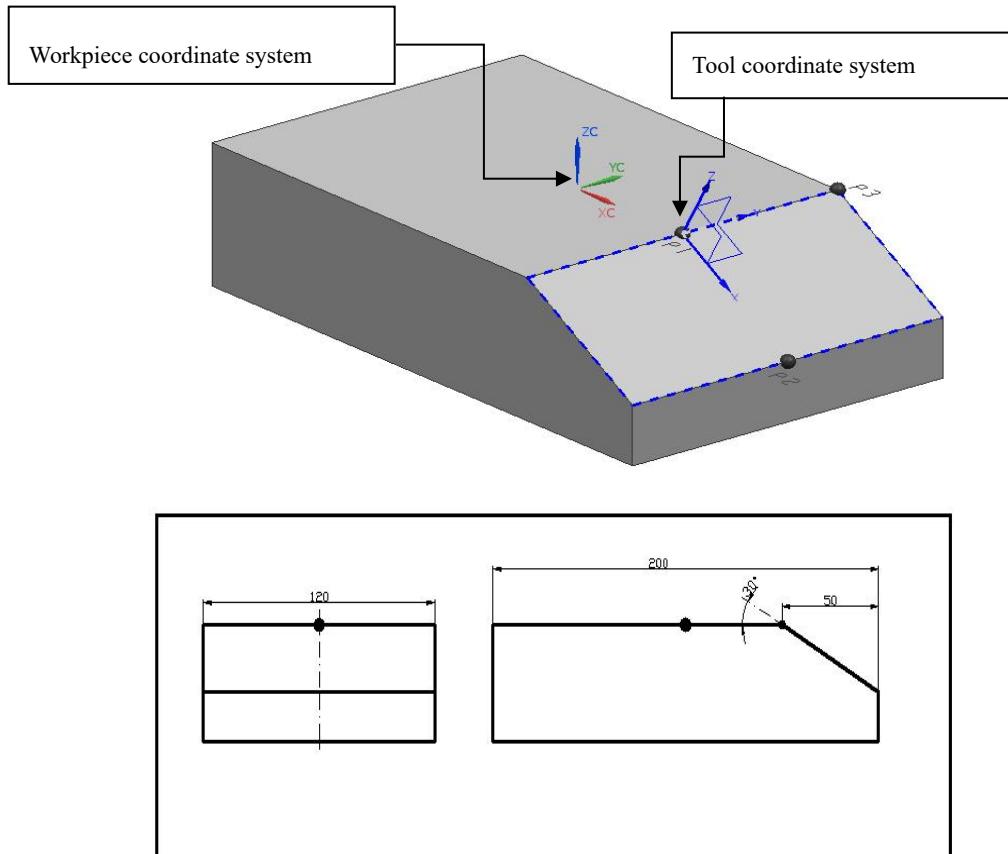


### Example

#### Example of point Q setting

For the designation of P1, P2, and P3 of Q, X, Y, and Z values of P1, P2, and P3 are the values in the workpiece coordinate system shown as below, that is, the set tool coordinate system.

Q	X	Y	Z
P1	50	0	0
P2	100	0	$-28.8675(50 \times \frac{\sqrt{3}}{3})$
P3	50	60	0



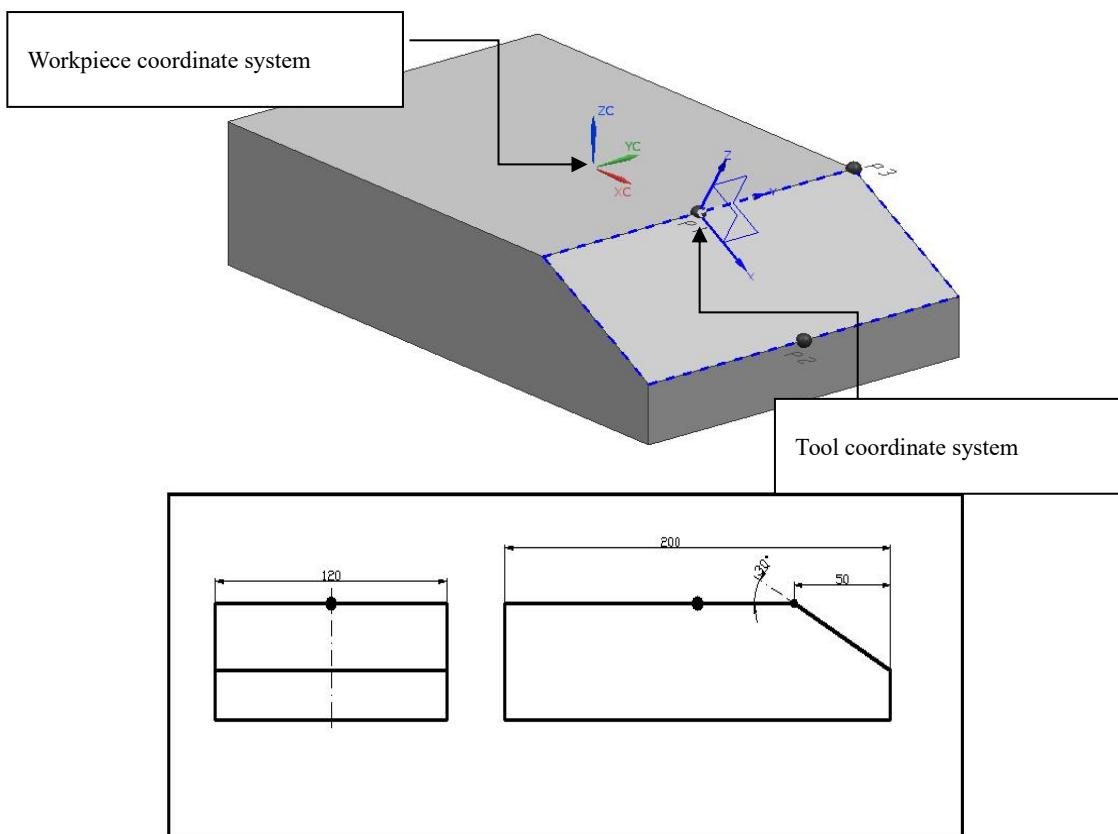
If the machine is with AC dual rotary table, then the running result is: C axis rotates  $90^\circ$  , A axis rotates  $30^\circ$  ; or C axis rotates  $270^\circ$  , and A axis rotates  $-30^\circ$  .

#### Example of NC program block format

G43.4 H1	Enable tool center control
G68.1 Q1	Enable tool coordinate system Q1
G53.1 (G53.2)	Tool axis swings to the direction parallel to the Z axis of the tool coordinate system
G01 X-20 Y-5 F500	In tool coordinate system, X axis moves to -20mm, and Y axis moves to -5mm.

#### Programming example

In 5-axis machine tool with AC dual rotary table, tool center path (milling) is along green contour line as shown in the figure, and the depth is -2mm.



Select a certain Q in the CNC system to set its three points P1, P2, P3, respectively

P1: 50, 0, 0

P2: 100, 0, -28.8675

P3: 50, 60, 0

As shown in the right figure, the blue dashed outline is the tool center path. The trait coordinate system is in the position as shown in the figure

%123

G54

G43.4 H1

G68.1 Q1

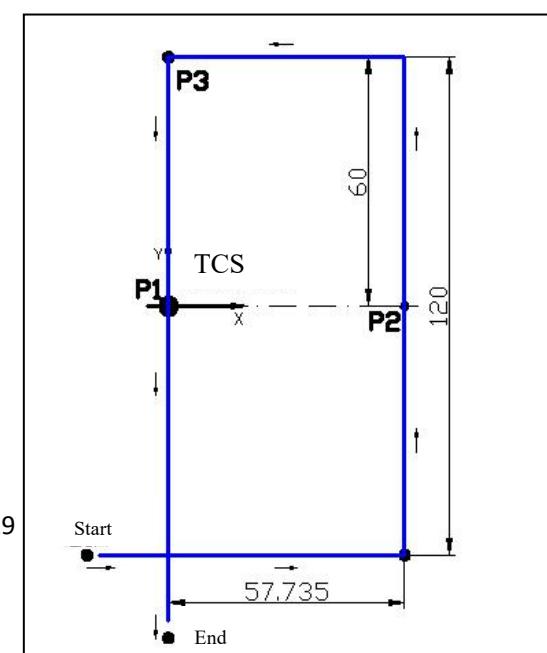
G53.1 (G53.2)

G01 X-20 Y-60 Z30 F2000 M03 S3000

Z3

Z-2 F300

X57.735 F1000



Y60

X0

### 15.4.2 Establish feature coordinate system via Euler angle



#### Function and Purpose

G68.2 is the tool coordinate system established by Euler angle. The Euler angle is the angle rotated around the coordinate system. The rotation combination mode of the CNC system is "Z→X→Z".



#### Command Format

G68.2 X\_Y\_Z\_I\_J\_K\_ ; Establish feature coordinate system

G69 ; Cancel feature coordinate system

Parameter	Meaning
X	X value in workpiece coordinate system, X-axis zero of feature coordinate system
Y	Y value in workpiece coordinate system, Y-axis zero of feature coordinate system
Z	Z value in workpiece coordinate system, Z-axis zero of feature coordinate system
I	Yaw angle, rotation angle of axis C around axis Z in workpiece coordinate system
J	Pitch angle, rotation angle of axis A around X axis changed by yaw angle in workpiece coordinate system
K	Roll angle, rotation angle of axis C around axis Z changed by pitch angle in workpiece coordinate system
P	Value of tool orientation. Can be 0, 1, 2. The default is 0. The first rotary axis which moves close to tool is defined as the feature axis. P=0, feature axis rotates on the shortest path P=1, feature axis rotates in positive direction P=2, feature axis rotates in negative direction



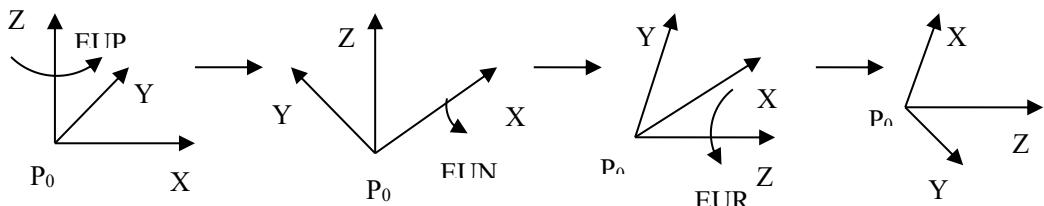
#### Description

G68.2 is the tool coordinate system established by Euler angle. Euler angle is the angle of rotation around coordinate axis in the coordinate system. The rotation combination mode of the CNC system is "Z→X→Z", which is defined as follows:

**Yaw angle (EULPR):** Rotation angle around Z axis

**Pitch angle (EULNU):** Angle of rotation around the X axis changed by yaw angle

**Roll angle (RULROT):** Angle of rotation around the Z axis changed by pitch angle



Based on the command G68.2 Xx Yy Zz Ia Jb Kc, The CNC executes the tool coordinate system as follows,

- (1) Xx Yy Zz specified with G68.2 command is the origin of trait coordinate system.
- (2) In the offset tool coordinate system, rotate an angle around Z axis
- (3) In the rotated coordinate system, rotate b degrees around X axis
- (4) In the rotated coordinate system, rotate c degrees around Z axis
- (5) The coordinate system at this time becomes the coordinate system established on the inclined plane, that is, the tool coordinate system.

For the above rotation angle, the counterclockwise direction of the rotation center axis is the positive direction



### Example

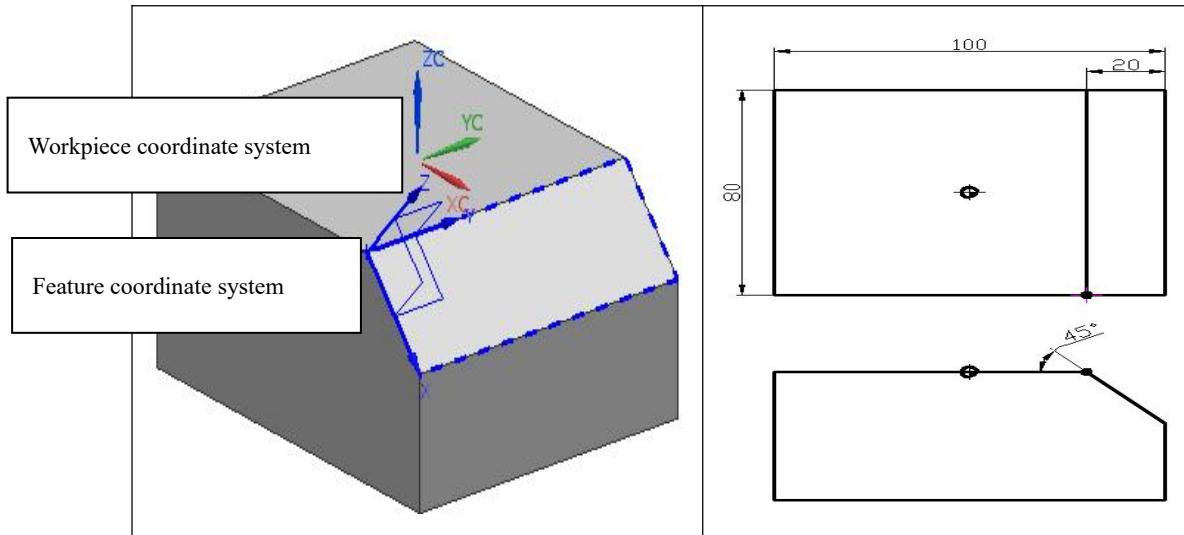
#### Example of NC program block format

G43.4 H1	Enable tool center control
G68.2 X30. Y-40. Z0.0 I90. J45. K-90.P1 (or P2/P0/default)	Establish tool coordinate system with Euler angle
G53.1 (G532)	Tool axis swings to the direction parallel with Z axis of tool coordinate system

G01 X20 Y-5 F500	In tool coordinate system, X axis moves to -20mm, and Y axis moves to -5mm
------------------	--

### Programming example

In 5-axis machine tool with AC dual rotary table, tool center path (milling) is along blue contour line as shown in the figure, and the depth is -2mm.



G68.2 block format: G68.2 X30. Y-40. Z0.0 I90. J45. K-90.

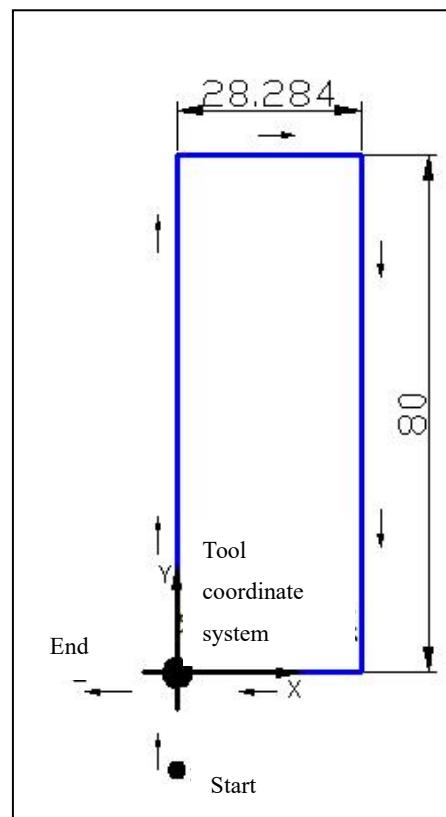
Take the dual rotary table (AC) as an example: firstly rotate around Z axis C90°, then rotate around X axis A45°, and finally rotate around Z axis C-90°.

Program: (as shown in right figure, the blue contour line is the path of tool center. The feature coordinate system is at the position as shown in the figure)

```

%0010
G54
G91 G28 Z0
G90 G00 Y-70. S3000 M03
G43.4 H1
G68.2 X30. Y-40. Z0.0 I90. J45. K-90.
G53.1 (G53.2)
G01 X0 Y-15. F2000.
Z50
Z3.
Z-2.0 F300.
Y80. F1000.
X28.284
Y0.0
X-15.
Z50. F2000.
G69
G49
G91 G28 Z0
G90 G00 A0 C0
M30

```



### 15.4.3 Establish feature coordinate system with space angle (G68.3)



#### Function and Purpose

By G68.3, the feature coordinate system is established by the rotation around X, Y, Z axes of current machine coordinate system.



#### Command Format

G68.3 X\_Y\_Z\_I\_J\_K\_P\_ ; Establish feature coordinate system

G69 ; Cancel feature coordinate system

Parameter	Meaning
X	X value in workpiece coordinate system, X-axis zero of feature coordinate system
Y	Y value in workpiece coordinate system, Y-axis zero of feature coordinate system
Z	Z value in workpiece coordinate system, Z-axis zero of feature coordinate system
I	Rotation angle of axis A around axis X in workpiece coordinate system
J	Rotation angle of axis B around Y axis in workpiece coordinate system
K	Rotation angle of axis C around axis Z in workpiece coordinate system
P	<p>Value of tool orientation. Can be 0, 1, 2. The default is 0. The first rotary axis which moves close to tool is defined as the feature axis.</p> <p>P=0, feature axis rotates on the shortest path</p> <p>P=1, feature axis rotates in positive direction</p> <p>P=2, feature axis rotates in negative direction</p>



### Description

With G68.3, the feature coordinate system is established by space angle, that is, rotation angle of corresponding machine coordinate system us in a sequential order. If IJK are defined, the first rotation is around C axis of machine coordinate system, the second rotation is around B axis of machine coordinate system, and the third rotation is around A axis of machine coordinate system.

- (1) In workpiece coordinate system, axis A rotation angle around X axis;
- (2) In workpiece coordinate system, axis B rotation angle around Y axis;
- (3) In workpiece coordinate system, axis C rotation angle around Z axis;



### Example

- (1) Example of NC program block

G43.4 H1

Enable tool center control

G68.3 X30. Y-40. Z0.0 I45. J0. K0.

Use spatial angle to establish feature coordinate

system

G53.1 (G53.2)

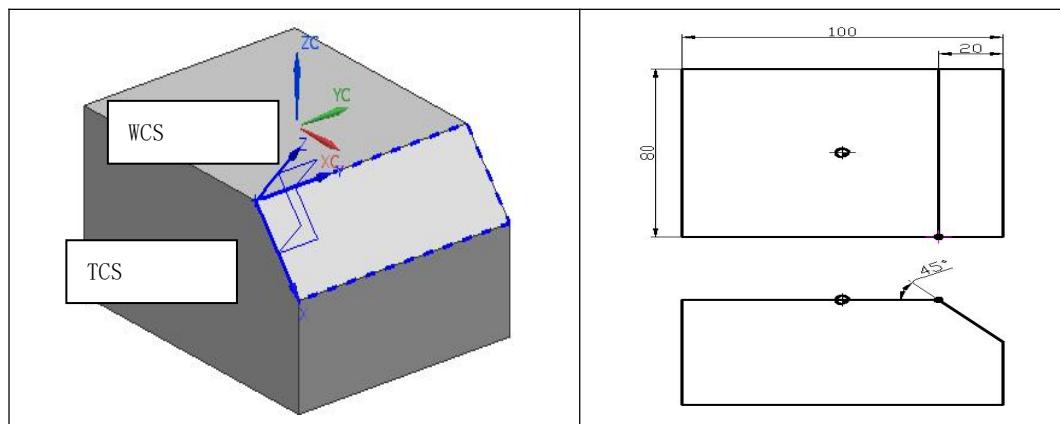
Tool axis swings to the direction parallel with Z axis of feature coordinate system

G01 X-20 Y-5 F500

In tool coordinate system, X moves to -20mm, Y moves to -5mm

Example for programming

In AC dual rotary table 5-axis machine, tool center moves along the contour line in green as shown in the figure below. The depth is -2mm.



%0010

G54

G91 G28 Z0

G90 G00 Y-70. S3000 M03

G43.4 H1

G68.3 X30. Y-40. Z0.0 I45. J0. K90. P1 (or P2 or P0 or unspecified)

G53.1 (G53.2)

G01 X0 Y-15. F2000.

Z50

Z3.

Z-2.0 F300.

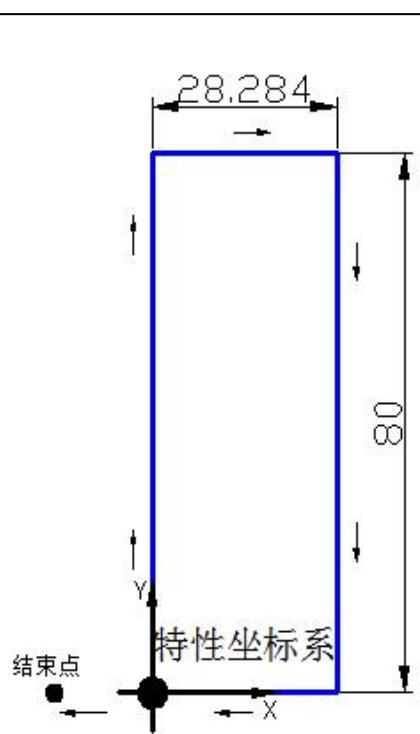
Y80. F1000.

X28.284

Y0.0

X-15.

235



Z50. F2000.

G69

End

TCS

G49

G91 G28 Z0

Start

G90 G00 A0 C0

M30

#### 15.4.4 Establish feature coordinate system with current attitude (G68.4)



##### Function and Purpose

With G68.4, tool coordinate system is established by recording current attitude of machine (current rotation angle). It is generally used in pentahedral machining.



##### Command Format

G68.4 X\_Y\_Z\_P\_ ; Establish feature coordinate system

G69 ; Cancel feature coordinate system

Parameter	Meaning
X	X in workpiece coordinate system is X zero in feature coordinate system
Y	X in workpiece coordinate system is Y zero in feature coordinate system
Z	X in workpiece coordinate system is Z zero in feature coordinate system
P	Value of tool orientation angle, can be 0, 1, 2. 0 is the default. The first rotary axis which moves close to tool is defined as the feature axis. P=0, feature axis rotates on the shortest path P=1, feature axis rotates in positive direction P=2, feature axis rotates in negative direction



## Description

With G68.4, tool coordinate system is established by recording current attitude of machine. A/B/C rotation angle of current machine coordinate system is saved, and new coordinate system is established with zero of workpiece coordinate system set by command.



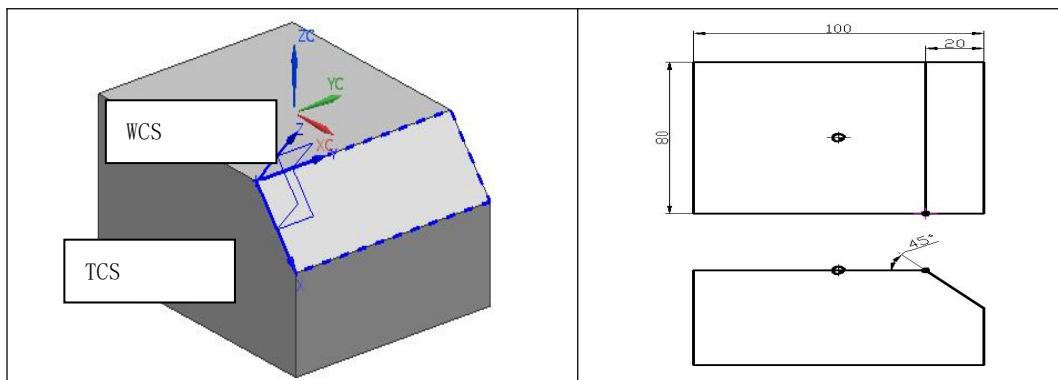
## Example

(1) Example for NC program block

```
G43.4 H1      ; Enable tool center control  
A45          ; Adjust rotary axis, and A, B, C are moved to the angle required  
G68.4 X30. Y-40. Z0.0 ; Establish tool coordinate system based on current attitude  
G53.1 (G53.2)    ; Tool axis swings to the direction parallel with Z of tool coordinate system  
G01 X-20 Y-5 F500 ;X moves to -20mm, Y moves to -5mm in tool coordinate system
```

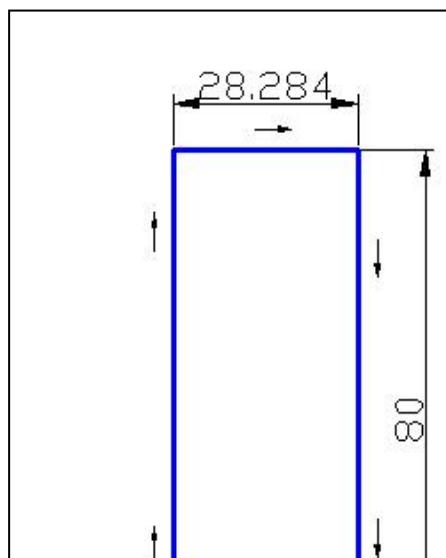
(2) Example of programming

In AC dual rotary table 5-axis machine, tool center path (milling) is along the contour line in green as shown in below figure, and the depth is -2mm.



%0010

```
G54 G91 G28 Z0  
G90 G00 Y-70. S3000 M03  
G43.4 H1  
A45 C90      ; Move to A45° and C90°  
G68.4 X30. Y-40. Z0.0  
G53.1 (G53.2)
```



G01 X0 Y-15. F2000.  
 Z50  
 Z3.  
 Z-2.0 F300.  
 Y80. F1000. End TCS  
 X28.284  
 Y0.0 Start  
 X-15.  
 Z50. F2000.  
 G69  
 G49  
 G91 G28 Z0  
 G90 G00 A0 C0  
 M30

#### 15.4.5 Tool axis direction control (G53.1/G53.2)



##### Function and Purpose

When processing an inclined surface, users firstly establish a tool coordinate system with G68.1/G68.2/G68.3/G68.4 command, and then use G43.4 (or G43.5) to define the direction of tool axis. There are two control modes for direction of the tool axis, which are set by G53.1 or G53.2 command. After special coordinate system setting, tool axis direction setting, and tool axis control mode setting, the tool axis can swing to the direction parallel to Z axis of tool coordinate system (that is, perpendicular to the XY plane of trait coordinate system).



##### Command Format

G53.1/G53.2 ; Tool axis direction control

Parameter	Meaning
G53.1	Tool axis direction control (type 1), only rotary axis moves
G53.2	Tool axis direction control (type 2), simultaneous motion of linear axis and rotary axis. Keep position of tool nose unchanged relative to workpiece

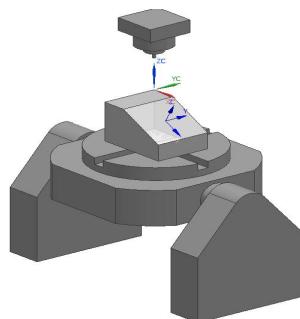
While G53.1 is used, it only rotates according to the angle of the specified tool coordinate system, and the two rotary axes moves simultaneously, but the linear axis does not move.

While G53.2 is used, it rotates according to the angle of the specified tool coordinate system, and three linear axes join the simultaneous motion, forming simultaneous 5-axis motion.



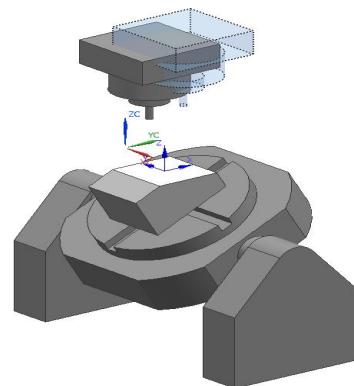
### Description

For the 5-axis machine tool with AC dual rotary table, difference between G53.1 and G53.2



In G53.1, A and C axes move, and X, Y, Z linear axes don't move.

In G53.2, X, Y, Z, A, C move at the same time, that is, tool nose follows fixed position. Make tool axis direction the Z axis of tool coordinate system



### Example

Example of NC block format

G43.4 H1

; Enable tool center tool control

G68.2 X30. Y-40. Z0.0 I90. J45. K-90. ; Record current posture and establish tool coordinate system

(G68.1/G68.3/G68.4)

G53.1 (G53.2) ; Tool axis swings to the direction parallel with Z of tool coordinate system

G01 X-20 Y-5 F500 ; In feature coordinate system, X moves to -20mm, Y moves to -5mm



### Note

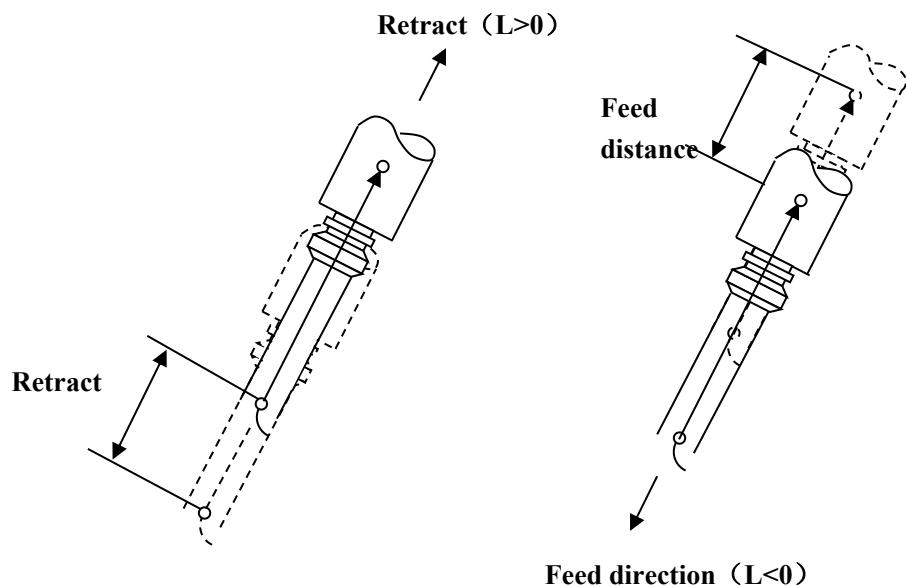
- (1) Tool axis direction control must be used with tool coordinate system, and placed on the line behind tool coordinate system, that is: command G68.1/G68.2 is to establish the tool coordinate system, and the following line must be behind G53.1 or G53.2, so that the tool axis is perpendicular to the inclined plane. It should be on a separated line.
- (2) For the machining of inclined surface, when the program executes the command line G68.1/G68.2, no movement occurs, but tool coordinate system is established. When the program executes G53.1/G53.2, the movement starts, and the moving speed inherits the F value. If there is only G00 in first program blocks, then execute parameter 040030 "channel default feedrate".
- (3) When executing G53.2, if machine tool position is not suitable, it is possible to alarm "axis overtravel" when executing the line of simultaneous motion, or it is possible for the tool to interfere with workpiece and worktable

### 15.4.6 5-axis Normal Retract (G53.3/53.4)



### Function and Purpose

Tool feeds or retracts along tool axis direction (normal direction of inclined surface). As shown in below figure.





## Command Format

G43.4 H1 ; Enable 5-axis programming

G53.3 L\_(G53.4) ; Normal tool retract

Parameter	Meaning
G53.3	Enable normal tool retract:  L > 0, tool moves away from tool nose. Tool retracts
L_	L < 0, tool moves to tool nose. Tool feeds
G53.4	Enable normal retract to software limit

- (1) When G53.5 is used, use L to specify tool retract distance and direction;
- (2) When G53.4 is used, the tool retract is not specified artificially. Tool retract action is maintained until the software limit of an axis is reached.



## Description

- (1) It is generally used for machine tools with swivel head structure. When the tool is near or in the workpiece, and this function is not enabled, if only moving Z axis upward, the tool may interfere with the workpiece. That can be avoided using the normal feed and retract.
- (2) Structure of machine must be set correctly in the parameter; otherwise, the normal feed and retract command cannot be executed properly.
- (3) G43.3H1 (RTCP function) must be specified in program; otherwise, the normal feed and retract command cannot be executed properly. Please find below,
- (4) System also supports manual tool retract. Manual tool retract is enabled by the defined point of panel key and TOOLSET module in PLC, and disabled by the defined point of panel key and TOOLCLR module in PLC.



## Example

Example for NC program block

%123

G54

G43.4 H1

G53.3 L-50 ; Tool feeds 50mm

P2000

G53.3 L50 ; Tool retracts 50mm

P2000

G53.4 ; Tool retracts to software limit

G49

M30



### Note

- 1) Structure of machine must be set correctly in the parameter; otherwise, the normal feed and retract command cannot be executed properly.
- 2) For the structure of dual rotary table, lift the tool vertically to Z (not normal), and should not use this command.
- 3) In 5-axis normal tool retract, enable G43.4H command in advance

## 15.5 5-axis 3D Radius Compensation (G41.4/G42.4)



### Function and Purpose

Five-axis 3D compensation function, also is five-axis side-milling tool radius compensation function, refers to the machining by the blade of rotary tool on the side, and the processing effect is independent of shape of tool head. At the time of programming of five-axis side-milling, users usually only program the surface contour path of the part, which is called user programming path, and the default tool radius is zero. In the actual side-milling, because the tool radius is not zero, the actual machining path does not coincide with the user programming path, which seriously affects the machining effect of parts. In order to eliminate the influence of tool radius, it is necessary to offset the tool center path to make the actual machining path coincide with the user programming path. At this point, users need to use the five-axis side-milling tool radius compensation function.



### Command Format

G43.4 H\_ ; Enable tool center control

G41.4 D\_ (G42.4 D\_) ; Enable 3D tool compensation

G40 ; Disable 3D tool compensation

G49 ; Disable tool center control

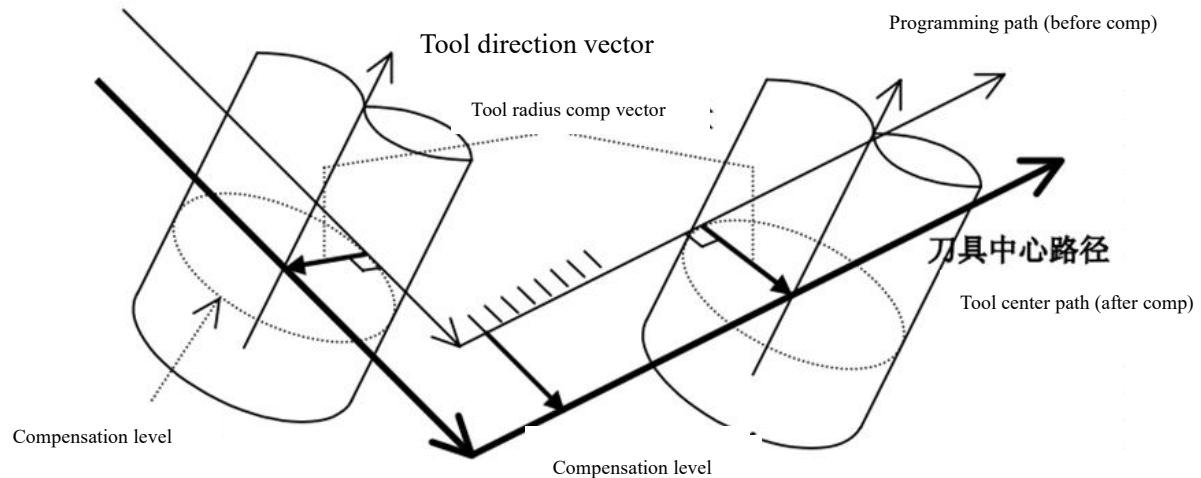
Parameter	Meaning
G41.4	3D tool compensation left (5-axis side-milling compensation left)

G42.4	3D tool compensation right (5-axis side-milling compensation right)
D	Number of tool compensation amount in tool compensaton



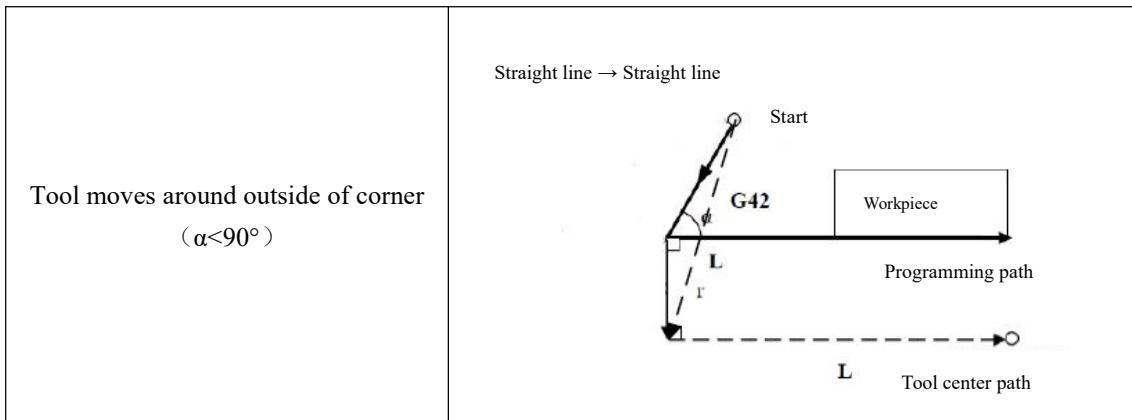
## Description

Tool radius compensation is performed on the plane perpendicular to the tool direction vector.



### Tool movement at the beginning of tool compensation,

Tool moves around inside of corner $(\alpha \geq 180^\circ)$	<p>Straight line → Straight line</p> <p>Workpiece</p> <p>Programming path</p> <p>Tool center path</p> <p>Start</p> <p>G42</p> <p><math>\alpha</math></p> <p><math>r</math></p> <p>L</p>
Tool moves around outside of corner $(90^\circ \leq \alpha < 180^\circ)$	<p>Straight line → Straight line</p> <p>Workpiece</p> <p>Programming path</p> <p>Tool center path</p> <p>Start</p> <p>G42</p> <p><math>\alpha</math></p> <p><math>r</math></p> <p>L</p>



### Tool moves at the time of tool compensation:

<p>Tool moves around inside of corner <math>(\alpha \geq 180^\circ)</math></p>	<p>Straight line → Straight line</p> <p>Workpiece</p> <p>Programming path</p> <p>Tool center path</p>
<p>Tool moves around outside of corner <math>(90^\circ \leq \alpha &lt; 180^\circ)</math></p>	<p>Straight line → Straight line</p> <p>Workpiece</p> <p>Programming path</p> <p>Tool center path</p>
<p>Tool moves around outside of corner <math>(\alpha &lt; 90^\circ)</math></p>	<p>Straight line → Straight line</p> <p>Workpiece</p> <p>Programming path</p> <p>Tool center path</p>

### Tool movement when tool compensation is canceled,

<p>In the cancellation block with a movement, tool moves around inside of corner (<math>\alpha \geq 180^\circ</math>)</p>	<p>Straight line → Straight line</p> <p>Workpiece</p> <p>Programming path</p> <p>Tool center path</p> <p><math>\alpha</math></p> <p><math>L</math></p> <p><math>S</math></p> <p><math>G40</math></p>
<p>In the cancellation block with a movement, tool moves around outside of corner (<math>90^\circ \leq \alpha &lt; 180^\circ</math>)</p>	<p>Straight line → Straight line</p> <p>Workpiece</p> <p>Programming path</p> <p>Tool center path</p> <p><math>\alpha</math></p> <p><math>L</math></p> <p><math>S</math></p> <p><math>G42</math></p> <p>交点</p>
<p>In the cancellation block with a movement, tool moves around outside of corner (<math>\alpha &lt; 90^\circ</math>)</p>	<p>Straight line → Straight line</p> <p>Workpiece</p> <p>Programming path</p> <p>Tool center path</p> <p><math>\alpha</math></p> <p><math>L</math></p> <p><math>L</math></p> <p><math>L</math></p> <p><math>L</math></p> <p><math>r</math></p> <p><math>r</math></p> <p><math>G4</math></p>



#### Example

G43.4 H01	Enable RTCP, call No. 1 tool length compensation in position mode
G01 A-2.984 C270.	Rotate the tool to a direction, can be default
G42.4 D1	Enable side-milling tool radius compensation right
X9.642 Y11.694 Z37.863 A-10.326	Movement after enabling tool compensation
.....	
G40 X10 Y10 Z10	Disable tool compensation
G49	Cancel RTCP, cancel tool length compensation



### Note

- 1) 5-axis side milling tool radius compensation must be enabled after enabling tool center control function, that is, users must use G43.4H\_ to enable tool center control RTCP first and then use G41.4/G42.4 D\_ to establish 5-axis side milling tool radius compensation.
- 2) Before G49, users must use G40 dual rotary structure to directly perform vertical tool lifting on Z (non-normal), but not use this command. Since the five-axis side milling tool radius compensation function is based on the tool center point control function, if G 43.4H\_ and G41.4/ G42.4D\_ are used to establish the five-axis side milling tool radius compensation, then G40 must be used to cancel the tool radius compensation before using G49 command to turn off the tool center control function otherwise the system will issue an alarm.
- 3) Only support linear segment programming. Considering the complexity and volatility of calculation in 3D radius compensation, the current five-axis side milling radius compensation function only supports linear segment programming, unable to support circular segment or other curve programming programs. If G02, G03 or other curve commands appear in the G code after the five-axis side milling radius compensation function is enabled, the system will generate an alarm or tool path error.
- 4) When using tool compensation in 5-axis inclined-surface machining (G68.1/G68.2/G68.3/G68.4), the tool compensation command is still G41 or G42. If using G41.4 and G42.4 at this time, system will issue an alarm.

## 15. 6 5-axis Constant Feed (G94.6)



### Function and Purpose

The function which controls speed of tool movement is referred to as feed function. In machining of 3-axis machine, the speed specified by G code (cutting feedrate) is the traverse speed of tool. However, in 5-axis machining, due to joining of rotary axis, it is necessary to enable constant linear b G94.6. The federate in the specified program is the cutting speed of tool movement.



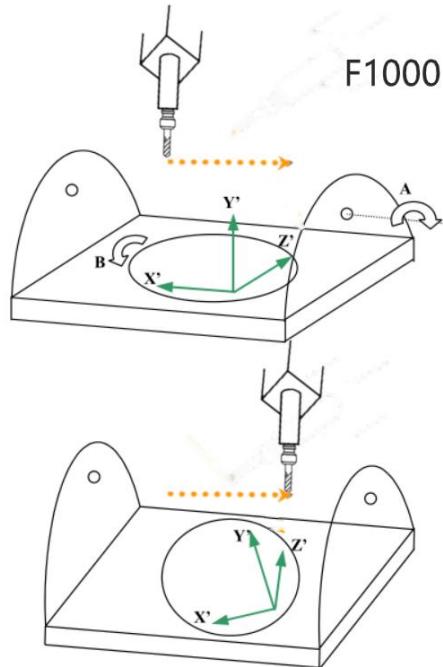
### Command Format

G94.6 ; Enable 5-axis constant feed function

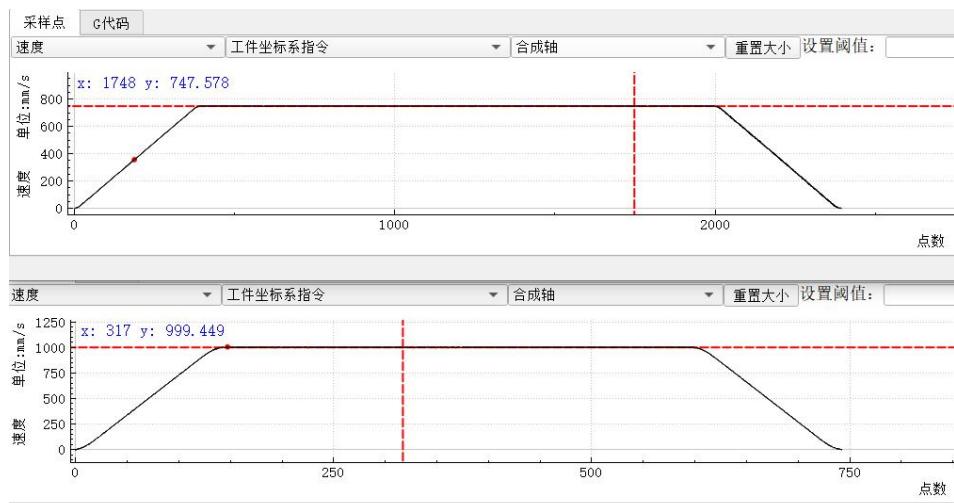
Parameter	Meaning
P	To set the coefficient of rotary axis travel to total travel. The larger the parameter, the lower the machining efficiency. 0.1-0.3 is recommended. If the parameter is not specified, the parameter 040392 is used by default.



## Description



After enabling constant feed and F1000 is the feedrate, then the traverse speed of tool is 1000mm/min. The movement or rotary axes AB cannot affect the traverse speed of tool. If constant speed is disabled, the traverse speed of tool will be smaller than 1000mm/min due to joining of rotary axis.



In constant feed, the feedrate F is specified as the speed of XYZ. If translation of rotary axis in specified line is larger than that of feed axis, then it will cause excessively large speed.



## Example

G01 G90 G54

G43.4 H1	Enable RTCP, and call No. 1 tool length compensation in position mode
G94.6	Enable 5-axis constant feed
G01 X10 A10 B10 F1000	Constant feed motion
G49	Disable RTCP
M30	Program ends



### Note

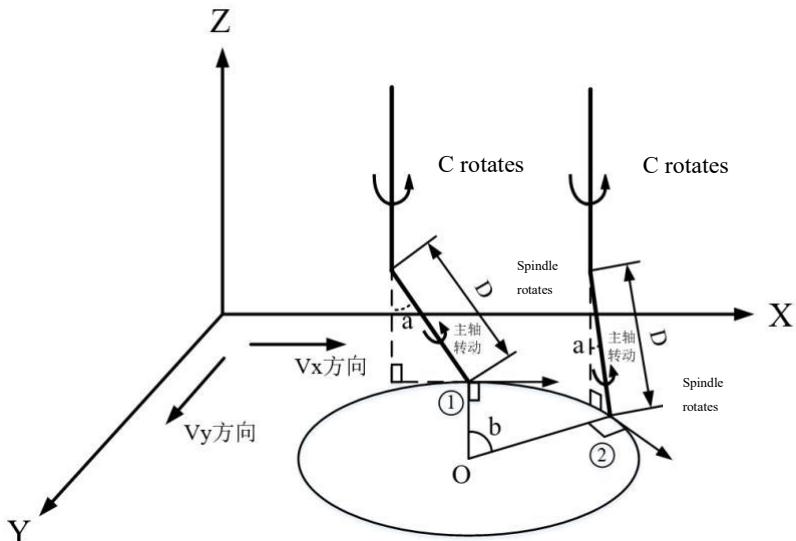
- (1) Must use G43.4 H\_ before G94.6. 5-axis constant feed function must be used after enabling tool center point control function. G43.4H\_ must be used in the program to enable tool center point control RTCP function before using G94.6 to enable it.
- (2) Set the channel parameter 040390 to 2 when users need to use 5-axis constant feed function.
- (3) If displacement of rotary axis is larger than that of feed axis in a specified line, it may cause the large acceleration.
- (4) Generally, the channel parameter 040391 5-axis constant feed acceleration limit coefficient is set to 0.3 by default

## 15.7 Tangential Following (G156/G157)



### Function and Purpose

Based on the tangent of the path determined by leader axis, follower axis runs. And thus, a tool can be adjusted to be parallel to the contour. With the angle programmed in TANGON command, the tool can be positioned relative to the tangent line.



### Command Format

**G156 (tangon)** P\_ ; Enable tangential following

**G157 (tangoff)** P\_ ; Cancel tangential following

Parameter	Meaning
P	0: A axis; 1: B axis; 2: C axis



### Description

Axis parameter [134]: When 1 is set, rotary axis is positioned to the target point at the transition of program, and then leader axis moves. 1 is recommended.

Axis parameter [135]: 2: C axis follows XY tangent line.

Axis parameter [136]: Angle when c axis points to X positive direction. The tangential angle of return is in X positive direction. When the parameter is set, C coordinates and X offset in positive direction are obtained.

Axis parameter [137]: Distance from C axis center to friction head. It is used form calculation offset of X\Y. Generally, there is no angle for spindle and C axis. The parameter is set to 0.

Axis parameter [101]: Logical axis No. of leader axis.

Axis parameter [102]: Logical axis No. of leader axis.



### Example

G01 G90 X-56 Y0 F1000	
C89.9734	
G156 P2	Enable tangential following
N50 G01 X-61.276 Y1.711	
N60G02X-65.031Y7.702I1.118J4.873	
N80G02X-60.392Y21.058I63.452J-14.556	
N90G02X-53.731Y23.431I4.517J-2.144	
N100G01X-51.365Y22.308	
G157 P2	Cancel tangential following
M30	



### Note

- 1) If the specified tangential following axis is not the rotary axis, a syntax error will be issued.

- 2) If the specified leader axes 1 and are not configured, a syntax error will be issued.
- 3) The system will check the programming speed according to the highest processing speed of rotary axis to prevent overspeed.
- 4) When the parameter “leader axis wait” is set to 1, it is unnecessary to locate the rotary axis to tangential position of the first line of contour before enabling cutting following, and system adjusts rotary axis position automatically to make it move along contour path. When 0 is set, rotary axis is located to tangential position of the first line of contour before enabling cutting following.
- 5) How to obtain tangential angle of contour:

G115 L5 P1 Q10

L: Read one-line ahead. In G01/G02/G03, when X/Y axis moves, the tangential angle is calculated and saved into #1319 variable.

P: The program level of the program to be read ahead. 0: Current level; 1: Last level; 2: The level before the last level.

Q: The next Q lines of current line.

- 6) Rotary axis is positioned to the tangential angle: G01 C[#1319]

## 15.8 RTCP Parameter Switching (G145)



### Function and Purpose

Four groups of RTCP are supported. RTCP parameters are switched by G145 q command.



### Command Format

G145 Q\_ ; RTCP parameter switching

Parameter	Meaning
Q	The group of RTCP to be selected, ranging from 1 to 4



### Description

When multiple spindles heads exist on the machine and each spindle head has different structure parameters, then the RTCP parameter calling function can be used to meet the requirements. Users only call the RTCP of the spindle head at the time of machining of corresponding spindle.

As shown in the figure below, system supports 4 groups of RTCP parameter at the most, corresponding to 040400 to 040587.

**JOG**

MACH SET PROG DGN MAINT MDI

	Parm	Name	Value	Activate
- NC	040485	(2) Rotarytable RA2 offset vec X	0.0000	Reset
- Machine user	040486	(2) Rotarytable RA2 offset vec Y	0.0000	Reset
+ Channel	040487	(2) Rotarytable RA2 offset vec Z	0.0000	Reset
+ Axis	040500	(3) Initial tool direction X	0.0000	Reset
+ Error comp	040501	(3) Initial tool direction Y	0.0000	Reset
+ Device interface	040502	(3) Initial tool direction Z	0.0000	Reset
Data table	040503	(3) RTCP tool setting mode	0	Reset
	040504	(3) W axis comp	0	Reset
	040507	(3) Pole angle range	0.0000	Reset
	040508	(3) Swivel head indexing	0	Reset

Group 3

MAX: 21474.0000

DEF: 0.0000

MIN: -21474.0000

\$1

 Parameter setting Save Enter password Factory Find Parm check Auto offset 

 Example

G01 G90 G54	
G43.4 H1	Enable RTCP
G145 Q2	Call group 2 of RTCP parameters
G01 X11 Y11 Z10 A10 C10	
G01 X13 Y11 Z10 A10 C40	
G49	



#### Note

- 1) Users can select the RTCP parameter only after the RTCP function is enabled.
- 2) G145 Q once specifies the RTCP parameter, it will be a modal value unless it is changed next time using G145 Q.

## 15.9 5-axis Machine Coordinate System Programming



#### Function and Purpose

In 5-axis machining, if G53 is used directly to move to target position, system will issue an alarm. After enabling 5-axis machine coordinate system programming, just use G53 to execute to the specified target position by the machine coordinate system programming.



## Command Format

G115 L\_ P\_

G43.4 H\_

G53 X\_ Y\_ Z\_

Parameter	Meaning
X, Y, Z	Target position (absolute position) in machine coordinate system



## Description

- 1) Before using G53 in 5-axis mode, users need to use G115 L16 P1 to enable 5-axis machine coordinate system programming; otherwise, system will issue an alarm if G53 is executed in 5-axis mode.
- 2) 5-axis machine coordinate system programming can be disabled by G115 L16 P0 or restarting system.
- 3) Refer to section 10.2 for other details.



## Example

G01 G90 G54	
G115 L16 P1	Enable 5-axis machine coordinate system programming
G43.4 H1	Enable 5-axis RTCP
G53 X30 Y30 F500	Move to X30Y30 in machine coordinate system
G49	Disable RTCP
G115 L16 P0	Disable 5-axis machine coordinate system programming
M30	Program ends

## 16 Extended Canned Cycle (M)

### 16.1 Extended Canned Cycle (M)



#### Function and Purpose

The CNC controller can use extended fixed cycles to process some hole parts with simple contour, simplifying programming. The extended canned cycles include: engraving canned cycles, drilling extended cycles, circular pocket cycles, circumferential groove milling cycles, rectangular pocket cycles, end face milling cycles, rectangular boss cycles, circular boss cycles, etc.

### 16.2 Text Engraving Canned Cycle (G1025)



#### Function and Purpose

In actual processing, after the workpiece is processed, relevant information should be engraved on the surface of the workpiece, including the workpiece model, machine number, processing time and date, etc.

The engraving of the specified character information can be realized at the specified position with this engraving cycle, and the character size and direction can be adjusted.



#### Command Format

G1025C\_F\_E\_H\_V\_B\_Q\_U\_W\_A\_R\_O\_S\_P="";

Parameter	Meaning
C	The tool lifting height relative to the engraving level. If this parameter is not defined, it is 10 by default. It is generally a positive value.
F	The composite feedrate when engraving. If this parameter is not defined, it defaults to 1000
X_Y_	The absolute position of center point of the first character in XY direction in absolute programming (G90) The distance from center point of the first character to the starting point in XY direction in incremental programming (G91)
B	The absolute position of B point on the engraving level in absolute programming (G90) The distance from B point on the engraving level to the initial level in Z direction in incremental programming (G91)
Q	The feed depth relative to the engraving level. It is generally a positive value.
U	The engraved character size (the font height). If this parameter is not defined, the default is 5(mm). It is generally a positive value.

W	The distance between two characters. If this parameter is not defined, the default is 0.8 (mm). It ranges from 0.4 to 2.0. If this range is exceeded, an alarm will be issued.
A	Character rotation angle. 1: 0°; 2: 90°; 3: 180°; 4: 270°. It cannot be used simultaneously with R. If both A and R are not defined, the rotation angle defaults to 0°.
R	The rotation angle of the character. Range: -360°≤setting value≤360°. It cannot be used at the same time with A. If A and R are not defined, the rotation angle defaults to 0°.
O	Date and time type. 1: Month day-hour minute (Example 1214-1328); 2: Month day (Example 1215) 3: Year month day (Example 151214); 4: Year month day-hour minute (Example 151214-1328). If this parameter is not defined, the default is 1, that is, month day-hour minute.
P="“”	To specify the engraving characters in the quotation marks, up to 60 characters. The currently specified characters are 0 to 9, A to Z, -, ., # (# indicates time and date). For example, P="AB-123" means the engravings of AB-123; P="N-#-18" means the engravings of N-1214-1328-18.
S	Spindle speed. If it is not defined, the modal speed value is valid.



## Description

### ● Actions

After the positioning on X and Y axes, the tool moves to the center point coordinates (coordinates HV) of the first character at the G00 speed; meanwhile, the tool positions to the initial level in rapid traverse;

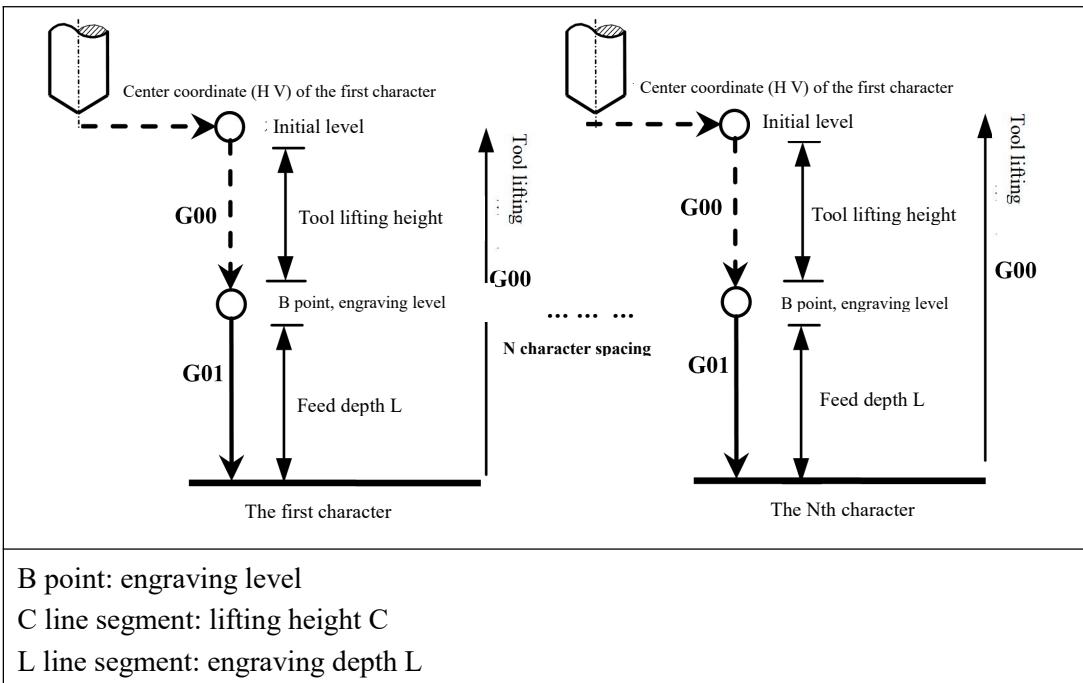
Move down (C height) on Z axis in rapid traverse, and position to the engraving level B;

Feed (L depth) with G01 for engraving corresponding characters;

After engraving, return to the initial level on Z axis in rapid traverse;

Move one character spacing, and perform the engraving of the second character according to the above actions until all the specified characters have been engraved;

### ● Actions



### ● Tool length compensation

When the tool length compensation (G43, G44, G49) is specified in engraving canned cycle, this compensation should be used at the time of positioning to B point.

### ● Spindle rotation

Use the auxiliary function (M code) to rotate spindle before G1025 is specified, and specify the spindle speed cyclically. If it is not defined, the modal speed value is valid.

### ● Command use

#### Engraving cycle program import

For the existing system needing to be upgraded to V1.25.00 and above, export USERDEF.CYC user-defined canned cycle through data management, copy the provided G1025 cycle program to USERDEF.CYC, and then reload USERDEF.CYC to the system. Then it can be used after power off and restart.

#### Alarms for parameters of engraving cycle

All parameters in the engraving cycle are non-modal, and each parameter needs to be defined when it is called multiple times.

#### The parameter value that must be defined

The center position of the first character X and Y must be defined, the engraving level B must be defined, and the engraving depth Q must be defined:

If the X parameter value is not defined, the alarm will prompt "Engraving cycle-X axis positioning coordinate X is not set"

If the Y parameter value is not defined, the alarm will prompt "Engraving cycle-Y axis positioning coordinate Y is not set".

If the value of B parameter is not defined, the alarm will prompt "Engraving cycle- engraving level B is not defined".

If the Q parameter value is not defined, the alarm will prompt "Engraving cycle-engraving depth Q is not defined".

### **Default W value**

If the character spacing W is defined, the default spacing between characters is 0.8mm, and the value of W ranges from 0.4 to 2.0. If the input number is not within the range, the alarm will prompt "Engraving cycle-character spacing exceeds the set range" .

### **A value**

Rotation angle A needs to be set to 1, 2, 3, 4. If it is set to other values, an alarm will prompt "Engraving cycle-Rotation angle setting error".

Note: Rotation angle parameters A and M cannot be set at the same time. If A and M are set at the same time, an alarm will be shown "Engraving cycle-A and M cannot be used at the same time to set the rotation angle"

### **M value**

The value of any rotation angle setting parameter M must be less than 360 and greater than -360. If it is set to a value larger than 360 or less than -360, an alarm will be displayed "Engraving cycle-rotation angle setting error".

Note: Rotation angle parameters A and M cannot be set at the same time. If A and M are set at the same time, an alarm will be shown "Engraving cycle-A and M cannot be used at the same time to set the rotation angle"

### **O value**

The date and time type setting parameter O needs to be set to 1, 2, 3, and 4, and if it is set to other values, an alarm will be displayed "Engraving cycle-date and time type O setting error".

### **P value**

The engraving characters in P=" " can only be the provided characters, including 0 to 9, A to Z, -, # (# indicates the time and date). If other characters are specified, such as \*, an alarm will be displayed "Engraving cycle-the specified characters are not recognized".



### Example

%1234

G54G01X20Y20

G0Z30

G1025 A1 C10 F200 E800 H25.0 V50.0 B2.0 Q3.0 U2 O1 S1000 P="AD-#-28"

G90G0Z30

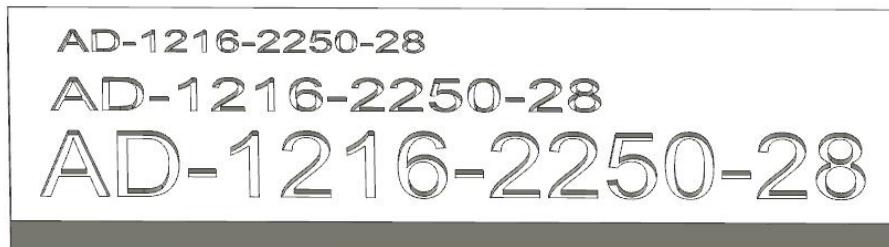
G1025 A1 C10 F200 E800 H25.0 V45.0 B2.0 Q3.0 U5 S1000 P="AD-#-28"

G90G0Z30

G1025 A1 C10 F200 E800 H25.0 V35.0 B2.0 Q3.0 U10 S1000 P="AD-#-28"

M30

The interpolation trajectory is shown in the figure below,



### Example 2

%1234

G54G01X20Y20

G0Z30

G1025 A1 C10 F800 E800 H25.0 V45.0 B2.0 Q3.0 U5 O1 S1000 P="AD-#-28"

G90G0Z30

G1025 A2 C10 F800 E800 H20.0 V55.0 B2.0 Q3.0 U5 O1S1000 P="AD-#-28"

G90G0Z30

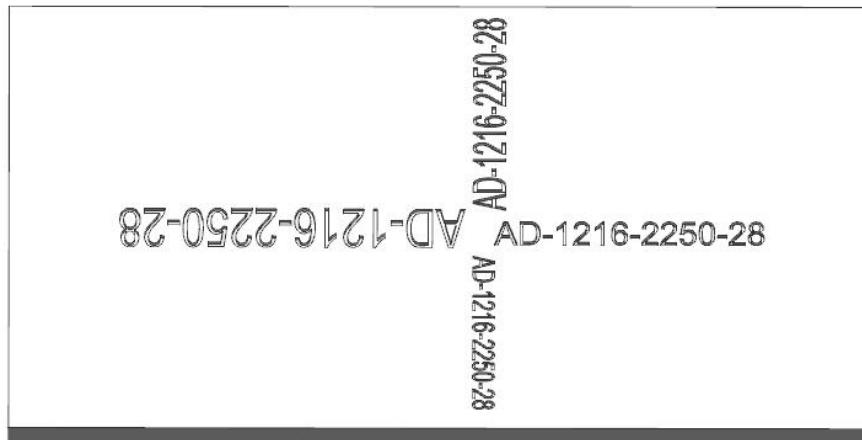
G1025 A3 C10 F800 E800 H15.0 V45.0 B2.0 Q3.0 U10 O1S1000 P="AD-#-28"

G90G0Z30

G1025 A4 C10 F800 E800 H20.0 V35.0 B2.0 Q3.0 U3 O1 S1000 P="AD-#-28"

M30

The interpolation trajectory is shown in the figure below,



### Note

The engraving cycle can realize the engraving of characters 0 to 9, A to Z, -, . , and time and date (# indicates time and date). The character font format is Arial, with the default font height 5mm and the character width 3.09mm (character height\*0.618). The default character spacing is 0.4mm, and the total number of characters for a single engraving does not exceed 60.

## 16.3 Drilling Cycle

### 16.3.1 Circumferential Hole Drilling Cycle (G70)



#### Function and Purpose

On the circle centered on the coordinate (X, Y) with radius I, start from the point formed by the X axis and the angle J, divide the circle into N equal parts, and perform the drilling of N holes. Based on the values of Q and K, the G81 or G83 standard canned cycle is executed for the drilling of each hole. The position movement between holes is carried out in G00 mode.

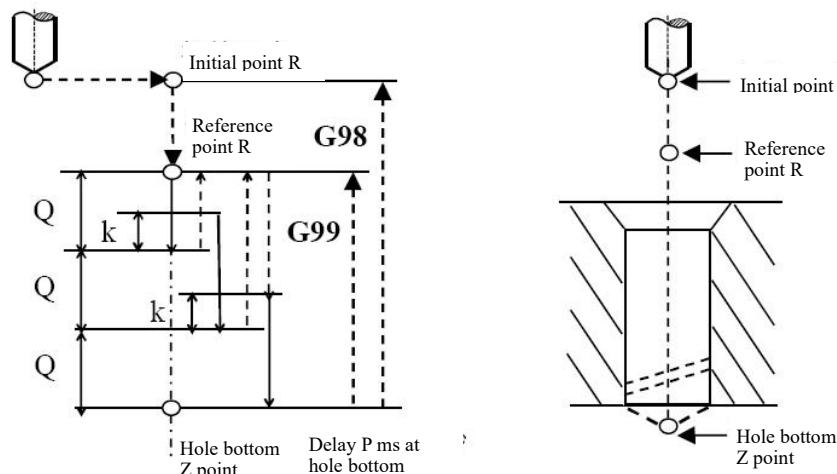
G70 is a modal command, and the following command word is non-modal.



### Command Format

(G98/ G99) G70 X\_ Y\_ Z\_ R\_ I\_ J\_ N\_ [Q\_K\_P\_] F\_ L\_;

Parameter	Meaning
X, Y	Coordinates of circle center
Z	Coordinates of hole bottom
R	Coordinates of R point in absolute programming; distance from initial point B to R point in incremental programming.
I	Radius of circle
J	Angle of initial drilling point, the positive value indicates the counterclockwise direction
N	Number of holes, the positive value indicates the drilling in counterclockwise direction, and the negative value indicates the drilling in clockwise direction;
Q	Feed depth, directed distance
K	Each time the tool is retracted and fed again, the distance from the last machined surface when the rapid traverse feed is converted to the cutting feed
P	Dwell time at hole bottom, unit: ms
F	Cutting feedrate
L	Number of cycles (can be omitted when L=1)





## Description

### ● Action

- (1) After positioning along X axis and Y axis with drilling angle, the tool quickly moves to point B above the hole center;
- (2) Move close to the workpiece surface in rapid traverse, reach to R point;
- (3) Drilling downward at F speed;
- (4) Reach to hole bottom Z point;
- (5) Dwell P ms at hole bottom (spindle keeps rotating);
- (6) Retract upward to R point (G99) or B point (G98) in rapid traverse;
- (7) Spindle keeps rotating;
- (8) Program end.

### ● Spindle rotation

Rotate spindle with auxiliary function (M code) before using G70.

When continuously performing drilling of a short distance from the hole position and the initial level to the R point level, the spindle may not be able to rotate normally before entering the hole cutting. In this case, do not specify the number of repetitions L, and user needs to insert the GO4-based pause before each drilling action to take some time out.

### ● Tool length compensation

When the tool length compensation (G43, G44, G49) is specified in drilling canned cycle, this compensation should be used at the time of positioning to R point.

### ● Auxiliary function

When G70 command and M code are specified in the same block, the M code is executed during the initial positioning. When the number of repetitions L is specified, the above actions will be executed only for the first time, and M codes will not be executed after the second time.



## Example

Example 1: To drill four holes in the four axis directions in the XY plane. This cycle is executed twice and the G81 drilling is executed at the bottom of the hole.

G98 G70 X10 Y10 Z0 R20 I10 J0 N4 F200 L2

Example 2: To drill four holes at 45 degrees in the XY plane. This cycle is executed once and the G81 drilling is executed at the bottom of the hole.

G99 G70 X10 Y10 Z10 R50 I10 J45 N-4 F200

Example 3: To drill four holes at -45 degrees in the XY plane. This cycle is executed once and the G81 drilling is executed at the bottom of the hole.

G99 G70 X10 Y10 Z10 R50 I10 J-45 N-4 F200

Example 4: To drill four holes at -45 degrees in the XY plane. This cycle is executed once, the G81 drilling is executed at the bottom of the hole, and the Q value is invalid.

G99 G70 X10 Y10 Z10 R50 I10 J-45 N-4 Q-10 F200

Example 5: To drill four holes at -45 degrees in the XY plane. This cycle is executed once, and the G81 drilling is executed at the bottom of the hole.

G99 G70 X10 Y10 Z10 R50 I10 J-45 N-4 Q0 F200

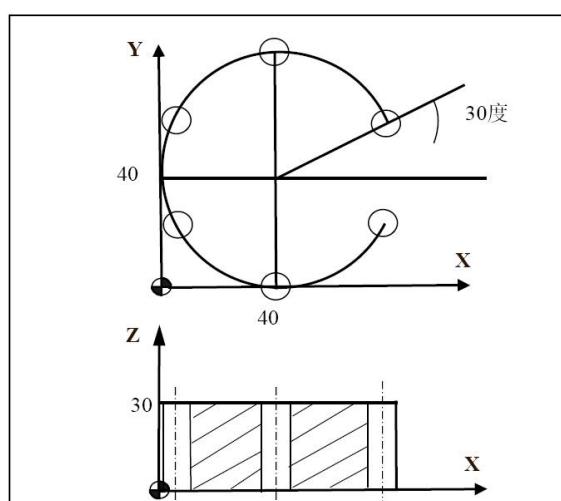
G99 G70 X10 Y10 Z10 R50 I10 J-45 N-4 K0 F200

G99 G70 X10 Y10 Z10 R50 I10 J-45 N-4 Q0 K0 F200

Example 6: To drill four holes at -45 degrees in the XY plane. This cycle is executed once, and the G83 drilling is executed.

G99 G70 X10 Y10 Z10 R50 I10 J-45 N-4 Q-10 K5 F200

For example, use a  $\Phi 10$  drill to process the hole shown in the figure:



```
N10 G55 G00 X0 Y0 Z80  
N20 G98G70G90X40Y40R35Z0I40J30N6P2000-10K5F100  
N30 G90 G00 X0 Y0 Z80  
N40 M30
```



#### Note

- (1) Cancel canned cycle before switching drilling axis.
- (2) The drilling axis must be Z axis in G17 plane.
- (3) If the moving position is zero on Z, this command will not be executed.
- (4) Z point must be higher than R level, otherwise the alarm will be issued.
- (5) I cannot be omitted; otherwise the alarm will be issued.
- (6) G70 data is saved as the modal data, and the same data can be omitted.
- (7) Use the corresponding M code to rotate spindle before using G70.
- (8) Drilling is not performed in the blocks that not include X, Y, Z, R or any other additional axis.
- (9) When Q is larger than zero or K is smaller than zero, the system reports errors; when Q or K is zero or is not defined, the G81 center drilling cycle is execute for each hole, and P is invalid; when values of Q and K are correct, the G83 deep hole drilling cycle is executed fro each hole, and P is valid.
- (10) The tool position offset is omitted in the drilling canned cycle mode.
- (11) Do not specify the G code (G00-G03) of group 01 in the G70 block; otherwise, G70 will be cancelled.
- (12) When the angle is defaulted, the angel value =360/n.

### 16.3.2 Holes on Arc (G71)



#### Function and Purpose

On the arc centered by the coordinates (X, Y) with radius I, start from the point formed by the X axis and the angle J, and drill N holes at an interval of O angle. The G81 or G83 standard canned cycle is executed based on the Q and K values for each hole. The movement of the positions between holes is carried out in G00 mode. G71 is a modal command, and the following command word is non-modal.



#### Command Format

```
(G98/G99) G71 X_ Y_ Z_ R_ I_ J_ N_ O_ [Q_K_P_] F_ L_;
```

Parameter	Meaning
Z	Coordinates of hole bottom
R	Coordinates of R point in absolute programming; distance from initial point B to R point in incremental programming
X, Y	Coordinates of acr center
I	Radius
J	Angle of initial drilling point, the positive value indicates the counterclockwise direction
O	Angle between holes. The positive value indicates the drilling in counterclockwise direction, and the negative value indicates the drilling in clockwise direction
N	Number of holes including the starting point
Q	Feed depth, directed distance
K	Each time the tool is retracted and fed again, the distance from the last machined surface when the rapid traverse feed is converted to the cutting feed
P	Dwell time at hole bottom, unit: ms
F	Cutting feedrate
L	Number of cycles (can be omitted when L=1)



### Description

- Actions

- (1) After positioning along X axis and Y axis with the drilling angle, the tool position moves to point B above the hole center;
- (2) Move close to the workpiece surface in rapid traverse, reach to R point;
- (3) Drilling downward at F speed;
- (4) Reach to the hole bottom Z point;
- (5) Dwell P ms at hole bottom (spindle keeps rotating);
- (6) Retract upward to R point (G99) or B point (G98) in rapid traverse;
- (7) Spindle keeps rotating;
- (8) Program end.

- Spindle rotation

Rotate spindle with auxiliary function (M code) before using G71.

When continuously performing drilling of a short distance from the hole position and the initial level to the R point level, the spindle may not be able to rotate normally before entering the hole cutting. In this case, do not specify the number of repetitions L, and user needs to insert GO4-based pause before each drilling action to take some time out.

Do not need to consider the above situation for some machine tools. Please refer to the manual provided by the machine tool manufacturer.

### ● Tool length compensation

When the tool length compensation (G43, G44, G49) is specified in drilling canned cycle, this compensation should be used at the time of positioning to R point.

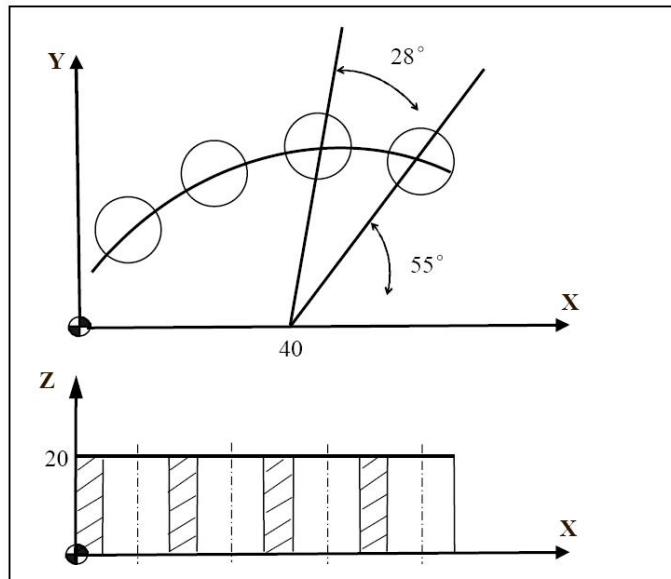
### ● Auxiliary function

When G71 command and M code are specified in the same block, the M code is executed during the initial positioning. When the number of repetitions L is specified, the above actions will be executed only for the first time, and M codes will not be executed after the second time.



### Example

Use  $\Phi 10$  drill bit to process the hole as shown,



%3359

```
N10 G55 G00 X0 Y0 Z80  
N20 G98 G71 G90 X40 Y0 G90 R25 Z0 I40 J55 O28 N4 P2000-10 K5 F100  
N30 G90 G00 X0 Y0 Z80  
N40 M30
```



### Note

- (1) When Q is larger than zero or K is smaller than zero, the system reports errors; when Q or K is zero or is not defined, the G81 center drilling cycle is executed for each hole, and P is invalid; when values of Q and K are correct, the G83 deep hole drilling cycle is executed for each hole, and P is valid.

- (2) The total arc angle N×O cannot be greater than or equal to 360 degrees, otherwise it will not be executed;
- (3) Cancel canned cycle before switching drilling axis.
- (4) The drilling axis must be Z axis in G17 plane.
- (5) If the moving amount is zero on Z, this command will not be executed.
- (6) Z point must be higher than R level, otherwise the alarm will be issued.
- (7) The values of I and O cannot be omitted, otherwise the alarm will be issued.
- (8) G71 data is saved as the modal data, and the same data can be omitted.
- (9) Use corresponding M code to rotate spindle before using G71.
- (10) Drilling is not performed in the blocks that not include X, Y, Z, R or any other additional axis.
- (11) The tool position offset is omitted in the drilling canned cycle mode.
- (12) Do not specify the G code (G00-G03) of group 01 in the G71 block; otherwise, G71 will be cancelled.

### 16.3.3 Holes along an Angle (G78)



#### Function and Purpose

The cycle starts with the position (X, Y), and drill N holes in the direction formed by the X axis and J angle with the interval I. The G81 or G83 canned cycle is performed for each hole based on the value of Q and K. The movement between the holes is carried out in G00 mode. G78 is a modal command, and the following command word is non-modal.



#### Command Format

(G98/G99)G78 X\_Y\_Z\_R\_I\_J\_N\_[Q\_K\_P]\_F\_L\_;

Parameter	Meaning
X Y	Coordinates of the first hole
Z	Coordinates of hole bottom. Coordinates of R point in absolute programming; distance from initial point B to R point in incremental programming
I	Distance between holes
J	The starting angle formed by the straight line and the positive direction of X-axis, the positive value indicates the counterclockwise direction;
N	Number of holes including the starting point
Q	Feed depth, directed distance
K	Each time the tool is retracted and fed again, the distance from the last machined surface when the rapid traverse feed is converted to the cutting feed

P	Dwell time at hole bottom, unit: ms
---	-------------------------------------



## Description

### ● Action

- (1) After positioning along X axis and Y axis with drilling angle, the tool position quickly moves to point B above the hole center;
- (2) Move close to the workpiece surface in rapid traverse, reach to R point;
- (3) Drill downward at F speed;
- (4) Reach to hole bottom Z point;
- (5) Dwell P ms at hole bottom (spindle keeps rotating);
- (6) Retract upward to R point (G99) or B point (G98) in rapid traverse;
- (7) Spindle keeps rotating;
- (8) Program end with M30.

### ● Spindle rotation

Rotate spindle with auxiliary function (M code) before using G78.

When continuously performing drilling of a short distance from the hole position and the initial level to the R point level, the spindle may not be able to rotate normally before entering the hole cutting action. In this case, do not specify the number of repetitions L, and user needs to insert GO4-based pause before each drilling action to take some time out.

Do not need to consider the above situation for some machine tools. Please refer to the manual provided by the machine tool manufacturer.

### ● Tool length compensation

When the tool length compensation (G43, G44, G49) is specified in drilling canned cycle, this compensation should be used at the time of positioning to R point.

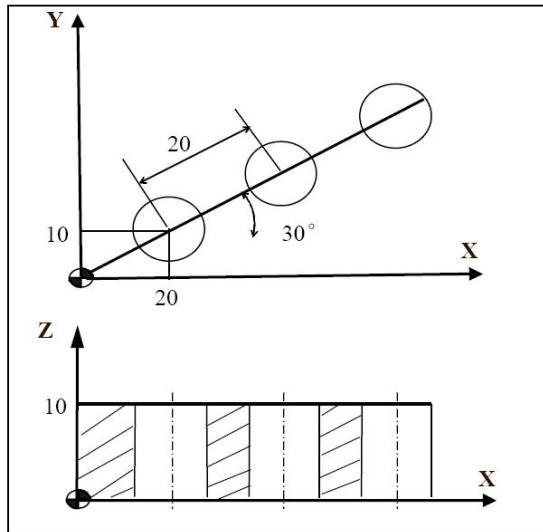
### ● Auxiliary function

When G78 command and M code are specified in the same block, the M code is executed during the initial positioning. When the number of repetitions L is specified, the above actions will be executed only for the first time, and M codes will not be executed after the second time.



## Example

Example: Use a Φ10 drill to process the hole shown in the figure.



%3360

```
N10 G55 G00 X0 Y0 Z80
N20 G98G78G90X20Y10G90R15Z0I20J30N3P2000-10K5F100
N30 G90 G00 X0 Y0 Z80
N40 M30
```



### Note

- (1) Cancel canned cycle before switching drilling axis.
- (2) The drilling axis must be Z axis in G17 plane.
- (3) If the moving amount is zero on Z, this command will not be executed.
- (4) The Z point must be higher than R level, otherwise the alarm will be issued.
- (5) The I value cannot be omitted, otherwise the alarm will be issued.
- (6) G78 data is saved as the modal data, and the same data can be omitted.
- (7) Use corresponding M code to rotate spindle before using G78.
- (8) Drilling is not performed in the blocks that not include X, Y, Z, R or any other additional axis.
- (9) An error is reported when Q is greater than zero or K is smaller than zero; an error is reported when the feed distance Q is smaller than the retract distance K; when Q or K is zero or is not defined, the G81 center drilling cycle is executed for each hole, at this time P is invalid; when the values of Q and K are both correct, G83 deep hole cycle is executed for each hole, and P is valid at this time.
- (10) The tool position offset is omitted in the drilling canned cycle mode.
- (11) Do not specify the G code (G00-G03) of group 01 in the G78 block; otherwise, G78 will be cancelled.

### 16.3.4 Chess Type (G79)



#### Function and Purpose

The cycle starts with the position (X, Y), drills N holes in the direction parallel to X axis with the interval I, and uses the interval J for drilling in the X axis direction, a total of O cycles. G81 or G83 canned cycle is performed based on the values of Q and K for each hole. The movement between holes is performed in G00 mode. G79 is modal, and the following command word is non-modal.



#### Command Format

(G98/G99)G79 X\_Y\_Z\_R\_I\_J\_N\_[Q\_K\_P]\_F\_L\_

Para meter	Meaning
X, Y	Coordinates of the first hole
Z	Coordinates of hole bottom
R	Coordinates of R point in absolute programming; distance from initial point B to R point in incremental programming
I	Distance between holes on X. The positive value indicates the drilling in the positive direction of X axis, and the negative value indicates the drilling in the negative direction of X axis.
N	Number of holes including the start point in the direction of X
J	Distance between holes on Y. The positive value indicates the drilling in the positive direction of Y axis, and the negative value indicates the drilling in the negative direction of Y axis.
O	Number of holes including the start point in the direction of Y
Q	Feed depth, directed distance
K	Each time the tool is retracted and fed again, the distance from the last machined surface when the rapid traverse feed is converted to the cutting feed
P	Dwell time at hole bottom, unit: ms



#### Description

##### ● Action

- (1) After positioning along X axis and Y axis with the drilling angle, the tool position quickly moves to point B above the hole center;
- (2) Move close to the workpiece surface in rapid traverse, reach to R point;
- (3) Drill downward at F speed;

- (4) Reach to hole bottom Z point;
- (5) Dwell P ms at hole bottom (spindle keeps rotating);
- (6) Retract upward to R point (G99) or B point (G98) in rapid traverse;
- (7) Spindle keeps rotating;
- (8) Program end with M30.

#### ● **Spindle rotation**

Rotate spindle with auxiliary function (M code) before using G79.

When continuously performing drilling of a short distance from the hole position and the initial level to the R point level, the spindle may not be able to rotate normally before entering the hole cutting action. In this case, do not specify the number of repetitions N, and user needs to insert GO4-based pause before each drilling action to take some time out.

It is unnecessary to consider the above situation for some machine tools. Please refer to the manual provided by the machine tool manufacturer.

#### ● **Tool length compensation**

When the tool length compensation (G43, G44, G49) is specified in drilling canned cycle, this compensation should be used at the time of positioning to R point.

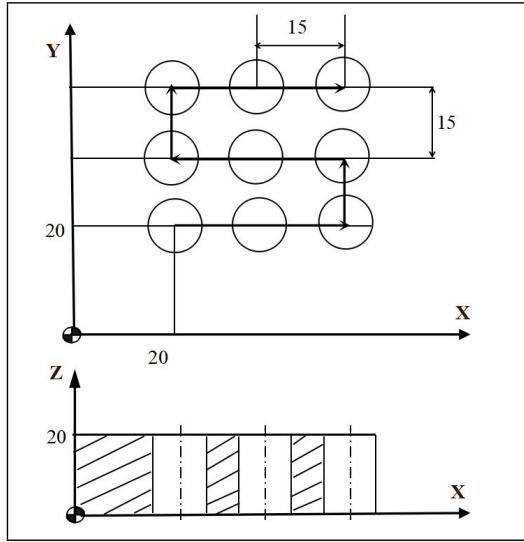
#### ● **Auxiliary function**

When G79 command and M code are specified in the same block, the M code is executed during the initial positioning. When the number of repetitions N is specified, the above actions will be executed only for the first time, and M codes will not be executed after the second time.



#### **Example**

Example: Use a Φ10 drill to process the hole shown in the figure.



%3361

N10 G55 G00 X0 Y0 Z80

N20 G98 G79 G90 X20 Y20 G90 R25 Z0 I15 N3 J15 O3 P2000-10 K5 F100

N30 G90 G00 X0 Y0 Z80

N40 M30



#### Note

- (1) Cancel canned cycle before switching drilling axis.
- (2) The drilling axis must be Z axis in G17 plane.
- (3) If the moving amount is zero on Z, this command will not be executed.
- (4) Z point must be higher than R level, otherwise the alarm will be issued.
- (5) The values of I, O, J cannot be ignored, otherwise the alarm will be issued.
- (6) G79 data is saved as the modal data, and the same data can be omitted.
- (7) Use corresponding M code to rotate spindle before using G79.
- (8) Drilling is not performed in the blocks that not include X, Y, Z, R or any other additional axis.
- (9) An error is reported when Q is greater than zero or K is smaller than zero; an error is reported when the feed distance Q is less than the retract distance K; when Q or K is zero or is not defined, the G81 center drilling cycle is executed for each hole, at this time P is invalid; when the values of Q and K are both correct, G83 deep hole cycle is executed for each hole, and P is valid at this time.
- (10) The tool position offset is omitted in the drilling canned cycle mode.
- (11) Do not specify the G code (G00-G03) of group 01 in the G79 block; otherwise, G79 will be

cancelled.

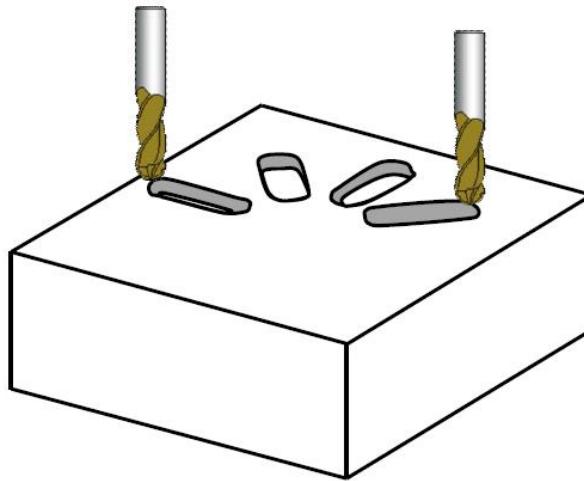
## 16.4 Milling Cycle

### 16.4.1 Slots on a Circle (Type 1) (G181)



#### Function and Purpose

This cycle can be used to machine slots arranged in a circular arc, and the slot width is determined by the tool diameter.



#### Command Format

(G98/G99) G181 R\_ Z\_ N\_ K\_ X\_ Y\_ I\_ A\_ B\_ F\_ Q\_ V\_ ;

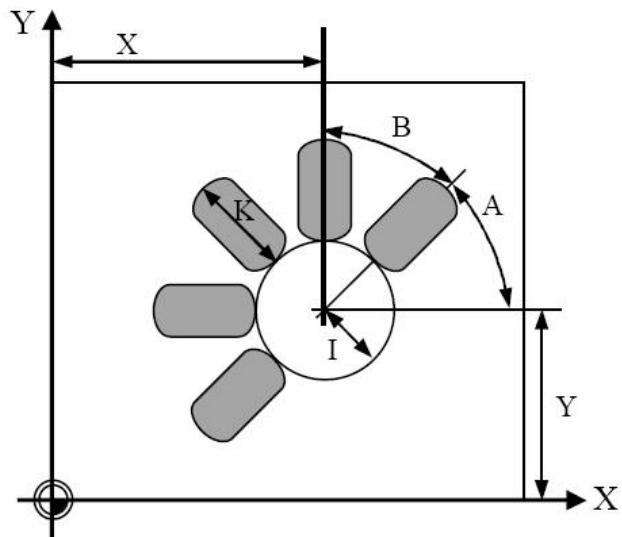
Parameter	Meaning
R	Coordinates of R point in absolute programming; distance from initial point B to R point in incremental programming
Z	Coordinates of slot bottom in absolute programming; incremental value from slot bottom to reference point R in incremental programming
N	Number of slots (can be omitted when L=1)
K	Length of slot
X	Center position of the arc formed by slots. Coordinate of the first axis in the current plane in absolute programming; incremental value relative to the starting point in incremental programming
Y	Center position of the arc formed by slots. Coordinate of the second axis in the current plane in absolute programming; incremental value relative to the starting point in incremental programming
I	Radius of the arc formed by slots
A	Starting angle (-180 to 180 degrees. It is a positive value for counterclockwise, and negative value for clockwise, and it can be omitted when A=0)
B	Incremental angle (can be omitted when B=360/N; The negative value indicates the

	milling of slots in counterclockwise direction, and the positive value indicates the milling of slots in clockwise direction)
F	Milling speed
Q	Max. feed depth (can be omitted when Q=slot depth, one-time cutting to the end)
V	Tool radius



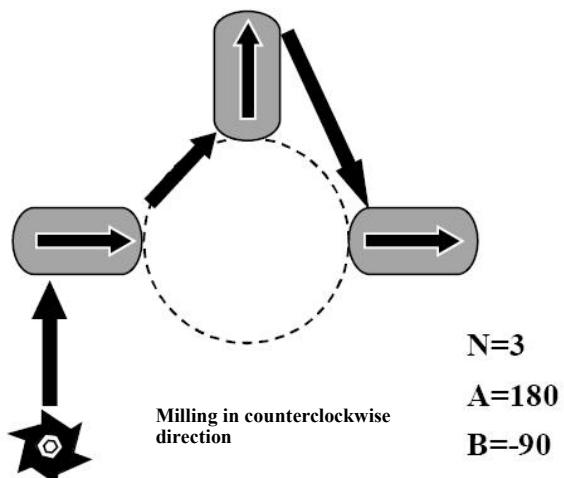
### Description

#### Parameter diagram



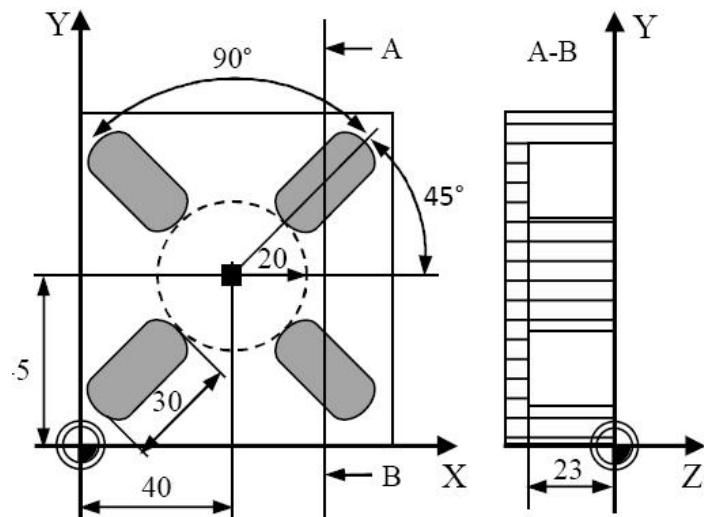
#### Milling steps

- (1) Select the initial position to enter the cycle. This point can be any position, but it must be ensured that every slot can be executed from this point without contour collision;
- (2) From the initial position to the reference position R above the near end of the first groove, the near end refers to the end close to the center of the arc, and the far end is the opposite. The slot specified by the starting angle parameter A is the first machining slot;
- (3) Feed down to the specified depth at the milling speed, and then mill the slot back and forth to the slot bottom. Each depth feed is performed at the end of the slot;
- (4) The application axis (usually the Z axis) retracts to the reference position R. The tool moves to the end of the next slot along the selected shortest path, and mills back and forth to the bottom;
- (5) After the last slot is machined, retract the tool to the initial position B or reference position R of the cycle according to the current G98 or G99 modal, and the cycle ends.



### Example

Process 4 slots as shown in the figure below, the slot length is 30mm, the groove depth is 23mm, and the cutting depth is 6mm.



%0526

```

N10      G54 X0 Y0 Z5
N20      G17 G90
N30      T10
N40      M06
N50      M03 S600
N60      G181 R0 Z-23 N4 K30 X40 Y45 I20 A45 B90 F100 Q6 V5
N70      M30
  
```



### Note

- (1) The number of slots N is input as a non-negative integer, the negative sign is ignored in the

cycle, and the non-integer will be rounded.

(2) The maximum feed depth is specified by Q. If the slot depth cannot be divisible by Q, the feed depth of the last cut will be less than Q.

(3) The milling direction between the slots is related to the sign of B. If B is positive, it will be processed counterclockwise from the first slot to the last groove. If B is negative, the slot will be processed clockwise. If B is not specified, B=360/N is cycled, and the milling of slots is performed counterclockwise.

(4) The input of K, I, and Q are non-negative values. If the input is negative, the negative sign will be ignored in the cycle;

(5) Rotate the spindle before entering cycle.

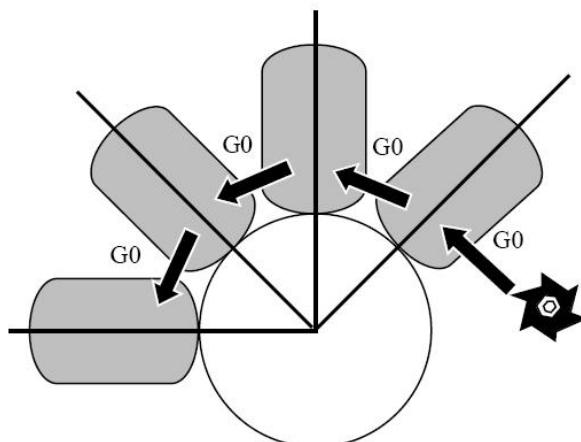
#### 16.4.2 Slots on a Circle (Type 2) (G182)



##### Function and Purpose

This cycle can process the slots arranged in annular. The longitudinal axes of these slots are arranged radially. This cycle is different from G181. The slot width can be specified by parameters instead of the tool diameter.

At the same time, this cycle can specify roughing or finishing.



##### Command Format

(G98/G99)G182 R\_Z\_N\_K\_W\_X\_Y\_I\_A\_B\_F\_Q\_E\_O\_H\_U\_P\_C\_D\_V\_;

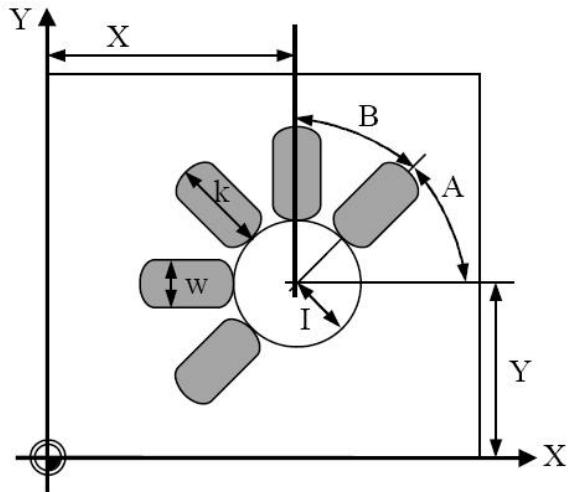
Parameter	Meaning
R	Reference point R coordinates in absolute programming; incremental value of reference point R relative to the initial level.

Z	Coordinate value of slot bottom in absolute programming; incremental value of slot bottom relative to the reference point R in incremental programming.
N	Number of slots (can be omitted when N=1)
K	Length of slot
W	Width of slot (can be omitted when W=tool diameter)
X	Center position of the arc formed by grooves. Coordinate of the first axis in the current plane in absolute programming; incremental value relative to the starting point in incremental programming
Y	Center position of the arc formed by slots. Coordinate of the second axis in the current plane in absolute programming; incremental value relative to the starting point in incremental programming
I	Radius of the arc formed by slots
A	Starting angle (-180 to 180 degrees. It is a positive value for counterclockwise, and negative value for clockwise, and it can be omitted when A=0)
B	Incremental angle (can be omitted when B=360/N; The negative value indicates the milling of slots in counterclockwise direction, and the positive value indicates the milling of slots in clockwise direction)
F	Milling speed in roughing
Q	Max. feed depth in roughing (can be omitted when Q=slot depth- finishing allowance of slot bottom)
E	Finishing allowance of slot edge (can be omitted when E=0)
O	Finishing allowance of slot bottom (can be omitted when O=0)
H	Max. feed depth in finishing (can be omitted when H=Q)
U	Feedrate in finishing (can be omitted when U=F)
P	Spindle speed in finishing (can be omitted when P=spindle speed or default speed before entering cycle)
C	Milling direction for the groove (can be omitted when C=3) 0: milling in the same direction; 1: milling in the reverse direction; 2: milling in the G02 direction; 3: milling in the G03 direction
D	Machining type (can be omitted when D=1) 1: roughing; 2: finishing
V	Tool radius



### Description

## Graphical representation



### Milling direction

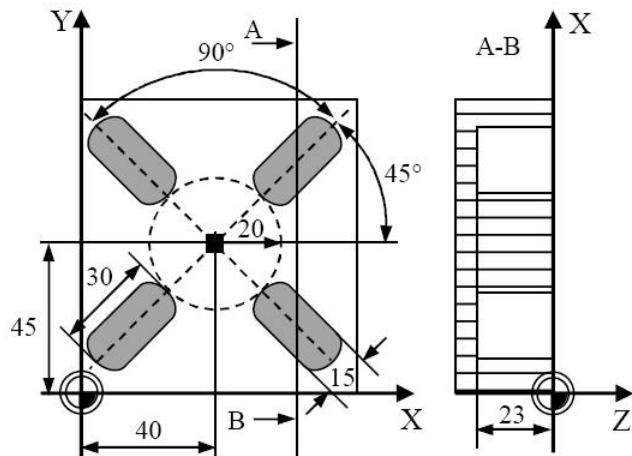
The spindle must be specified to rotate before entering the cycle. The cycle calculates a reasonable milling direction based on the spindle rotation direction M3/4 before the cycle is entered and the milling direction set by the user. The selection of the milling direction is shown in the following table:

Milling direction (cycle parameter C)	Specify M03 or M04 before entering cycle	
	M03 spindle rotation CW	M04 spindle rotation CCW
0: milling in the same direction	G03	G02
1: milling in the reverse direction	G02	G03
2: G02 direction	G02	G02
3: G03 direction	G03	G03
Omitted	G03	G03



## Example

To machine 4 slots. Slot length 30mm, groove width 15mm, slot depth 23mm, finishing allowance 0.5mm, milling direction G02, feed depth in roughing 6mm, tool radius 5mm.



%0527

N10 G54 G17 G90

N20 T10

N30 M06

N40 M03 S600

N50 G182R5Z-23N4K30X40Y45W15I20A45B90F100Q6E0.5O0.5C2V5

N60 M30



## Note

- (1) The tool radius cannot exceed the specified slot width W, otherwise an alarm will be generated;
- (2) The number of slots N is input as a non-negative integer, the cycle will ignore the negative sign, and round off the non-integer;
- (3) Q and H both refer to the maximum feed depth. Note that when the slot depth cannot be divisible by feed depth Q or H, the last cut will be less than Q or H;
- (4) The milling direction C specifies the milling direction of a single slot, and the angle increment B specifies the milling direction between the slots. If B is positive, the processing will be performed counterclockwise from the first slot to the last slot; and if B is negative, it will be clockwise. If B is not specified, the cycle will process  $B=360/N$ , and the slots will be milled counterclockwise;
- (5) K, W, I, E, O, Q, H are input as non-negative numbers. If the input is negative, the negative sign will be ignored in the cycle;

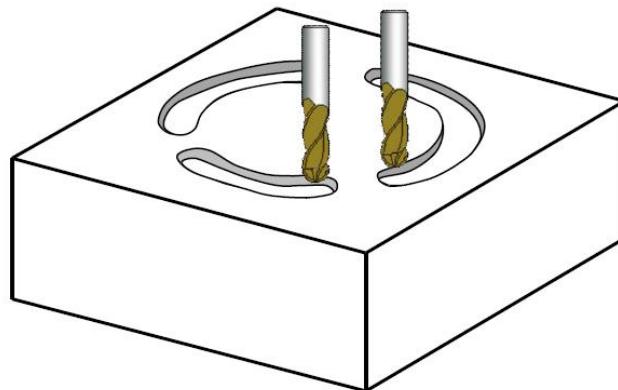
(6) The spindle must be rotated before entering the cycle. In addition, the finishing allowance E of the specified slot edge cannot exceed the slot width W/2, and the finishing allowance O of the slot bottom cannot exceed the slot depth, otherwise an alarm will be generated. For the alarm information, please refer to chapter 16.4.9.

#### 16.4.3 Circumferential Slot Milling Cycle (G183)



##### Function and Purpose

This cycle can process the circumferential slots distributed on the circle, and can specify rough machining, finishing or comprehensive machining.



##### Command Format

(G98/G99)G183R\_Z\_N\_K\_W\_X\_Y\_I\_A\_B\_F\_Q\_E\_O\_H\_U\_P\_C\_D\_V\_;

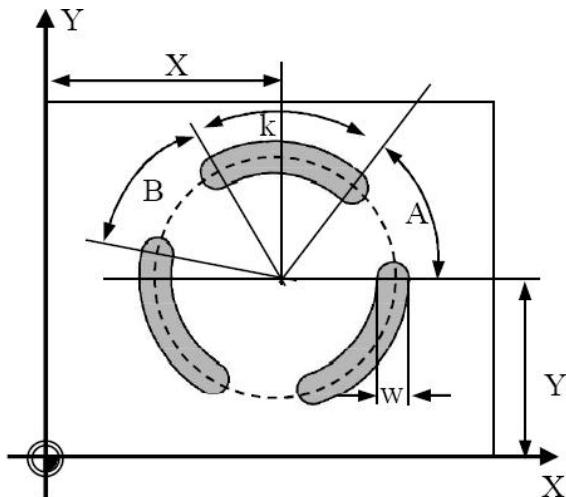
Parameter	Meaning
R	Coordinates of R point in absolute programming; distance from reference point R to initial level in incremental programming
Z	Coordinate value of slot bottom in absolute programming; incremental value of slot bottom relative to reference point R in incremental programming.
N	Number of slots (can be omitted when L=1)
K	Angle of slot length (0 to 360 degrees, unit: degree)
W	Slot width (can be omitted when W=tool diameter)
X	Center position of the arc formed by slots. Coordinate of the first axis in the current plane in absolute programming; incremental value relative to the starting point in incremental programming.
Y	Center position of the arc formed by slots. Coordinate of the second axis in the current plane in absolute programming; incremental value relative to the starting point in incremental programming.
I	Radius of circle arranged by slots
A	Starting angle (-180 to 180 degrees, positive for counterclockwise, and negative for clockwise. It

	can be omitted when A=0)
B	Incremental angle (can be omitted when B=360/N; The negative value indicates the milling of slots in counterclockwise direction, and the positive value indicates the milling of slots in clockwise direction)
F	Milling speed in roughing
Q	Max. feed depth in roughing (can be omitted when Q=slot depth-finishing allowance of slot bottom)
E	Finishing allowance of slot edge (can be omitted when E=0)
O	Finishing allowance of slot bottom (can be omitted when O=0)
U	Feedrate in finishing (can be omitted when U=F)
P	Spindle speed in finishing (can be omitted when P=spindle speed or default speed before entering cycle)
C	Milling direction of slots (can be omitted when C=3) 0: milling in the same direction; 1: milling in the reverse direction; 2: milling in G02 direction; 3: milling in G03 direction
D	Machining type (can be omitted when D=1) 1: roughing; 2: finishing
V	Tool radius



## Description

### Graphical representation



### Milling direction

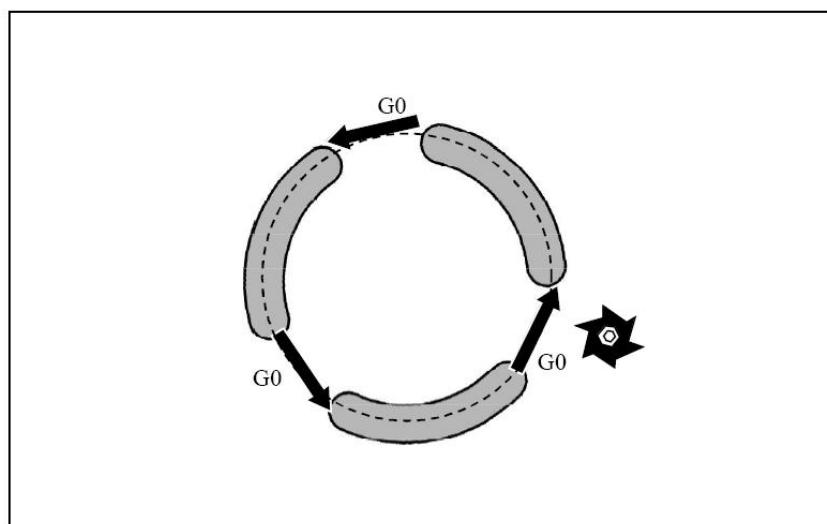
The spindle must be specified to rotate before entering the cycle. A reasonable milling direction is calculated based on the spindle rotation direction M3/4 and the milling direction set by users before entering the cycle. The selection of the milling direction is shown in the following table:

Milling direction (cycle parameter C)	Specify M03/M04 before entering cycle	
	M03 spindle rotation CW	M04 spindle rotation CCW
milling in the same	G03	G02

direction		
milling in the reverse direction	G02	G03
2: G02 direction	G02	G02
3: G03 direction	G03(1)	G03
Omitted	G03	G03

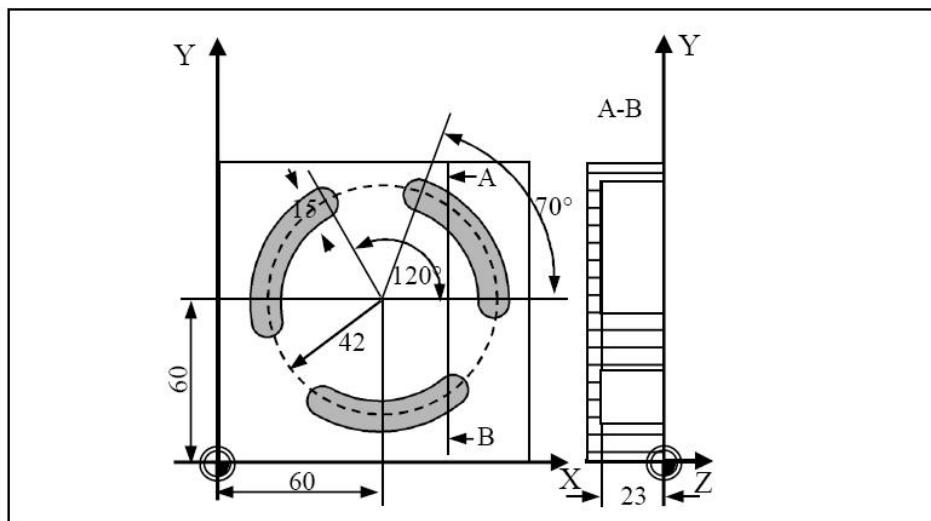
## Steps

- (1) When cycle runs, use G00 to reach the reference level R;
- (2) Milling the current slot back and forth from inside to outside, the milling steps are similar to G182;
- (3) After finishing machining a groove, the tool retracts to the reference level and moves to the next slot;
- (4) After processing all slots, retract the tool with G98/G99 to complete the cycle.



## Example

Machining three slots on a circle with a center of (X60, Y60) and a radius of 42mm in the XY plane. The slot size: width is 15mm, slot length angle is 70 degrees, slot depth is 23mm, starting angle is 0 degrees, incremental angle is 120 degrees, the finishing allowance on the slot contour is 0.5mm, and the depth of each feed is 6mm. The same speed and feed rate are used for finishing and roughing. The finishing is completed in one cut, and the tool radius is 5mm.



%0528

N10 G54 G17 G90

N20 T10

N30 M06

N40 M03 S600

N50 G00 X60 Y60 Z5

N60G183R2Z-23N3K70W15X60Y60I42A70B120F100Q6E0.5O0.5V5

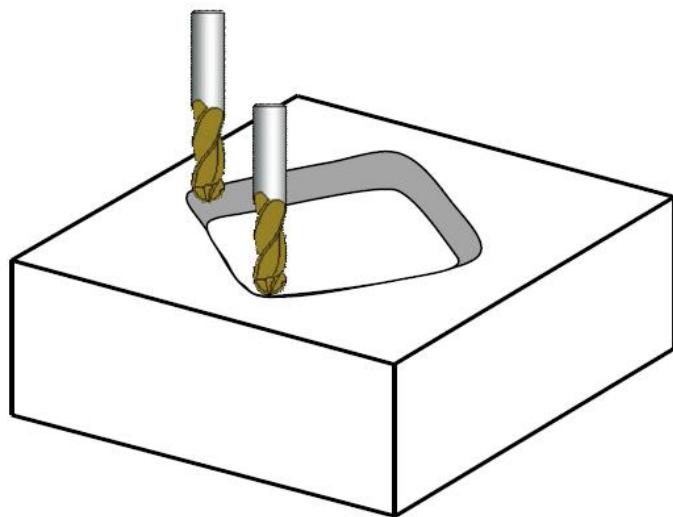
N70 M30

#### 16.4.4 Rectangular Pocket Milling Cycle (G184)



##### Function and Purpose

This cycle is used for rough machining and finishing of rectangular pockets with circular corners.



##### Command Format

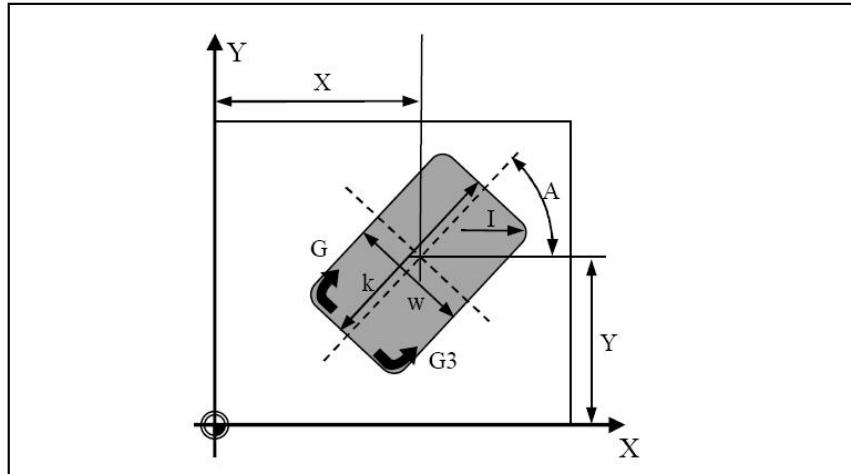
(G98/G99)G184R\_Z\_K\_W\_X\_Y\_I\_A\_F\_Q\_E\_O\_H\_U\_P\_C\_D\_V\_;

Parameter	Meaning
R	Coordinates of R point in absolute programming; distance from initial level to R point in incremental programming
Z	Coordinate of pocket bottom in absolute programming; incremental value of pocket bottom relative to reference point R in incremental programming.
K	Pocket length
W	Pocket width
X	Center of pocket. Coordinate of the first axis in the current plane in absolute programming; incremental value relative to the starting point in incremental programming.
Y	Center of pocket. Coordinate of the second axis in the current plane in absolute programming; incremental value relative to the starting point in incremental programming.
I	Radius of circular corners of rectangular pocket (can be omitted or specified as 0 when I=W/2)
A	The angle between the long side of the rectangular groove and the positive direction of the first axis in the plane (can be omitted when A=0)
F	Milling speed in roughing
Q	Max. feed depth in roughing (can be omitted when Q=groove depth-finishing allowance of groove bottom)
E	Finishing allowance of groove edge (can be omitted when E=0)
O	Finishing allowance of groove bottom (can be omitted when O=0)
H	Max. feed depth in finishing (can be omitted when H=Q)
U	Feedrate in finishing (can be omitted when U=F)
P	Spindle speed in finishing (can be omitted when P=spindle speed or default speed before entering cycle)
C	Milling direction (can be omitted when C=3) 0: milling in the same direction; 1: milling in the reverse direction; 2: milling in G02 direction; 3: milling in G03 direction
D	Machining type (can be omitted when D=1) 1: roughing; 2: finishing
V	Tool radius



### Description

### Graphical representation



### Milling direction

The spindle must be specified to rotate before entering the cycle. A reasonable milling direction is calculated based on the spindle rotation direction M3/4 and the milling direction set by the user before entering the cycle. The selection of the milling direction is shown in the following table:

Milling direction (cycle parameter C)	M03/M04 Specify M03/M04 before entering cycle	
	M03 spindle rotation CW	M04 spindle rotation CCW
0: milling in the same direction	G03	G02
1: milling in the reverse direction	G02	G03
2: G02 direction	G02	G02
3: G03 direction	G03	G03
Omitted	G03	G03

### Steps

(1) Move to the starting position of the cycle. This point can be any position, but it must be ensured that the workpiece can be positioned from this point without collision;

#### (2) Roughing (D=1)

The midpoint of the edge of the wide side (finishing allowance of the pocket edge is left) is positioned with G00, and the depth is fed with a feed amount Q. The pocket surface is milled from the outside to the inside in the milling direction defined by C, and the tool returns to the same cutting point, feed from the groove surface again to the finishing allowance at the bottom of the groove.

#### (3) Finishing (D=2)

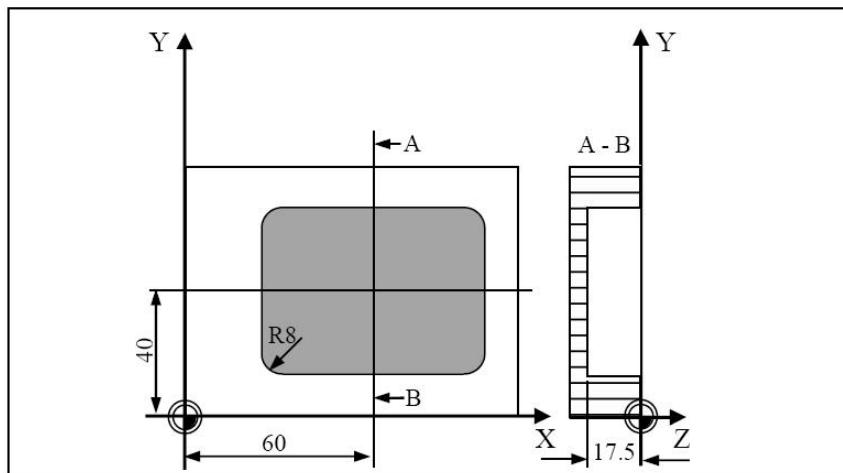
The midpoint of the edge of the wide side (finishing allowance of the pocket edge is left) is positioned with G00, and the depth is fed with an amount H. The pocket surface is milled from the outside to the inside in the milling direction defined by C, and the tool returns to the same cutting point, feed from the groove surface again to the finishing allowance at the bottom of the groove.

(4) After machining, move the tool to the initial level or reference level with G98/G99, and the cycle ends.



### Example

Machine a pocket in the G17 plane with a length of 60mm, a width of 40mm, a corner radius of 8mm, and a depth of 17.5mm. The pocket forms a 0 degree angle with X axis. The finishing allowance of edge is 0.75mm, and the finishing allowance of bottom is 0.2mm. The pocket center is X60Y40, the feed depth is 4mm, and the tool radius is 5mm. Only rough machining is performed, as shown below.



%0526

N10 G54 G90 G17

N20 T20

N30 M06

N40 M04 S600

N50 G00 X60 Y40 Z5

N60 G98G184R5Z-17.5K60W40X60Y40I8F120Q4E0.75O0.2D1V5

N70 M30



### Note

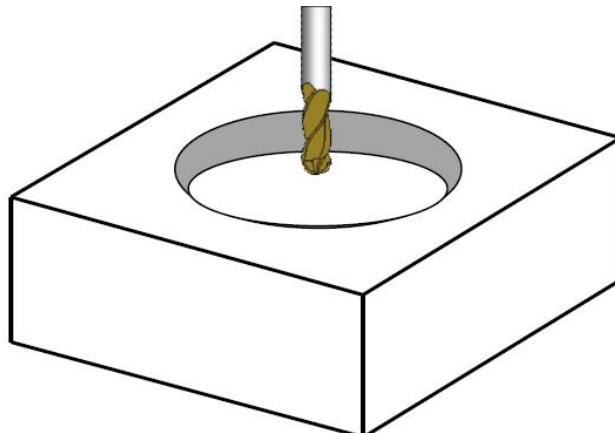
- (1) This cycle requires the use of end mills.
- (2) Q and H respectively define the maximum feed depth during roughing and finishing. Note that when the machining allowance cannot be divisible by Q or H, the last cut will be smaller than Q and H;
- (3) N, K, W, I, E, O, Q, H are input as non-negative numbers. If the input is negative, the negative sign will be ignored in the cycle;
- (4) Please refer to Section 16.4.9 for alarms generated by this cycle;
- (5) If the input pocket width is greater than the pocket length, the cycle will automatically exchange them to the expected position;
- (6) The C specified the milling direction such as G182.
- (7) The spindle rotation must be specified before entering cycle.

#### 16.4.5 Circular Pocket Milling Cycle (G185)



##### Function and Purpose

This cycle is used for processing circular pocket. Finishing and roughing are supported.



##### Command Format

(G98/G99)G185R\_Z\_X\_Y\_I\_F\_Q\_E\_O\_H\_U\_P\_C\_D\_V\_;

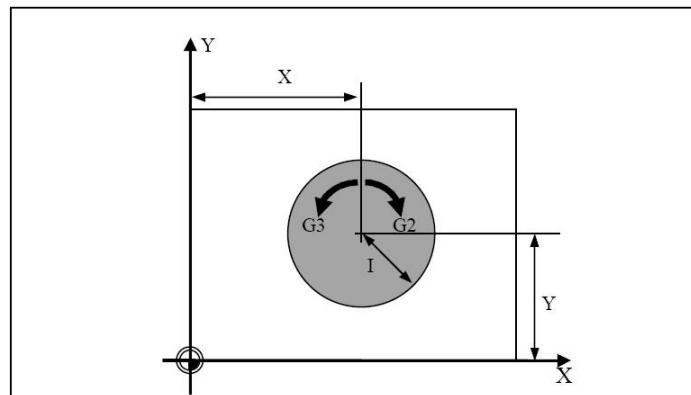
Parameter	Meaning
R	Coordinates of R point in absolute programming; distance from reference point B to R point in incremental programming
Z	Coordinate value of pocket bottom in absolute programming; incremental value of pocket bottom relative to reference point R in incremental programming
X	Center of pocket. Coordinate of the first axis in the current plane in absolute

	programming; incremental value relative to the starting point in incremental programming.
Y	Center of pocket. Coordinate of the second axis in the current plane in absolute programming; incremental value relative to the starting point in incremental programming.
I	Radius of pocket
F	Milling speed in roughing
Q	Max. feed depth in roughing (can be omitted when Q=pocket depth-finishing allowance of pocket bottom)
E	Finishing allowance of pocket edge (can be omitted when E=0)
O	Finishing allowance of pocket bottom (can be omitted when O=0)
H	Max. feed depth in finishing (can be omitted when H=Q)
U	Feedrate in finishing (can be omitted when U=F)
P	Spindle speed in finishing (can be omitted when P=spindle speed or default speed before entering cycle)
C	Milling direction (can be omitted when C=3) 0: milling in the same direction; 1: milling in the reverse direction; 2: milling in G02 direction; 3: milling in G03 direction
D	Machining type (can be omitted when D=1) 1: roughing; 2: finishing
V	Tool radius



## Description

### Graphical representation



### Milling direction

The spindle must be specified to rotate before entering the cycle. A reasonable milling direction is calculated based on the spindle rotation direction M3/4 and the milling direction set by the user before entering the cycle. The selection of the milling direction is shown in the following table:

Milling direction (cycle parameter C)	Specify M03/M04 before entering cycle	
	M03 spindle rotation	M04 spindle rotation

	<b>CW</b>	<b>CCW</b>
0: milling in the same direction	G03	G02
1: milling in the reverse direction	G02	G03
2: G02 direction	G02	G02
3: G03 direction	G03	G03
Omitted	G03	G03

## Steps

(1) Selecting a position as the starting position of the cycle, this position can be random, and it must be possible to reach to workpiece from this position without collision.

(2) Roughing (D=1)

Move to the reference level above the edge of pocket with G00 (leaving finishing allowance of the edge), feed the amount Q, mill the pocket surface from outside to inside based on the milling direction specified by C, return to the same point and mill the surface again to the finishing allowance at the bottom of the pocket.

(3) Finishing (D=2)

Move to the reference level above the edge of pocket with G00 (leaving finishing allowance of the edge), feed the amount H, mill the fillishing allowance from outside to inside based on the milling direction specified by C, and return to the same point and mill the surface again to the finishing allowance at the bottom of the pocket. Then mill the fillishing allowance of bottom from outside to inside based on the milling direction specified by C

(4) After the pocket is machined, move the tool to the initial level or reference level with G98/G99, and the cycle is completed.



## Example

Mill a circular pocket. The center is X50 Y50, the radius is 100mm, the pocket depth is 50mm, the finishing allowance of the pocket bottom and the pocket edge are 2mm and 1.5mm respectively, the roughing depth is 4mm, and the tool radius is 5mm.

```
%1022  
G54 X0 Y0 Z40  
G17 G90  
T10  
M06  
M03 S650  
G99 G185 R0 Z-50 X50 Y50 I100 F300 Q4 E1.5 O2 V5D1; Roughing  
X50 Y50 I100 P800 H1.5 D2; Finishing  
M30
```



## Notes

(1) Please refer to section 16.4.9 for the alarms generated in this cycle;

(2) Q and H are the maximum feed depths for roughing and finishing respectively. Note that when the feed allowance cannot be divisible by Q or H, the last cut will be less than Q or H;

(3) I, E, O, Q, and H are specified as non-negative numbers. If a negative number is specified, the negative sign will be ignored in the cycle;

- (4) C specifies the milling direction such as G182;
- (5) The spindle rotation must be specified before entering cycle.

#### 16.4.6 End Face Milling Cycle (G186)



##### Function and Purpose

This cycle can mill any rectangular end face in finishing and roughing.



##### Command Format

(G98/G99)G186R\_Z\_N\_W\_X\_Y\_I\_A\_F\_Q\_J\_O\_H\_K\_U\_P\_C\_D\_V\_

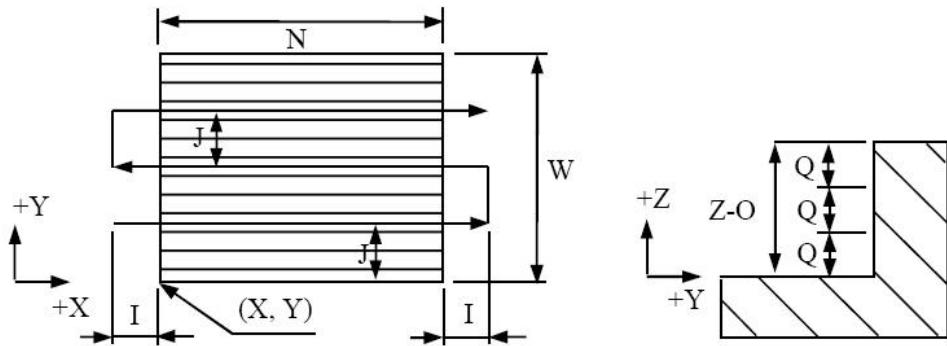
Parameter	Meaning
R	Coordinates of reference point R in absolute programming; distance from initial level B to R point in incremental programming
Z	Coordinate value of bottom in absolute programming; incremental value of bottom relative to reference point R in incremental programming
N	Length of the first axis of workpiece
W	Length of the second axis of workpiece
X, Y	Starting position. Coordinate of the first axis in the current plane in absolute programming; incremental value relative to the current point in incremental programming.
I	Safety margin in milling direction (can be omitted, I=tool radius)
A	The angle between the long side of the end face and the positive direction of the first axis in the plane (can be omitted, A=0)
F	Milling speed in roughing
Q	Max. feed depth in roughing (can be omitted, Q=milling depth–finishing allowance of bottom)
J	Milling width in roughing (can be omitted, J=tool diameter×80%)
O	Finishing allowance of workpiece bottom (can be omitted, O=0)
H	Max. feed depth in finishing (can be omitted, H=Q)
K	Cutting width in finishing (can be omitted, K=tool diameter×80%)
U	Milling speed in finishing (can be omitted, U=F)
P	Spindle speed in finishing (can be omitted, P=spindle speed or default speed before entering cycle)
C	Milling direction (can be omitted, C=0) 0: Bidirectional machining of 1 <sup>st</sup> axis in the selected plane 1: Bidirectional machining of 2 <sup>nd</sup> axis in the selected plane 2: Unidirectional machining of 1 <sup>st</sup> axis in the selected plane 3: Unidirectional machining of 2 <sup>nd</sup> axis in the selected plane
D	Machining type (can be omitted, D=1)

	1: roughing, 2: finishing
V	Tool radius

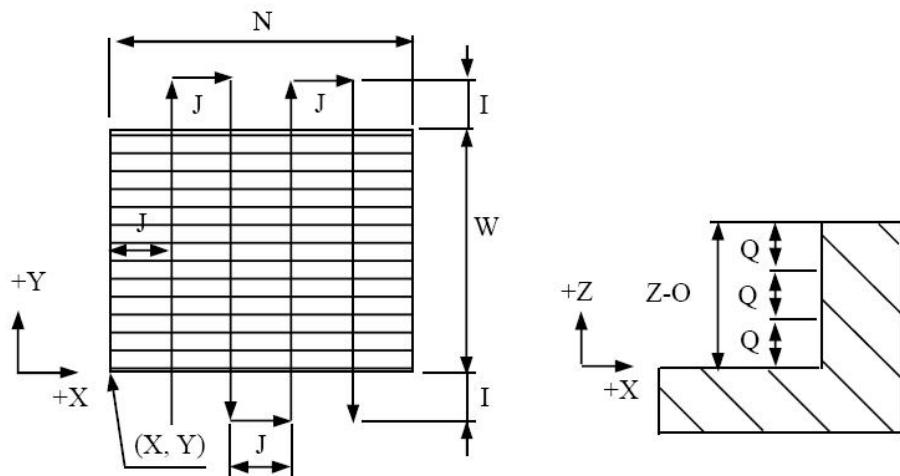


### Description

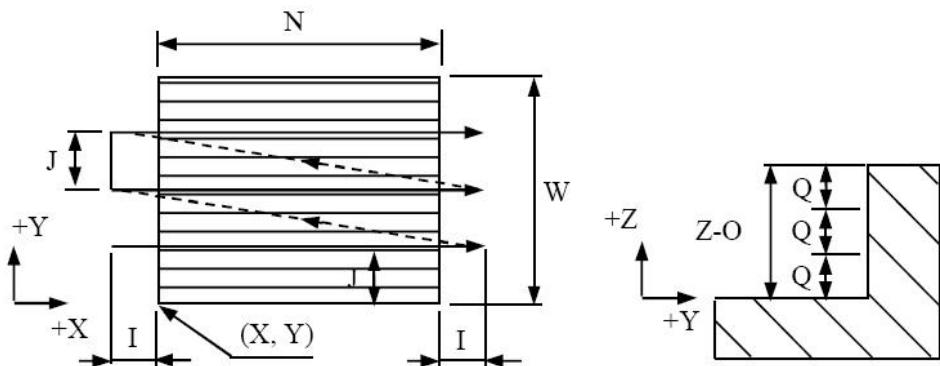
C=0, D=1, bidirectional machining of X axis



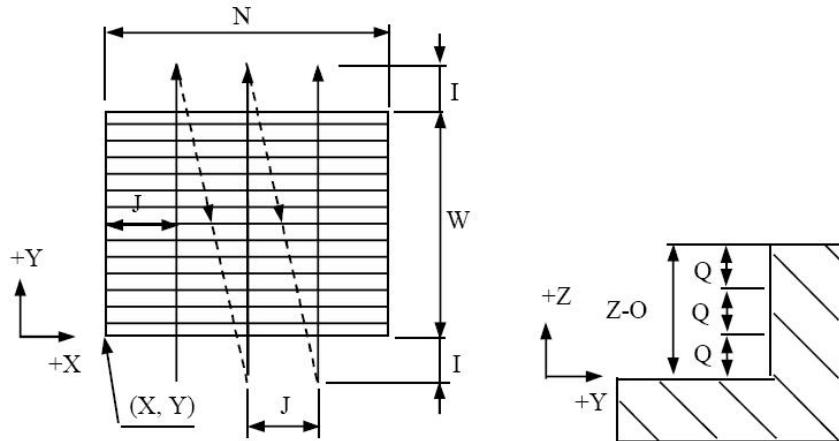
C=1, D=1, unidirectional machining of X axis



C=2, D=1, unidirectional machining of X axis



C=3, D=1, unidirectional machining of Y axis



Note: The above table only lists end face milling cycle in G17 plane (rough machining), for G18/G19 plane and so on, finishing and hybrid machining (D=2) are also similar.



### Example

For milling a rectangular end face, the end face dimensions and related process parameters are as follows:

Initial level 10mm; reference level 2mm, only rough machining is allowed, each milling width 10mm, each feed depth 6mm, total milling depth 11mm, milling starting point (100, 100), end face size 60mm×40mm, the safety margin in milling direction is 5mm. Bidirectional milling of X axis is allowed, the processing feedrate of surface is 500mm/min, and the milling tool radius is 5mm.

```

N10      G54 X0 Y0 Z20
N20      G17 G90
N30      T10
N40      M06
N50      M03 S650
N60      G00 X0 Y0 Z20
N70      G99G186 Z-11 R0 N60 W40 X100 Y100 I5 F500 Q6 J10 V5
N80      M30

```



### Note

- 1) N, W, I, O, Q, J, H, K are designated as non-negative numbers. If a negative number is input, the negative sign will be ignored in the cycle;
- 2) For the feed width (J, K) and feed depth (Q, H), when the feed amount cannot be divisible by it, the last cut will be smaller than the feed width or depth;
- 3) The spindle must be commanded to rotate before entering the cycle;
- 4) Please refer to section 16.4.9 for the alarms generated in this cycle.

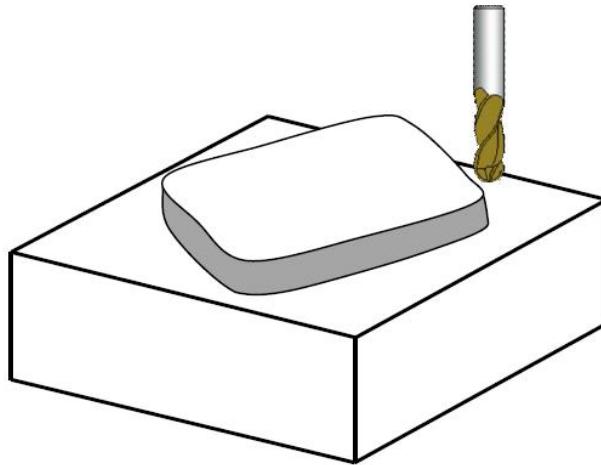


#### 16.4.7 Rectangular Boss Milling Cycle (G188)



##### Function and Purpose

Rectangular boss milling cycle is for processing rectangular bosses of any size in the plane. The rectangle bosses can have corner arcs. User can choose the type of machining, finishing, rough machining or hybrid machining.



##### Command Format

(G98/G99)G188R\_Z\_N\_W\_X\_Y\_J\_K\_I\_A\_F\_Q\_E\_O\_H\_U\_P\_C\_D\_V\_;

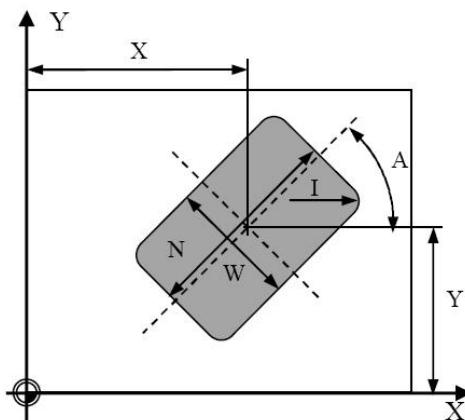
Parameter	Meaning
R	Coordinates of R point in absolute programming; distance from reference point R to initial level in incremental programming
Z	Coordinates of boss bottom in absolute programming; distance from boss bottom to reference point R in incremental programming
N	Length of boss
W	Width of boss
X	Center of boss. Coordinate of the first axis in the current plane in absolute programming; incremental value relative to the starting point in incremental programming.
Y	Center of boss. Coordinate of the second axis in the current plane in absolute programming; incremental value relative to the starting point in incremental programming.
J	Length of boss blank
K	Width of boss blank
I	Radius of corner of boss (can be omitted, I=W/2)
A	The angle between the long side of the rectangular boss and the positive direction of the first axis in the plane (can be omitted, A=0)
F	Milling speed in roughing

Q	Max. feed depth in roughing (can be omitted, Q=pocket depth-finishing allowance of boss bottom)
E	Finishing allowance of boss edge (can be omitted when E=0)
O	Finishing allowance of boss bottom (can be omitted when O=0)
H	Max. feed depth in finishing (can be omitted when H=Q)
U	Feedrate in finishing (can be omitted when U=F)
P	Spindle speed in finishing (can be omitted when P=spindle speed or default speed before entering cycle)
C	Milling direction (can be omitted when C=3) 0: milling in the same direction; 1: milling in the reverse direction; 2: milling in G02 direction; 3: milling in G03 direction
D	Machining type (can be omitted, D=1) 1: roughing; 2: finishing

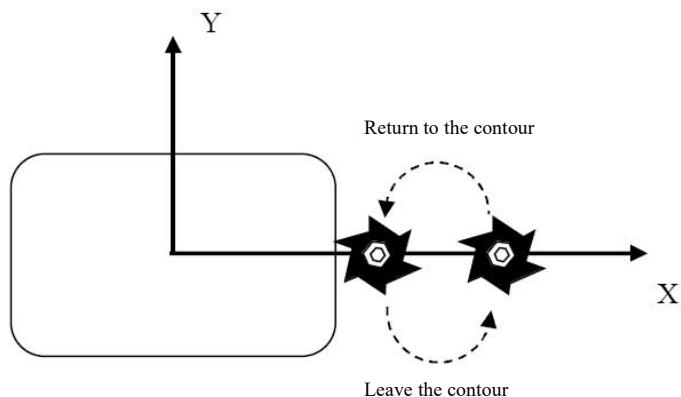


### Description

#### Graphical representation



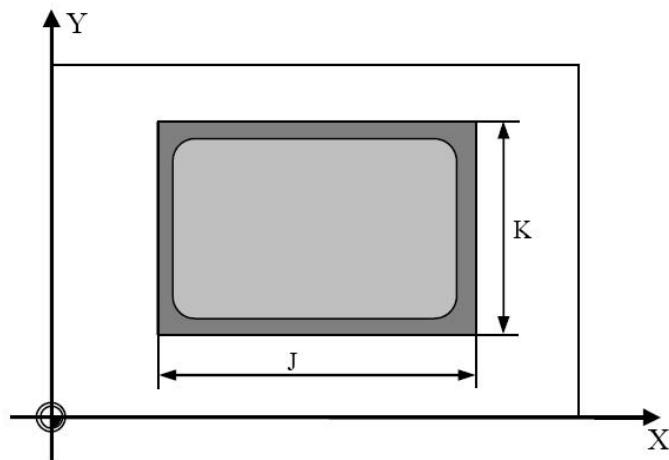
#### Enter contour, exit contour



In order to ensure the smoothness when the tool enters the workpiece, the cycle automatically adds a semicircle path when entering and exiting the workpiece during execution. The radius is determined by the cycle parameters, and the direction is opposite to the milling direction. If the

G2 direction is specified for milling, then the semicircle inserted here is in the G3 direction.

### Size of boss blank



For the processing of pre-poured workpieces, the blank size of the rectangular boss can also be considered, which is symmetrical to the boss size, and the center point is also (X, Y).

### Milling direction

The spindle must be specified to rotate before entering the cycle. A reasonable milling direction is calculated based on the spindle rotation direction M3/4 and the milling direction set by the user before entering the cycle. The selection of the milling direction is shown in the following table:

Milling direction (cycle parameter C)	Specify M03/M04 before entering cycle	
	M03 spindle rotation CW	M04 spindle rotation CCW
0: milling in the same direction	G03	G02
1: milling in the reverse direction	G02	G03
2: G02 direction	G02	G02
3: G03 direction	G03	G03
Omitted	G03	G03

## Steps

(1) Select a position as the starting position of the cycle. This point needs to be positioned on the right side of the boss in the positive direction of the first axis in the plane. Note that the semicircle automatically added needs to be taken into account.

(2) Roughing (D=1)

Move to the reference level above the wide side of the boss with G00, feed an amount, mill the blank surface to the finishing allowance of the edge based on the milling direction, exit the workpiece contour, rapid traverse to the starting point with G00, and feed to machine the surface of boss to the finishing allowance of the bottom.

(3) Finishing (D=2)

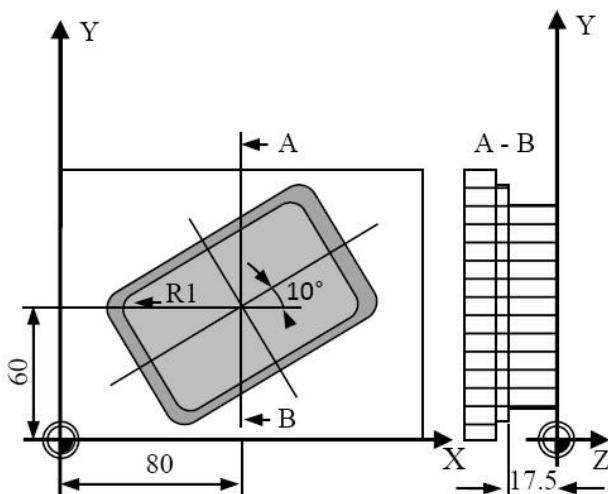
Move to the reference level above the wide side of the boss with G00, feed an amount, enter the workpiece contour to mill the finishing allowance of the edge based on the milling direction, exit the workpiece contour, rapid traverse to the starting point with G00, and then feed to machine the mill the bottom to the finishing allowance; and mill the finsihing allowance of the bottom.

(4) After the boss is machined, move the tool to the initial level or reference level with G98/G99, and the cycle is completed.



## Example

Machine the rectangular boss as shown in the figure below, the boss size is 60mm×40mm, the blank size is 80mm×50mm, and the tool radius is 3mm.



%1019

G17 G54 G90

T10

M06

M03 S650

G98 G188 R2Z-17.5N60W40X80Y60J80K50I15A10F200Q11E2O1V3

M30



#### Note

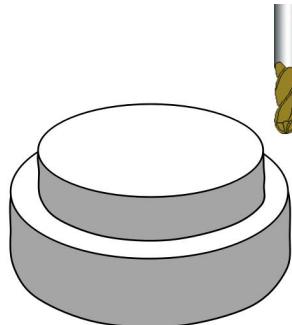
- (1) Please refer to section 16.4.9 for the alarms generated in this cycle;
- (2) W, J, K, I, E, O, Q, H are designated as non-negative numbers. If a negative number is specified, the negative sign will be ignored in the cycle;
- (3) The maximum feed depth of finishing and roughing is specified with Q and H respectively. When the feed amount cannot be divisible by it, the last cut will be smaller than Q or H;
- (4) The spindle must be commanded to rotate before entering the cycle;
- (5) If the specified wide side is greater than the long side, the wide side and the long side will be automatically exchanged by the cycle, and the corresponding rotation will be performed to meet the desired boss position.

#### 16.4.8 Circular Boss Milling Cycle (G189)



#### Function and Purpose

This cycle is to machine the round boss of any size in the plane.



#### Command Format

(G98/G99)G189R\_Z\_X\_Y\_I\_J\_F\_Q\_E\_O\_H\_U\_P\_C\_D\_V\_;

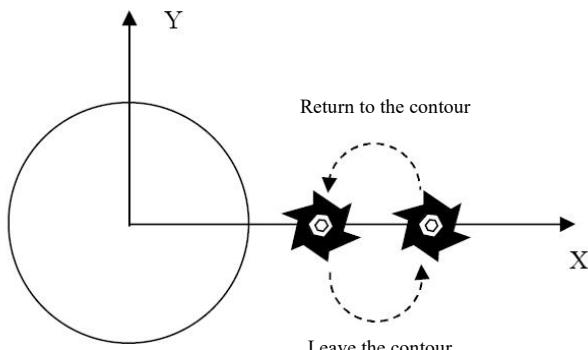
Parameter	Meaning
R	Coordinates of R point in absolute programming; distance from reference point R to initial level in incremental programming
Z	Coordinates of boss bottom in absolute programming; incremental value of boss bottom relative to reference point R in incremental programming
X	Center of boss. Coordinate of the first axis in the current plane in absolute programming; incremental value relative to the starting point in incremental programming.

Y	Center of boss. Coordinate of the second axis in the current plane in absolute programming; incremental value relative to the starting point in incremental programming.
I	Radius of round boss
J	Radius of blank
F	Milling speed in roughing
Q	Max. feed depth in roughing (can be omitted)
E	Finishing allowance of boss edge (can be omitted, E=0)
O	Finishing allowance of boss bottom (can be omitted, O=0)
H	Max. feed depth in finishing (can be omitted, H=Q)
U	Feedrate in finishing (can be omitted, U=F)
P	Spindle speed in finishing (can be omitted, P=spindle speed or default speed before entering cycle)
C	Milling direction (can be omitted, C=3) 0: milling in the same direction; 1: milling in the reverse direction; 2: milling in G02 direction; 3: milling in G03 direction
D	Machining type (can be omitted, D=1) 1: roughing; 2: finishing
V	Tool radius



### Description

#### Enter contour, exit contour



Like the G188 cycle, this cycle also adds a semi-circle every time the tool horizontally enters or exits the blank workpiece to ensure the smooth transition of the moving from boss edge to the blank, and the radius of the semi-circle is automatically calculated by the cycle.

#### Blank size

Like the G188 cycle, this cycle can also set the size of the blank, and the center point is also (X, Y).

#### Milling direction

The spindle must be specified to rotate before entering the cycle. A reasonable milling direction is calculated based on the spindle rotation direction M3/4 and the milling direction set by the user before entering the cycle. The selection of the milling direction is shown in the following table:

Milling direction (cycle parameter C)	Specify M03/M04 before entering cycle	
	M03 spindle rotation CW	M04 spindle rotation CCW
0: milling in the same direction	G03	G02
1: milling in the reverse direction	G02	G03
2: G02 direction	G02	G02
3: G03 direction	G03	G03
Omitted	G03	G03

### Steps

(1) Select a position as the starting position of the cycle. This point needs to be positioned on the right side of the boss in the positive direction of the first axis in the plane. Note that the semicircle automatically added by the cycle needs to be taken into account.

(2) Roughing (D=1)

Move to the reference level above the wide side of the boss with G00, feed an amount, mill the blank surface to the finishing allowance of the edge based on the milling direction, exit the workpiece contour, rapid traverse to the starting point with G00, and feed to machine the surface of boss to the finishing allowance of the bottom.

(3) Finishing (D=2)

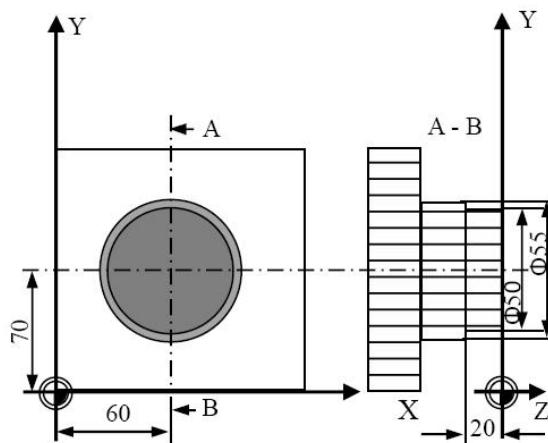
Move to the reference level above the wide side of the boss with G00, feed an amount, enter the workpiece contour to mill the finishing allowance of the edge based on the milling direction, exit the workpiece contour, rapid traverse to the starting point with G00, and then feed to machine the mill the bottom to the finishing allowance; and mill the finsihing allowance of the bottom.

(4) After the boss is machined, move the tool to the initial level or reference level with G98/G99, and the cycle is completed.



### Example

Machine the round boss as shown in the figure below, the blank radius is 55mm, the feed depth for each cut is 10mm, and the tool radius is 5mm.



%1020

G17 G54 G90  
T10  
M06  
M03 S650  
G98G189 R2Z-20X60Y70I25J27.5F200Q10E1O1V5  
M30



**Note**

- (1) Please refer to section 16.4.9 for the alarms generated in this cycle.
- (2) J, K, I, E, O, Q, H are designated as non-negative numbers. If a negative number is specified, the negative sign will be ignored in the cycle.
- (3) The maximum feed depth for roughing and finishing is specified with Q and H respectively, when the feed amount cannot be divisible by it, the last cut will be smaller than Q or H;
- (4) The spindle must be commanded to rotate before entering the cycle;

### 16.4.9 Milling Cycle Alarm Diagnosis



#### Function and Purpose

When the milling canned cycle is executed, if the system recognizes an error, an alarm will be generated and the execution of the current cycle will be interrupted. It will continue after modified by user.

This section lists the possible alarms that the system may generate during the execution of the milling cycle, and analyzes the cause of the alarms. User can modify the program based on that before continuing to execute the cycle.



#### Description

Alarm No.	Message	Source	Cause and comments
800	No tool radius defined	G181 G182 G183 G184 G185 G186 G188 G189	No tool radius V is specified before entering cycle.
801	No reference level defined	G181 G182 G183 G184 G185 G186 G188 G189	If R is not specified in this block, and the R modal value cannot be detected by the cycle, this alarm will be generated. This parameter is required to specify the slot depth in increments or when returning to the R level at the end of the cycle, so this parameter should be defined.
802	No slot bottom position defined	G181 G182 G183 G184 G185 G186 G188 G189	The position of slot bottom needs to be defined, otherwise the slot depth cannot be determined in the cycle.
803	Number of slots defined as zero	G181 G182 G183	If the number of slots is specified as 0, an alarm will be generated. The number of slots should be specified

			as an integer larger than 0.
804	Slot length defined too small	G182	The slot length must be greater than the slot width, otherwise this alarm will be generated.
805	Tool radius too large	G181 G182 G183 G184 G185 G186 G188 G189	If the diameter of the milling cutter exceeds the slot length defined by the cycle, this alarm will be generated. User can use a milling cutter with a smaller radius to complete the milling.
806	No center position defined	G181 G182 G183	If the arc center position is not explained in the block, and the cycle fails to detect the modal position, this alarm will be generated.
807	No radius defined	G181 G182 G183	If there is no arc radius modal value, the radius value must be specified in this row, otherwise this alarm will be generated.
808	Interference between slots	G181 G182 G183	Considering the angle between the milling cutter radius and the slots, there may be interference between the machined slots, which will affect the contour shape of the slot. The interference check will be performed before the cycle, and users will be prompted in time.
809	Number of slots conflicts with angle increment defined	G181 G182 G183	Due to the improper definition of the number of slots and the angle between slots, this alarm will be generated if the number of slots ×angle between slots> 360 degrees.
810	Max. feed depth defined too large	G181 G182 G183 G184 G185 G186 G188 G189	The alarm is generated when the maximum feed depth Q is greater than the slot depth. If this alarm occurs, reduce Q.
811	Command spindle to rotate before entering	G181 G182	Before the cycle is executed, the current spindle status is detected.

	cycle	G183 G184 G185 G186 G188 G189	This alarm will be generated if the spindle is not rotating.
812	Center position not defined for circular pocket or boss	G184 G185 G188 G189	If the position of circular pocket center or boss center is not defined, this alarm will be generated.
813	Radius position not defined for circular pocket or boss	G185 G189	If the radius of round pocket or boss is not defined, this alarm will be generated.
814	Finishing allowance of edge too large	G182 G183 G184 G185 G188 G189	The reserved edge finishing allowance is too large to complete the machining. Please reduce the allowance.
815	Finishing allowance of bottom too large	G182 G183 G184 G185 G186 G188 G189	The reserved finishing allowance of edge is too large to complete the machining. Please reduce the allowance.
816	Max. feed depth in finishing defined too large	G182 G183 G184 G185 G186 G188 G189	When the maximum feed depth H is larger than the slot depth, this alarm is generated, then reduce H.
819	Size of workpiece to be machined not defined	G186	For G186, the end face size of the workpiece to be processed must be specified, such as the length and the width, otherwise this alarm will be issued.
820	No milling starting position defined	G186	It is necessary to specify the starting point of milling for face milling cycle G186, which is generally the lower left corner of the workpiece in machining plane. If it is not specified,

			this alarm will be generated.
821	Safety margin defined too small	G186	A safety margin must be specified for the face milling cycle for a good milling effect, and this value is not less than the milling tool radius.
822	Milling width defined too large in roughing	G186	The milling width is not larger than tool diameter in roughing for face milling cycle G186.
823	Milling width defined too large in finishing	G186	The milling width is not larger than tool diameter in finishing for face milling cycle G186.
824	No blank size defined for boss	G188 G189	For round boss G189 or rectangular boss G188, the blank size needs to be defined, otherwise this alarm will be generated.
826	No length or width defined for pocket or boss	G181 G182 G183 G184 G188	If the pocket length or width is not specified in this block, and the modal value of the pocket length is not detected by the cycle, this alarm will be generated.
829	Corner radius defined too large for rectangular pocket and boss	G184 G188	The circular corner can be defined for the rectangular pocket or rectangular boss cycle, but it cannot be greater than the half of the wide side, otherwise this alarm will be generated.
830	Blank size defined smaller than machining size	G188 G189	For round boss G189 or rectangular boss G188, the blank size must be larger than the contour size, otherwise this alarm will be generated.
873	Tool radius cannot be zero	G181 G182 G183 G184 G185 G186 G188 G189	V represents the compensation number in the tool compensation table. The value filled in the compensation number is the tool radius. This value cannot be zero, otherwise this alarm will be generated.
874	No finishing allowance defined	G182 G183 G184 G185	During finishing machining, the finishing allowance of pocket wall and the finishing allowance of pocket bottom cannot be unspecified or

		G186 G188 G189	specified as 0 at the same time, otherwise this alarm will be generated.
817	Milling direction definition error	G182 G183 G184 G185 G186 G188 G189	C sets a value other than 0, 1, 2, and 3. If a milling direction not supported by the system is defined, this alarm will be issued.
818	Machining type definition error	G182 G183 G184 G185 G186 G188 G189	D sets a value other than 1 and 2. If a milling direction not supported by the system is defined, this alarm will be issued.

# 17 Programming Simplifying Function (M)

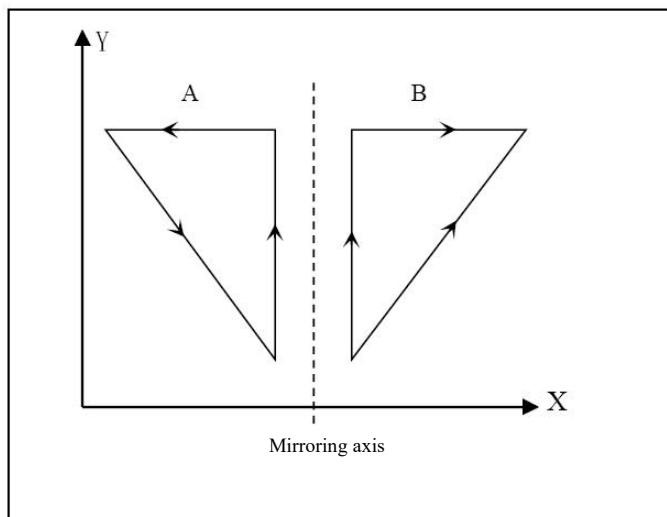
## 17.1 Mirroring Function (G24, G25)



### Function and Purpose

When editing a symmetrical shape processing program, user only needs to program any one side of the shape for the processing of the other side of the shape, which can save the time required for programming. At this time, the most effective function is the mirroring function.

For example, as shown in the figure below, when there is a program for processing the shape A on the left, the shape B that is symmetrical to the A can be completed on the right by mirroring the program.



### Command Format

G24 IP\_ ; Establish mirroring

..... Tool path programming commands

G25 IP0; Cancel mirroring

Parameter	Meaning
IP	Mirroring axis position



### Description

- (1) In G24, the mirroring axis and mirroring enter coordinates are specified in absolute or incremental programming.

(2) In G24, users can specify axisymmetric mirroring and point-symmetric mirroring.

- a) Axisymmetric mirroring
- b) (G17/G18/G19) G24  $\alpha_-/\beta_-$ ;
- c) ..... ;
- d) G25;

Parameter	Meaning
G17/G18/G19:	Plane selection for mirroring, this plane should include programmed tool path
G24 $\alpha_-/\beta_-$ :	Symmetry axis of mirroring. Only one of $\alpha_-$ and $\beta_-$ can be specified. $\alpha_-$ represents the first axis of the selected plane, and $\beta_-$ represents the second axis of the selected plane. If an axis on a non-selected plane is specified, the system alarms.
.....:	Programmed tool path commands
G25 $\alpha_0/\beta_0$ :	Cancel mirroring. When running the program, only write G25, or $\alpha$ and $\beta$ after G25 are specified as any values, the mirroring function can be cancelled.

Point symmetry mirroring

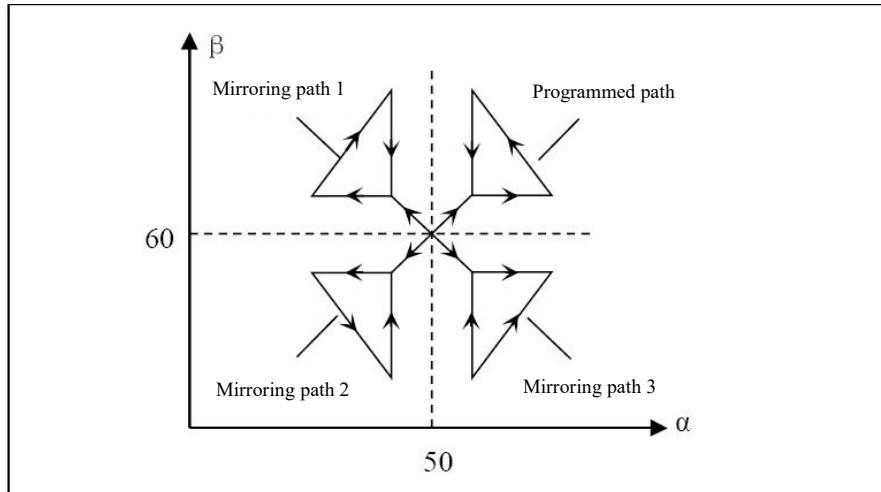
(G17/G18/G19) G24  $\alpha_- \beta_-$ ;

..... ;

G25;

Parameter	Meaning
G17/G18/G19:	Plane selection for mirroring, this plane should include the programmed tool path
G24 $\alpha_- \beta_-$ :	Symmetry axis of mirroring. When $\alpha_-$ or $\beta_-$ is omitted, the current tool position is defaulted. If an axis on a non-selected plane is specified, the system alarms.
.....:	Programmed tool path commands
G25 $\alpha_0 \beta_0$ :	Cancel mirroring. When running the program, only write G25, or $\alpha$ and $\beta$ after G25 are specified as any values, the mirroring function can be cancelled.

The diagram of axisymmetric and point-symmetric mirroring is as follows:



A mirror image path 1 and the programmed path are axis-symmetrical, the axis of symmetry is  $\alpha=50$ ;

B mirror image path 2 and the programmed path are point-symmetrical, and the symmetrical point is  $(50, 60)$ ;

C mirror image path 3 and the programmed path are axisymmetric, and the symmetry axis is  $\beta=60$ ;

(3) By specifying G24  $\alpha_{\_}$ , the  $\beta$ -axis symmetry mirror can be established.

When the  $\beta$ -axis mirror image is established, specify G25  $\alpha_0$  to cancel the  $\beta$ -axis mirror image. For example, when G24 X0 Y0 is specified to establish the point-symmetric mirroring, user can cancel the Y-axis symmetrical mirroring and only specify the X-axis symmetrical mirroring by specifying G25 X0.

(4) When only mirroring is specified on the first axis of the specified plane, the rotation direction and compensation direction in arc, tool radius compensation, and coordinate rotation are all reversed.

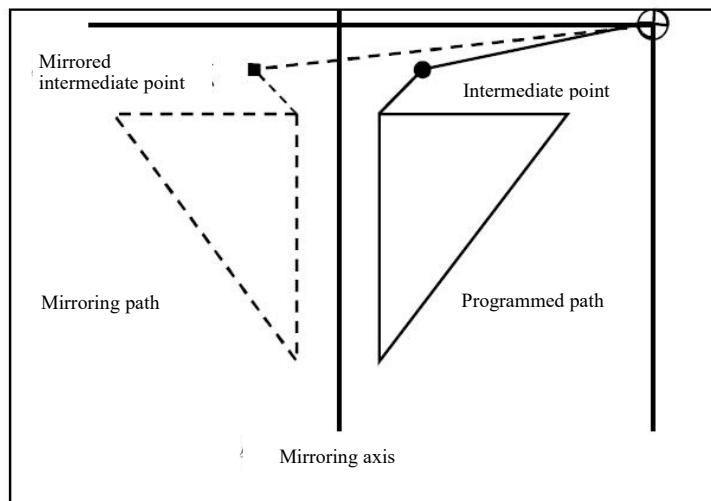
(5) The mirror image center of the local coordinate system will move due to the preset coordinate system and the change of the workpiece coordinate.

(6) G24 block and G25 block must be specified separately.

(7) G24 is a modal command, can be canceled by G25 after mirroring function is finished.

(8) When no axis follows G25, all mirroring is canceled.

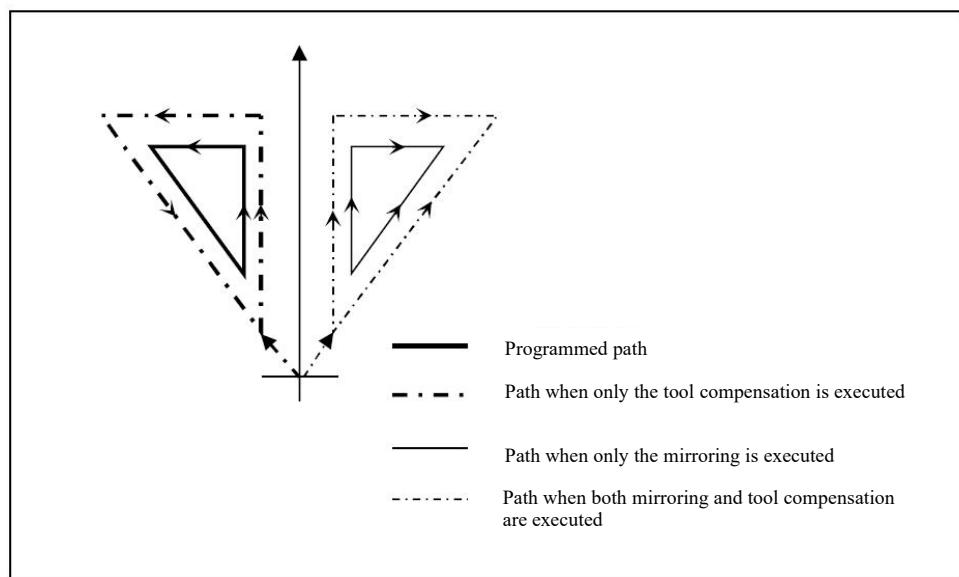
(9) When the reference point return command (G28, G30) is executed in mirror image, the mirror image is valid in the motion before the intermediate point is reached, so the mirror image is not executed in the motion from the intermediate point to the reference point.



(10) When the return from origin command (G29) is specified in the mirroring, the mirroring is performed to the intermediate point.

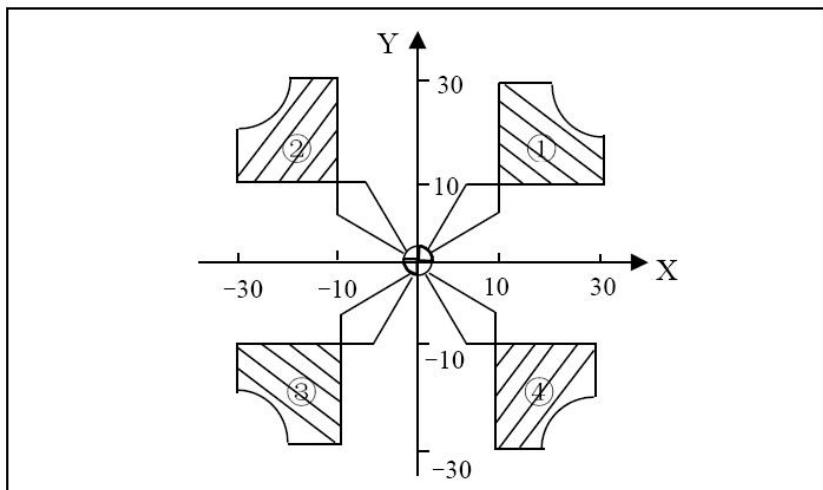
(11) The mirror image is not executed to G53.

(12) The mirror image is processed after the tool radius compensation (G41, G42) is executed, so the cutting path as shown in the figure below is performed.



### Example

Use the mirror image function to program the contour as shown in the figure: set the starting point of the tool to be 100mm from the upper surface of the workpiece, and the depth of cut is 5mm.



```

%3331      ; Main program
G92 X0 Y0 Z100
G91 G17 M03 S600
M98 P100   ; Machine ①
G24 X0     ; Y-axis mirror image, the mirroring position is X=0
M98 P100   ; Machine ②
G24 Y0     ; X, Y axis mirror image, the mirroring position is (0, 0)
M98 P100   ; Machine ③
G25 X0     ; X-axis mirroring continues to be effective, cancel Y-axis mirroring
M98 P100   ; Machine ④
G25 X0 Y0  ; Cancel mirroring
M30
%100       ; Subprogram (processing program of figure ①)
N100 G41 G00 X10 Y4 D01
N120 G43 Z10 H01
N130 G01 G90 Z-3 F300
N140 G91 Y26
N150 X10
N160 G03 X10 Y-10 I10 J0
N170 G01 Y-10
N180 X-25
N185 G00 Z10
N190 G90 G49 G00 Z100
N200 G40 X0 Y0
N210 M99

```

## 17.2 Scaling Function (G50, G51)



### Function and Purpose

When executing the scaling function, the programmed path is enlarged or reduced based on the given scaling factor.



### Command Format

G51 IP\_ P\_ ; Start scaling

.....

G50 ; Cancel scaling

Parameter	Meaning
IP	Specify the coordinates of the scaling center point. If it is not specified, specify the current point as the scaling center point. This command always specifies the absolute position of the scaling center in the workpiece coordinate system.
P	Specify the scaling factor of each axis. All axes are scaled by this factor.



### Description

#### (1) Designation of scaling axis, scaling center and magnification

After issuing the G51 command, the scaling mode is entered. The G51 command only specifies the scaling axis, scaling center and magnification and doesn't specify the movement.

Although executing the G51 command will enter the scaling mode, in fact the effective axis for scaling is only the axis for which the scaling center is set.

##### (a) Scaling center

The center of the scaling is specified based on the absolute/incremental mode (G90/G91). In the G51 block, whether it is in incremental or absolute mode, the center of the scaling refers to the absolute position in the workpiece coordinate system.

Even if the current position is the center, it must be specified.

The effective axis for scaling is limited to the axis for which the scaling center is specified.

##### (b) Scaling magnification

The scaling magnification is specified with the address P.

The magnification for scaling only can be specified after G51.

Scaling magnification ranges from 0.000001 to 99999999999

When the scaling magnification is not specified, 1 is specified by default.

(c) A program error will occur in the following situations.

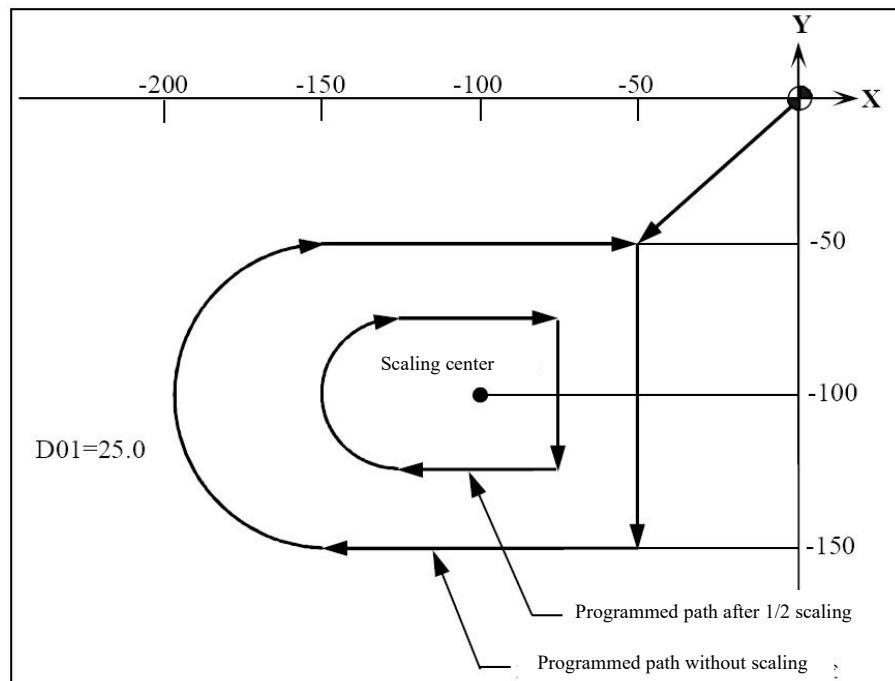
The scaling magnification exceeds the upper limit of the magnification command range.

(2) Scaling is cancelled. After specifying G50, the scaling is cancelled.



### Example

Example 1: Use the scaling function to create the program with 1/2 scaling and the program without scaling in the figure below.



%1234

```
G92 X0 Y0 Z0;  
G90 G51 X-100. Y-100. P0.5;  
G00 G43 Z-200. H02;  
G41 X-50. Y-50. D01;  
G01 Z-250. F1000;  
Y-150. F200;  
X-150.;  
G02 Y-50. J50.;  
G01 X-50.;
```

```

G00 G49 Z0;
G40 G50 X0 Y0;
G90 G51 X-100. Y-100. P1;
G00 G43 Z-200. H02;
G41 X-50. Y-50. D01;
G01 Z-250. F1000;
Y-150. F200;
X-150.;

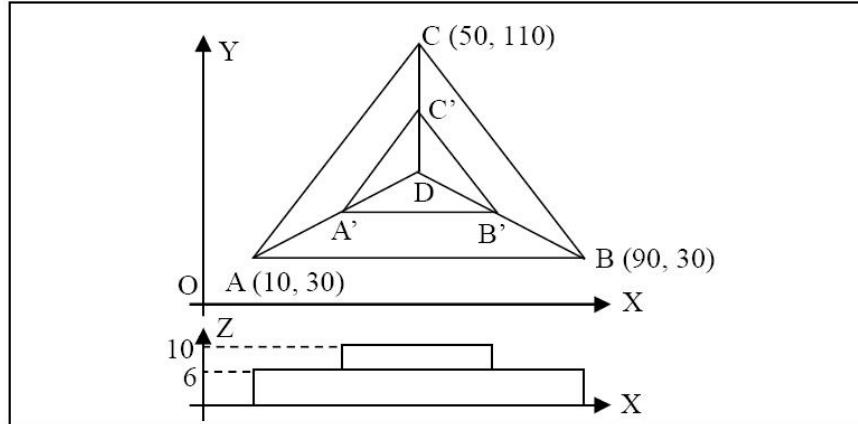
G02 Y-50. J50.;

G01 X-50.;

G00 G49 Z0;
G40 G50 X0 Y0;
M30;

```

Example 2: Use the scaling function to create the program of the contour as shown in the figure below: The vertices of the triangle ABC are A (10, 30), B (90, 30), C (50, 110), and the triangle A'B'C' is the zoomed one, where the scaling center is D (50, 50), the scaling factor is 0.5 times, and the starting point of the tool is 50mm from the upper surface of the workpiece.



```

%3332 ; Main program
G92 X0 Y0 Z60
G17 M03 S600 F300
G43 G00 Z14 H01
X110 Y0
#51=0
M98 P100 ; Machine triangle ABC
#51=6
G51 X50 Y50 P0.5 ; Scaling center (50,50), scaling factor 0.5
M98 P100 ; Machine triangle A'B'C'
G50 ; Cancel scaling
G49 Z60
G00 X0 Y0
M30
%100 ; Subprogram (the processing program of triangle ABC)
N100 G41 G00 Y30 D01
N120 Z[#51]
N150 G01 X10
N160 X50 Y110
N170 G91 X40 Y-80
N180 G90 Z[#51]
N200 G40 G00 X110 Y0
N210 M99

```



### Note

- (1) When there is tool compensation, perform scaling first, and then tool radius compensation and tool length compensation. The scaling does not change the tool radius compensation value and tool length compensation value.
- (2) Scaling is only valid for traverse commands in auto mode. It is invalid for the traverse in JOG. When the movement is in JOG mode, the breakpoint must be returned first.
- (3) Scaling is valid to the axes of which X, Y, Z are specified, and invalid to the axes of which X, Y, Z are not specified.
- (4) The G51 block must be specified separately.

- (5) If M02 or M03 command is specified in scaling mode, or NC reset is executed, the scaling is canceled.
- (6) When the coordinate system is offset (G92, G52 commands) or switched in the scaling mode, then the scaling center will be offset based on the coordinate system offset amount.
- (7) When G28, G30, or G29 command is specified in scaling mode, the scaling is not canceled.
- (8) When the G51 command is issued in the scaling mode, the axis of the newly-specified center becomes the effective scaling axis. The magnification is based on the newly specified G51.
- (9) When G60 (unidirectional positioning) is issued in scaling mode, neither the final positioning point nor the crawling amount is scaled.
- (10) When the graphics rotation is specified in the scaling mode, the graphics rotation center and the radius will be scaled.
- (11) If the scaling command is issued in the graphics rotation subprogram, the radius of the graphics rotation is not scaled, but only the shape determined by the subprogram is scaled.

### 17.3 Rotation Transformation (G68, G69)



#### Function and Purpose

The rotation transformation is used to rotate the programmed processing path around the rotation center by a specified angle. If the shape of the workpiece is composed of many identical graphics, the graphics unit can be compiled into a subprogram which is then called by the rotation transformation command of the main program.



#### Command Format

G17/G18/G19; Select a rotation plane  
 G68 IP\_ P\_ ; Establish rotation transformation  
 .....  
 G69; Cancel rotation transformation

Parameter	Meaning
IP	To specify coordinates of the rotation center. If it is not specified, it is the current point of the tool. The absolute position in the workpiece coordinate system whether it is in absolute or incremental mode
P	Rotation angle (unit: degree), counterclockwise rotation indicates a positive value, clockwise rotation indicates a negative value



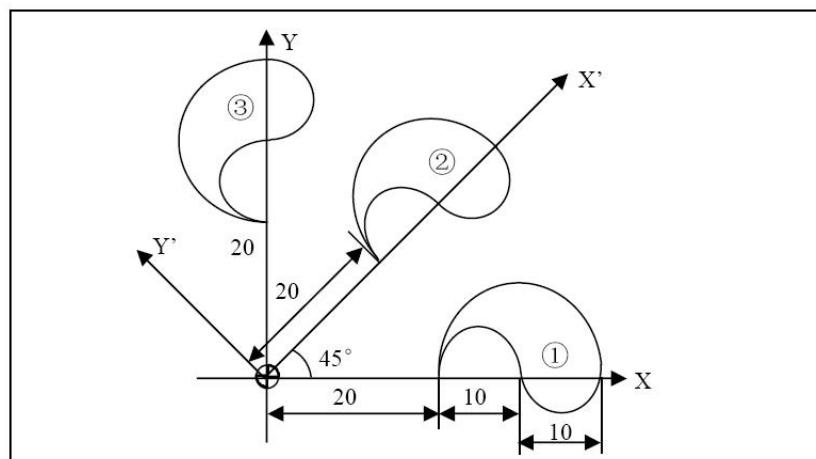
## Description

- (1) The coordinate of the rotation center are always specified as an absolute value. Even if it is specified as an incremental address, it will not be treated as an incremental value. Regardless of the rotation angle specified in G90 or G91, P is always the absolute value of the angle of the first axis in positive direction in the specified reference plane.
- (2) If the coordinate of the rotation center is omitted, the position where the G68 command is located will become the rotation center.
- (3) The value of rotation angle P ranges from -360 to 360. The value is positive for counterclockwise direction, and negative for clockwise direction. When the angle command exceeds 360 degrees, the system will issue that the parameter is illegal.
- (4) The rotation angle P is a modal value and will not change until a new angle is specified next time. The rotation angle can be omitted. If the rotation angle is omitted when G68 is specified for the first time, P will be regarded as 0. If the rotation angle is omitted when G68 is not specified for the first time, P will inherit the previous rotation angle.
- (5) Use G69 to cancel it after the rotation transformation is completed. If M02 or M30 is specified in the coordinate rotation mode or the reset button is pressed, the coordinate rotation will be cancelled.
- (6) In coordinate rotation mode, G68 is not displayed on the modal information screen, and G69 is not displayed after the mode is cancelled.
- (7) The coordinate rotation function is valid in both auto and single-block working modes.



## Example

Use the rotation function to program the contour as shown in the figure: the starting point of the tool is 50mm from the upper surface of the workpiece, and the depth of cut is 5mm.



```

%3333      ; Main program
N10 G92 X0 Y0 Z50
N15 G90 G17 M03 S600
N20 G43 Z-5 H02
N25 M98 P200      ; Machine ①
N30 G68 X0 Y0 P45      ; Rotate 45°
N40 M98 P200      ; Machine ②
N60 G68 X0 Y0 P90      ; Rotate 90°
N70 M98 P200      ; Machine ③
N20 G49 Z50
N80 G69 M05 M30      ; Cancel rotation
%200              ; Subprogram (Program of graphic ①)
G41 G01 X20 Y-5 D02 F300
N105 Y0
N110 G02 X40 I10
N120 X30 I-5
N130 G03 X20 I-5
N140 G00 Y-6
N145 G40 X0 Y0
N150 M99

```



### Note

- (1) The traverse command following G68 and G69 must be an absolute value command.
- (2) In coordinate rotation mode, G codes related to the reference point (G28, G29, G30, etc.) and commands used to change the coordinate system (G52, G54 to G59, G54X, G92, etc.) cannot be specified. Otherwise, the coordinate rotation command needs to be cancelled first.
- (3) G68 and G69 are specified in the tool radius compensation mode, and the rotation plane must be consistent with the tool radius compensation plane.
- (4) If the coordinate rotation command is designated without the coordinate rotation specifications, it will be executed according to the detailed commands (2) and (3).
- (5) The G68 block must be specified separately.
- (6) Tool radius compensation, tool length compensation, tool offset and other compensation operations are operated after the coordinate rotation is performed. When rotation and scaling are needed, users should enable the rotation function first and then the scaling function, otherwise system will prompt "nesting order change error".

# 18 User Macro and Subprogram Call

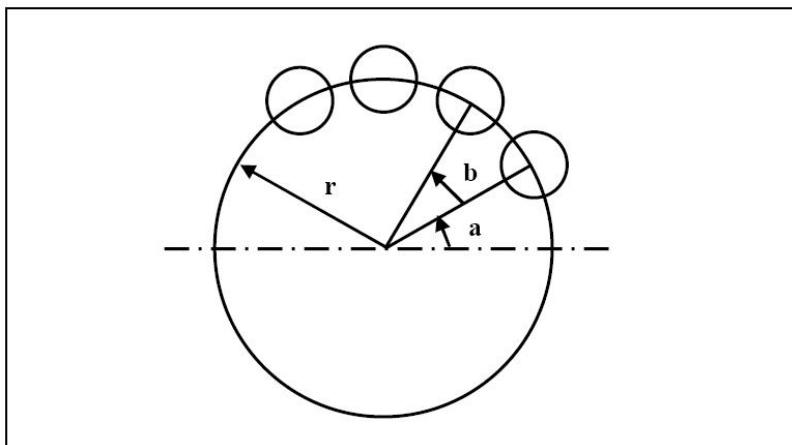
## 18.1 User Macro Program



### Function and Purpose

A user macro program is a program with specific control functions created by variables, logic operations, and control commands.

User macro program is a programming method similar to high-level language, which allows users to use variables, logic operations and conditional transfer and other control commands, making it more convenient to create the same program than traditional methods. At the same time, some same processing operations can be programmed into general programs with macro programs for users to call in cycles, as shown in the figure below for bolt hole processing.



After storing the bolt hole machining program in the above figure created by the macro program in the CNC, user can call this program to machine the bolt hole at any time, and just fill in the bolt hole attributes such as the number of holes and deviation angle when calling. This is as if a bolt hole function has been added to the CNC.

### 18.1.1 Variable



### Function and Purpose

A certain address in the program is not directly specified with a numerical value, but with a variable. When the program is running, the variable is assigned based on a predetermined situation to improve the generality of the program.

In the macro program, user can use variables in the parameters of the axis movement distance, such as G01 X[#54]F1000, at this time #54 is the variable, and user can perform some operations such as assignment before calling.



### Command Format

#○○○=□□□□

#○○○=[Expression]

Variable representation	Description	Example
#A	A is composed of numbers from 0 to 9	#21
#B (expression)	Value A	#23
	Expression Operation command Expression	#1+#2
	Function [expression]	COS[#3]

### Note

It is not allowed to use variable names directly in user macro programs. Variables are designated by the variable symbol (#) and the following variable number.



### Description

### Variable type

According to the purpose of variables, variables can be divided into local variables, global variables, and system variables. In addition, the access attributes of different variables are also different. Some variables are read-only, and some are readable and writable.

### Constant

Some constants with constant values are defined in the system for users to use. The attributes of these constants are read-only.

PI: Pi  $\pi$

TRUE: True, used for conditional judgment, indicating that the condition is true

FALSE: False, used for conditional judgment, indicating that the condition is not true

### Note

When the constant PI is used, due to the calculation error, it needs to be dealt with at the time of ending conditions, otherwise an abnormal situation will occur.

### Local Variable

Local variables refer to the variables used in the macro program. The local variable #i (i is a value, such as #10) used in macro program A is called in the current state, which is different with the #i used in macro program A called in other states. Therefore, when multiple levels of macros are called, such as calling macro B from macro A, if the local variable used in macro A is incorrectly used in macro B, the value will be destroyed.

The system provides #0 to #49 as current local variables, and their access attributes are readable and writable.

The system provides 6 levels of nesting. The corresponding local variables of each level are as

follows. The access attributes of these local variables are readable:

- #200～#249 Level 0 local variable
- #250～#299 Level 1 local variable
- #300～#349 Level 2 local variable
- #350～#399 Level 3 local variable
- #400～#449 Level 4 local variable
- #450～#499 Level 5 local variable

### Global variable

Different from local variables, global variables are commonly used between subprograms and macro programs, and their values remain unchanged. That is, #i used in one macro is the same as #i used in other macros. In addition, the public variable #i calculated by a certain macro can be used in other macros.

The system provides #50 to #199 as global variables, and their access attributes are readable and writable.

### System variable

System variables are variables whose purposes are fixed in the system. There are 3 types of attributes for the system variables: read-only, write-only, and read/write. The attributes varies with system variables.

### Undefined variable

The value of variables not defined in the system defaults to 0

Example: %1234  
G54  
G90G01 X10Y10F1000  
X[#1]Y40 ; The coordinate value of the workpiece coordinate system is (0,  
40)  
M30

### User-defined variable

User-defined variable: 500 to 999 50000 to 54999		
#500 - #999	R/W	Global variable
#50000 - #54999	R/W	Global variable

### Note

When machine user parameter 010091 "#500 - #999 user macro variable enable" is 1, #500 - #999 are valid user-defined variables. User-defined variables are saved after power off.

"USERMACCFG.XML" needs to be configured (configured based on usage requirements, too many variables configured will occupy too much system storage space), and the configured file is correctly imported into the system in the "Data Management-User Macro Variable Name" interface.

#### **USERMACCFG.XML (the file comes from the internal CNC system):**

```
<?xml version="1.0" encoding="GB2312"?><USERMACCFG version="1.0">
<item no="500" name="User macro 1" type="FLOAT" />
<item no="501" name="User macro 2" type="FLOAT" />
<item no="502" name="User macro 3" type="FLOAT" />
<item no="503" name="User macro 4" type="FLOAT" />
<item no="504" name="User macro 5" type="FLOAT" />
<item no="505" name="User macro 6" type="FLOAT" />
...
<item no="999" name="User macro 500" type="FLOAT" />

<!--Relevant user macro-->
<item no = "50000" name = "User macro" type= "INT"></item>
<item no = "50001" name = "User macro" type= "INT"></item>
<item no = "50002" name = "User macro" type= "INT"></item>
<item no = "50003" name = "User macro" type= "INT"></item>
<item no = "50004" name = "User macro" type= "INT"></item>
<item no = "50005" name = "User macro" type= "INT"></item>
...
<item no = "50100" name = "User macro" type= "INT"></item>
</USERMACCFG>
```

#### **Note**

The numeric format in type needs to be configured correctly (FLOAT represents the data type of floating point, and INT represents the data type of integer), otherwise the macro program cannot run normally.

#### **Channel-related variables**

Variable number	Attribute	Description
Channel parameter		
Channel 00: (00000 to 03999)		
#0-#49	R/W	Current local variable
#50-#199		Reserved
#200-#249	R	Level 0 local variable
#250-299	R	Level 1 local variable
#300-#349	R	Level 2 local variable
#350-#399	R	Level 3 local variable
#400-#449	R	Level 4 local variable
#450-#499	R	Level 5 local variable

#1000-#1008	R	Machine position of current channel axis (9-axis)
#1009	R	Diameter programming of lathe
#1010-#1018	R	Programmed machine position of current channel axis (9-axis)
#1019		Reserved
#1020-#1028	R	Programmed workpiece position of current channel axis (9-axis)
#1029		Reserved
#1030-#1038	R	Workpiece origin of current channel axis (9-axis)
#1039	R	Coordinate system
#1040-#1048	R/W	G54 origin of current channel axis (9-axis)
#1049	R	G54 axis mask
#1050-#1058	R/W	G55 origin of current channel axis (9-axis)
#1059	R	G55 axis mask
#1060-#1068	R/W	G56 origin of current channel axis (9-axis)
#1069	R	G56 axis mask
#1070-#1078	R/W	G57 origin of current channel axis (9-axis)
#1079	R	G57 axis mask
#1080-#1088	R/W	G58 origin of current channel axis (9-axis)
#1089	R	G58 axis mask
#1090-#1098	R/W	G59 origin of current channel axis (9-axis)
#1099	R	G59 axis mask
#1100-#1108	R	G92 origin of current channel axis (9-axis)
#1109	R	G92 axis mask
#1110-#1118	R	Break-off position of current channel axis (9-axis)
#1119	R	Breakpoint axis mark
#1120-#1149	R/W	Modal variable of canned cycle
#1150-#1189	R	Groups 0 to 39 modal of G code
#1190	R	User-defined input
#1191	R	User-defined output
#1192-#1199		Reserved
#1200-#1209	R	AD input
#1210-#1219	R	DA output
#1220	R	M3/4/5
#1221	R	G94 F value
#1222	R	Tapping F value
#1223-#1226	R	Tapping spindle speed
#1227	R	Valid radius compensation D number
#1228	R	Valid length compensation H number
#1229	R	cmd_feed
#1300-#1308	R	Relative zero of current channel axis (9-axis)
#1309		Reserved
#1310-#1318	R	Programmed machine position of current channel

		axis (9-axis)
#1319		Reserved
#1320-#1328	R	G28 intermediate point
#1329	R	G28 axis mask
#1330-#1338	R	G52 origin
#1339		Reserved
#1340-#1349	R	G31 measurement machine command
#1350-#1359		Reserved
#1360-#1369	R	G31 measurement machine actual
#1370-#1399		Reserved
#1400-#1408	R/W	G54 offset
#1409		Reserved
#1410-#1418	R/W	G55 offset
#1419		Reserved
#1420-#1428	R/W	G56 offset
#1429		Reserved
#1430~#1438	R/W	G57 offset
#1439		Reserved
#1440-#1448	R/W	G58 offset
#1449		Reserved
#1450-#1458	R/W	G59 offset
#1459-#3999		Reserved

### Note

The corresponding variables of the origin and offset of the workpiece coordinate system G54 - G59 in the current channel are both readable and writable, and are saved after power off.

### Variables related to the extended coordinate system

Variable number	Attribute	Description
Channel variable		
Channel 00: (40100 to 40639)		
#40100-#40108	R/W	G54.1P1
#40109-#40117	R/W	G54.1P2
#40118-#40126	R/W	G54.1P3
#40127-#40135	R/W	G54.1P4
#40136-#40144	R/W	G54.1P5
#40145-#40153	R/W	G54.1P6
#40154-#40162	R/W	G54.1P7
#40163-#40151	R/W	G54.1P8
#40172-#40180	R/W	G54.1P9
#40181-#40189	R/W	G54.1P10
#40190-#40198	R/W	G54.1P11
#40199-#40207	R/W	G54.1P12

#40208-#40216	R/W	G54.1P13
#40217-#40225	R/W	G54.1P14
#40226-#40234	R/W	G54.1P15
#40235-#40243	R/W	G54.1P16
#40244-#40252	R/W	G54.1P17
#40253-#40251	R/W	G54.1P18
#40262-#40270	R/W	G54.1P19
#40271-#40279	R/W	G54.1P20
#40280-#40288	R/W	G54.1P21
#40289-#40297	R/W	G54.1P22
#40298-#40306	R/W	G54.1P23
#40307-#40315	R/W	G54.1P24
#40316-#40324	R/W	G54.1P25
#40325-#40333	R/W	G54.1P26
#40334-#40342	R/W	G54.1P27
#40343-#40351	R/W	G54.1P28
#40352-#40360	R/W	G54.1P29
#40361-#40369	R/W	G54.1P30
#40370-#40378	R/W	G54.1P31
#40379-#40387	R/W	G54.1P32
#40388-#40396	R/W	G54.1P33
#40397-#40405	R/W	G54.1P34
#40406-#40414	R/W	G54.1P35
#40415-#40423	R/W	G54.1P36
#40424-#40432	R/W	G54.1P37
#40433-#40441	R/W	G54.1P38
#40442-#40450	R/W	G54.1P39
#40451-#40459	R/W	G54.1P40
#40460-#40468	R/W	G54.1P41
#40469-#40477	R/W	G54.1P42
#40478-#40486	R/W	G54.1P43
#40487-#40495	R/W	G54.1P44
#40496-#40504	R/W	G54.1P45
#40505-#40513	R/W	G54.1P46
#40514-#40522	R/W	G54.1P47
#40523-#40531	R/W	G54.1P48
#40532-#40540	R/W	G54.1P49
#40541-#40549	R/W	G54.1P50
#40550-#40558	R/W	G54.1P51
#40559-#40567	R/W	G54.1P52
#40568-#40576	R/W	G54.1P53
#40577-#40585	R/W	G54.1P54
#40586-#40594	R/W	G54.1P55

#40595-#40603	R/W	G54.1P56
#40604-#40612	R/W	G54.1P57
#40613-#40621	R/W	G54.1P58
#40622-#40630	R/W	G54.1P59
#40631-#40639	R/W	G54.1P60

### Note

The variables corresponding to the origin and offset of the workpiece coordinate system G54-G59 in the current channel are both readable and writable, and are saved after power off.

### Variables related to tool

Tool data: #70000 to #89999		
Each tool occupies 200 numbers, a total of 100 tools, a total of 20,000 numbers		
Relative coding range of No. 0 tool: 000 to 199		
Relative coding range of No. 1 tool: 200 to 399		
Relative coding range of No. 99 tool: 18000 to 19999		
#70005	R	Lathe tool nose direction
#70006	R/W	Tool length of milling cutter or X offset value of lathe tool
#70007	R	Y offset of lathe tool
#70008	R	Z offset of lathe tool
#70009		Reserved
#70010		Reserved
#70011	R/W	Tool radius of milling cutter or tool nose radius of lathe tool
#70012~#70028		Reserved
#70029	R/W	Length wear of milling cutter or Z offset wear of lathe tool
#70030		Y offset wear of lathe tool
#70034	R/W	Radius wear of milling cutter or X offset wear of lathe tool
#70035~#70100		Reserved
#70101	R	Tool life monitoring type
#70104	R	Max. life of cutting time
#70105	R	Life of pre-warning cutting time
#70106	R	Life of current cutting time
#70107	R	Life of max. cutting times
#70108	R	Life of pre-warning cutting times
#70109	R	Life of actual cutting times

### Note

The variables corresponding to the tool radius compensation value, length compensation value,

and wear value can be read and written, and can be saved after power off.

#### (F) Class A command (T)

#50000	X coordinate of tool measuring instrument calibration	#50003	Z coordinate of tool measuring gauge calibration
#[50006+N]	Average measured value of No. N tool on Z	#[51006+N]	Average measured value of No. N tool on X
#54005	Tool retraction amount	#54006	Tool nose angle A
#54007	Number of finishing	#54008	(FUNAC) Q value
#54009	(F) R value	#54010	Undercut angle
#54011	Thread chamfer amount	#54012	G83 Axial drilling cycle H1/H2 Retraction mode
#54013	G83 Retraction amount	#54014	G84 Tapping axis selection
#54015	G84 H1/H2 Retraction mode	#54016	G84 Retraction amount
#54017	G88 Tapping axis selection	#54990	Measuring gauge center position X
#54992	Measuring gauge center position Z		

#### Note

The (F) Class A command (T) function in the CNC system occupies the above-mentioned user-defined macro variables. Please do not use the above-mentioned user-defined macro variables.

#### Workpiece measurement F

Variable number	Description	Variab le numbe r	Description
#600	Distance from actual center to trigger point in X positive direction	#630	Center position value in X plane or X direction
#601	Distance from actual center to trigger point in X negative direction	#631	Center position value in Y plane or Y direction
#602	Distance from actual center to trigger point in Y negative direction	#632	Z plane position value
#603	Distance from actual center to trigger point in Y positive direction	#633	Position offset value in X direction
#604	Probe length value	#634	Position offset value in Y direction
#605	Eccentricity of probe in X direction	#635	Position offset value in Z direction
#606	Eccentricity of probe in Y direction	#636	Dimension value: width/diameter
#607	Trigger radius of probe in X direction	#637	Dimension offset value
#608	Trigger radius of probe in Y direction	#638	Angle value (unit: degree)

#609	Second measurement speed of probe		
------	-----------------------------------	--	--

### Note

The workpiece measurement function in the CNC system occupies the above-mentioned user-defined macro variables. If the debugger uses other user-defined macro variables when debugging the workpiece measurement function, instead of the user-defined macro variables listed in the above table, the debugger will replace or add them to the table, and inform and provide it to the user. Please do not use the above user-defined macro variables.

### Tool measurement

Variable number	Description	Variable number	Description
#642	Laser beam width of tool setter	#649	2nd measurement speed in tool setting
#643	Tool setter laser on X	#650	Center position of tool setter on X
#644	Tool setter on Y	#651	Center position of tool setter on Y
#645	Height difference 1 (laser height-base height)	#652	Absolute safety height of tool setter
#646	Height difference 2 (base height-workpiece height)	#653	Max. allowable value for tool break detection
#647	Rapid traverse speed in tool setting	#654	Tool number of datum tool
#648	1st measurement speed in tool setting	#660	Datum tool length—relative tool setter surface
		#661-#676	No.1 to 16 tools

### Note

The workpiece measurement function in the CNC system occupies the above-mentioned user-defined macro variables. If the debugger uses other user-defined macro variables when debugging the workpiece measurement function, instead of the user-defined macro variables listed in the above table, the debugger will replace or add them to the table, and inform and provide it to users. Please do not use the above user-defined macro variables.

### 18.1.2 Operation Command



#### Function and Purpose

Arithmetic operators, functions and other operations can be flexibly used in macro programs, which is very convenient to realize complex programming requirements. As shown in the table below.

Operation type	Operation command	Meaning
Arithmetic	$#i = #i + #j$	Addition, #i plus #j

operation	$#i = #i - #j$	Subtraction, #i minus #j
	$#i = #i * #j$	Multiplication, #i times #j
	$#i = #i / #j$	Division, #i divided by #j
Conditional operation	$#i \text{ EQ } #j$	(=) Equal to
	$#i \text{ NE } #j$	(≠) Not equal to
	$#i \text{ GT } #j$	(>) Larger than
	$#i \text{ GE } #j$	(≥) Larger than or equal to
	$#i \text{ LT } #j$	(<) Smaller than
	$#i \text{ LE } #j$	(≤) Smaller than or equal to
Logic operation	$#i = #i \& #j$	Logic and
	$#i = #i   #j$	Logic or
	$#i = \sim #i$	Logic not
Function	$#i = \text{SIN}[#i]$	Sine (unit: radians)
	$#i = \text{ASIN}[#i]$	Arc sine
	$#i = \text{COS}[#i]$	Cosine (unit: radians)
	$#i = \text{ACOS}[#i]$	Arc cosine
	$#i = \text{TAN}[#i]$	Tangent (unit: radians)
	$#i = \text{ATAN}[#i]$	Arc tangent
	$#i = \text{ABS}[#i]$	Absolute value
	$#i = \text{INT}[#i]$	Round (round down)
	$#i = \text{SIGN}[#i]$	Sign
	$#i = \text{SQRT}[#i]$	Square root
	$#i = \#A \text{ POW}[#i]$	#A to the #i power
	$#i = \text{LOG}[#i]$	Log
	$#i = \text{PTM}[#i]$	Pulse revolutions mm
	$#i = \text{PTD}[#i]$	Pulse revolution degree
	$#i = \text{RECIP}[#i]$	Reciprocal
	$#i = \text{EXP}[#i]$	Exponent, an exponent based on e (2.718)
	$#i = \text{ROUND}[#i]$	Rounding
	$#i = \text{FIX}[#i]$	Round down
	$#i = \text{FUP}[#i]$	Round up

### Note

When using trigonometric functions, pay attention to "000349 trigonometric function selection, 0: radian, 1: angle", and adjust the calculation during programming based on the parameters.



### Example

#### Example 1

A sum of 1 to 100

O1234

```

#1=0; ..... Initial value of solution
#2=1; ..... Initial value of addend
N1 WHILE[#2 LE 100] ; The addend cannot exceed 100, otherwise jump to N2 after
ENDW
#1 =#1 + #2; ..... Calculate solution
#2 =#2 +1; ..... Next addend
ENDW; ..... Transfer to N1
N2 M30; ..... Program end

```

### 18.1.3 Macro Statement



#### Function and Purpose



The following blocks are macro statements:

- 1) Blocks containing variables and operation commands;
- 2) Blocks containing conditional judgment statements or cycle statements;
- 3) Blocks containing macro program calling commands.



#### Description

#### Expression

Any calculation formulas including signs such as "+", "-", "\*", "/", "[", "]", SIN, etc. are referred to as expressions. Shown as follows

1. -#4
2. SIN[#4+#5]\*COS[[#4+#5]/#6]
- 3.

#### Note

The priority in [] is higher than +\*/-, for example [[#4+#5]/#6], first calculate [#4+#5], then calculate /#6. For expressions, in order to ensure the correctness of calculations, it is recommended to use [] for expressions, such as [-#5]. The usage such as -[#5] is not recommended.

#### Assignment statement

Transferring the value of a constant or an expression to a macro variable is referred to as an assignment, and this statement is referred to as an assignment statement, as follows:

```
#5 = 145 / SQRT[3] * COS[40*PI/180]
#6 = 123
```

## **Conditional judgement statement**

Two kinds of conditional judgement statements are supported:

IF [Conditional expression];      Type 1

.....

ENDIF

IF [Conditional expression];      Type 2

.....

ELSE

.....

ENDIF

For the conditional expressions in the IF statement, user can use simple conditional expressions or compound conditional expressions, as shown in the following example:

When #4 is equal to #5, assign 1 to #6

IF [#4 EQ #5]

#6 = 1

ENDIF

When #4 is equal to #5, and #6 is equal to #7, assign 2 to #6

IF [#4 EQ #5] AND [#6 EQ #7]

#6 = 2

ENDIF

When #4 is equal to #5, or #6 is equal to #7, assign 1 to #6, otherwise assign 2 to #6

IF [#4 EQ #5] OR [#6 EQ #7]

#6 = 1

ELSE

#6 = 2

ENDIF

## **Cycle statement**

The conditional expression is specified after WHILE. When the specified conditional expression is satisfied, execute the program from WHILE to ENDW, and execute the cycle until the conditional expression is not satisfied. When the specified conditional expression is not met, exit the WHILE cycle and execute the program blocks after ENDW.

The calling format is as follows,

WHILE [Conditional expression]

.....

ENDW

### Infinite cycle

When the conditional expression in WHILE is always true, an infinite cycle can be realized. For example,

WHILE [TRUE];or WHILE [1]

.....

ENDW

### Jump statement

GOTO \_

Use GOTO to jump to the specified label

GOTO is followed by a number. For example, with GOTO 5, the system jumps to the N5 block (N5 must be written at the beginning of the block).

### Nesting

For IF statements or WHILE statements, the system allows nested statements, but with certain restrictions, as follows:

IF statement supports up to 6 levels of nested calls, and the system will issue an error if 6 levels are exceeded;

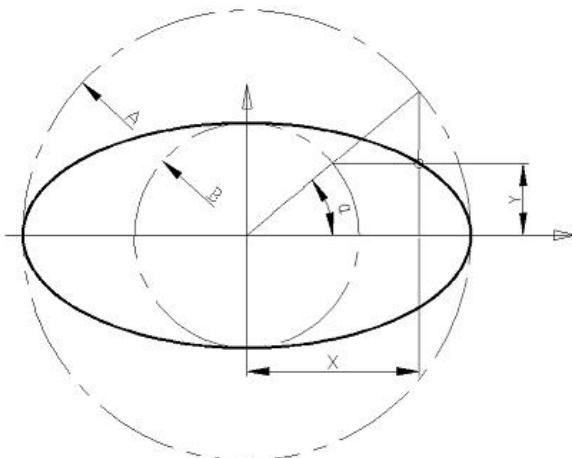
The WHILE statement supports up to 6 levels of nested calls, and the system will issue an error if 6 levels are exceeded;

The system supports mixed use of IF statement and WHILE statement, but the matching relationship between IF-ENDIF and WHILE-ENDW must be met.



### Example

Edit the ellipse processing program (ellipse expression: X=A×COSα; Y=B×SINα).



```
%0001
#0=5          ; Define the tool radius R value
#1=20         ; Define A value
#2=10         ; Define B value
#3=0          ; Define the initial value of the step angle α, unit: degree
G92 X0 Y0 Z10
M3S1000
G00 X[2*#0+#1] Y[2*#0+#2]
G01 Z0
G41 X[#1]D01F200
WHILE #3 GE [-360]
G01 X[#1*COS[#3*PI/180]] Y[#2*SIN[#3*PI/180]]
#3=#3-5
ENDW
G01X[#1]Y0
G01 G91 Y[-2*#0]
G90 G00 Z10
G40 X0 Y0
M30
```

## 18.2 Macro Program Call



### Function and Purpose

The system supports the following three ways to call the macro program:

- (1) Non-modal call: G65
- (2) Call macro program with G code
- (3) Call macro program with M command

### 18.2.1 Argument Specification Rules



### Function and Purpose

#### Argument specification rules

In the user macro program, when the argument needs to be transmitted as a local variable, the actual argument value must be specified after the address.

When the user calls the macro program, the system will copy the content of the arguments (A to Z) in the current block to the corresponding local variables #0 - #25 of the current layer of the corresponding user macro program, and also copy the absolute position of the nine axes (XYZABCUVW) of the workpiece coordinate system in the current channel to the local variables #30 - #38 in the current channel.

Macro variable	Argument name	Macro variable	Argument name	Macro variable	Argument name
#0	A	#1	B	#2	C
#3	D	#4	E	#5	F
#6	G	#7	H	#8	I
#9	J	#10	K	#11	L
#12	M	#13	N	#14	O
#15	P	#16	Q	#17	R
#18	S	#19	空	#20	U
#21	V	#22	W	#23	X
#24	Y	#25	Z	#26	Reserved
#27	Reserved	#28	Reserved	#29	Reserved
#30	X axis position	#31	Y axis position	#32	Z axis position
#33	A axis position	#34	B axis position	#35	C axis position
#36	U axis position	#37	V axis position	#38	W axis position



## Example

### Macro variable is defined and determined

**Format:** AR[#Variable number]

Return value: 0: Indicates that the variable is not defined;

90: Indicates that the variable is defined as absolute mode G90;

91: Indicates that the variable is defined as incremental mode G91

Note: The system macro AR[] is used to determine whether the macro variable is defined and defined as incremental or absolute mode;

### Example

```
%1234
```

```
G92X0Y0Z0
```

```
M98P9990X20Y30Z40
```

```
M30
```

```
%9990
```

```
IF [AR[#23] EQ 0] OR [AR[#24] EQ 0] OR [AR[#25] EQ 0]; If the X, Y or Z value is not  
defined, it returns.
```

```
M99
```

```
ENDIF
```

```
IF AR[#23] EQ 90 ; If X value is in absolute mode G90
```

```
#23=#23-#30 ; X value is converted to be in incremental mode, #30 is the absolute  
coordinate of X
```

```
ENDIF
```

```
.....
```

```
M99
```

### 18.2.2 Non-modal Call (G65)



## Function and Purpose

When G65 is specified, the user macro program specified by the parameter P is called, and at the same time, the arguments and the variables needed by the user macro program are transferred to the user macro program.



## Command Format

G65 P\_ L\_ [Argument address word];

Parameter	Meaning
P	Program number required to be called
L	Number of repeated calls

Argument address word	Data that the user needs to transfer to the macro program
-----------------------	---

### Note

G65 is a non-modal command. Users need to specify G65 in this line every time the macro program is called;



### Example

```
%0032
G54G0X0Y0Z100
M3S1000
G65P100L5X50Y50Z-30R5F200
G00X50Z10
M30
%100
G01X[#23]Y[#25]F[#5]
G81Z[#25]R[#17]F[#5]
G0Z50
M30
```

### 19.2.3 Call Macro Program with G Code



### Function and Purpose

In addition to calling macro program with non-modal code (G65), user can also call the macro program in the form of G code. Currently, the macro program in the form of G code canned cycle can only be called for canned cycle. For the specific code, please refer to the drilling and milling chapter and this chapter 17.2.3.

### Function

Call the user-defined subprogram in user canned cycle with G command.



### Command Format

G\_ :

Parameter	Meaning
G	The number of the called subroutine in USERDEF.CYC (Arabic numerals)

### Note:

- 1) The system provides G1000 to G1999 to call the user-defined subprogram in the canned

cycle with G command.

2 ) G1000 to G1999 respectively correspond to the called subprogram numbers (in Arabic numerals) %1000 to %1999 in USERDEF.CYC, for example, G1010 corresponds to the called subprogram number %1010 in USERDEF.CYC.



### Example

Add user canned cycle %1010 in USERDEF.CYC

```
%1010;  
G01 X30 Y0 F3000  
#0 = 0.0  
#1 = 30.0  
#2 = 2.1  
#3 = 3.4  
WHILE [#0 LE 360]  
G1 X[ #1 * COS[#0*PI/180]]Y[ #1 * SIN[#0*PI/180]]F3000  
#0 = #0 + 0.1  
ENDW  
G01X30Y0F3000  
G80  
M99  
  
%1244 Main program  
G92X0Y0Z50  
G01X30Y-20F3000  
M3S3000  
Z0F1000  
G1010 (Call user-defined canned cycle)  
G01Y20F3000  
G00Z50  
M30
```

#### 18.2.4 Call Macro Program with M Command



### Function and Purpose

Calling macro program with M command is realized by calling a custom subprogram with an M code.

There are two forms as described in the "Command Format" below. For the macro program calling with M98, when M98 is executed, first call the subprogram number of the internal subprogram. If there is no such subprogram number, search for the number of the external subprogram. If there is no such subprogram in both, an error will be reported; for calling macro

program with M code, can the user-defined subprogram in the canned cycle can be called.

The corresponding M code parameter settings of user-defined subprogram in canned cycle are shown in the following figure. The user-defined parameters 010360 to 010373 respectively correspond to the %1007 to %1020 subprogram in USERDEF.CYC.



### Command Format

M98 P\_;

Parameter	Meaning
P	The program number to be called in the program

Note: when M98 is specified, the user macro program following P parameter is called.

M\_;

Parameter	Meaning
M	The input value of user-defined parameter



### Example

The parameter 010360 M Code Corresponding to User Canned Cycle G1007 is set as 13, that is, the %1007 program in USERDEF.CYC can be called by the M13 command in the processing program.

%1007; Add user-defined subprogram 1007 in the USERDEF.CYC file

G59

G64G01 X30 Y0 F3000

#0 = 0.0

#1 = 30.0

WHILE [#0 LE 360]

G1 X[ #1 \* COS[#0\*PI/180]]Y[ #1 \* SIN[#0\*PI/180]]F3000

#0 = #0 + 0.1

ENDW

G01X30Y0F3000

G80

M99

%1234; Main program

G54

G1X0Y0Z50

G01X30Y-20F3000

M3S3000

Z0F1000

M13; Call the matching 1007 subprogram with M13

G01Y20F3000

G00Z50

M30

Parameter type	Paramet er	Parameter name	Value	Activation
Machine user parameter	010360	M code corresponding to user canned cycle G1007	13	Save
	010361	M code corresponding to user canned cycle G1008	0	Save
	010362	M code corresponding to user canned cycle G1009	0	Save
	010363	M code corresponding to user canned cycle G1010	0	Save
	010364	M code corresponding to user canned cycle G1011	0	Save
	010365	M code corresponding to user canned cycle G1012	0	Save
	010366	M code corresponding to user canned cycle G1013	0	Save
	010367	M code corresponding to user canned cycle G1014	0	Save
	010368	M code corresponding to user canned cycle G1015	0	Save
	010369	M code corresponding to user canned cycle G1016	0	Save
	010370	M code corresponding to user canned cycle G1017	0	Save
	010371	M code corresponding to user canned cycle G1018	0	Save
	010372	M code corresponding to user canned cycle G1019	0	Save
	010373	M code corresponding to user canned cycle G1020	0	Save



(1) The above can ned cycl e, rota tion /mir rori ng/s cali ng and G91 can not be use d at the

same time.

(2) When using the M command to call a subprogram, it is necessary to add G80 before M99 at the end of the program.

### 18.2.5 Classification of Subprogram



#### Function and Purpose

### **Internal subprogram**

The called program which is in the same file with the main program is referred to as internal subprogram.

### **External subprogram**

The called program is stored separately in another file, which is referred to as external subprogram.

The file name of the external subprogram must start with the letter O.



### **Example**

#### **Example for internal subprogram**

The G code file name is OTEST, and %111 is an internal subprogram, which is in the same file as the main program %1001 and is called by M98 in the main program.

```
%1001; Main program  
G92 X0 Y0 Z50  
G91 G01 Z10 F400  
M98 P111; Call subprogram 111  
G4X1  
M30  
%111; Subprogram  
G01X10Y10Z10  
...  
G80  
M99
```

#### **Example for external subprogram**

The G code file name is OTEST, and the subprogram file name is O123.

Main program	Subprogram 0123
%1001 G92 X0 Y0 Z50 G91 G01 Z10 F400 M98 P123; Call subprogram 0123 G4X1 M30	%1234; G01X10Y10Z10 ... G80 M99

### **Canned cycle**

There are two types of canned cycles. One is a general canned cycle, which is mainly used in turning, milling, drilling, etc., and the other is a user canned cycle, which is created based on the

special needs of users.

Refer to Chapter 12 for the specific use of the general canned cycle.

User can add subprograms to the file of user canned cycle (USERDEF.CYC) as needed, and use the corresponding G command in the main program. (The correspondence between G command and user canned cycle subprogram number is shown in Chapter 14 and Chapter 15)

Open the user-defined cycle file USERDEF.CYC, index to the following contents, and add them in turn. For example, add user subprogram 1010.

```
%1010  
G01X10Y10F1000  
Z50  
M99
```

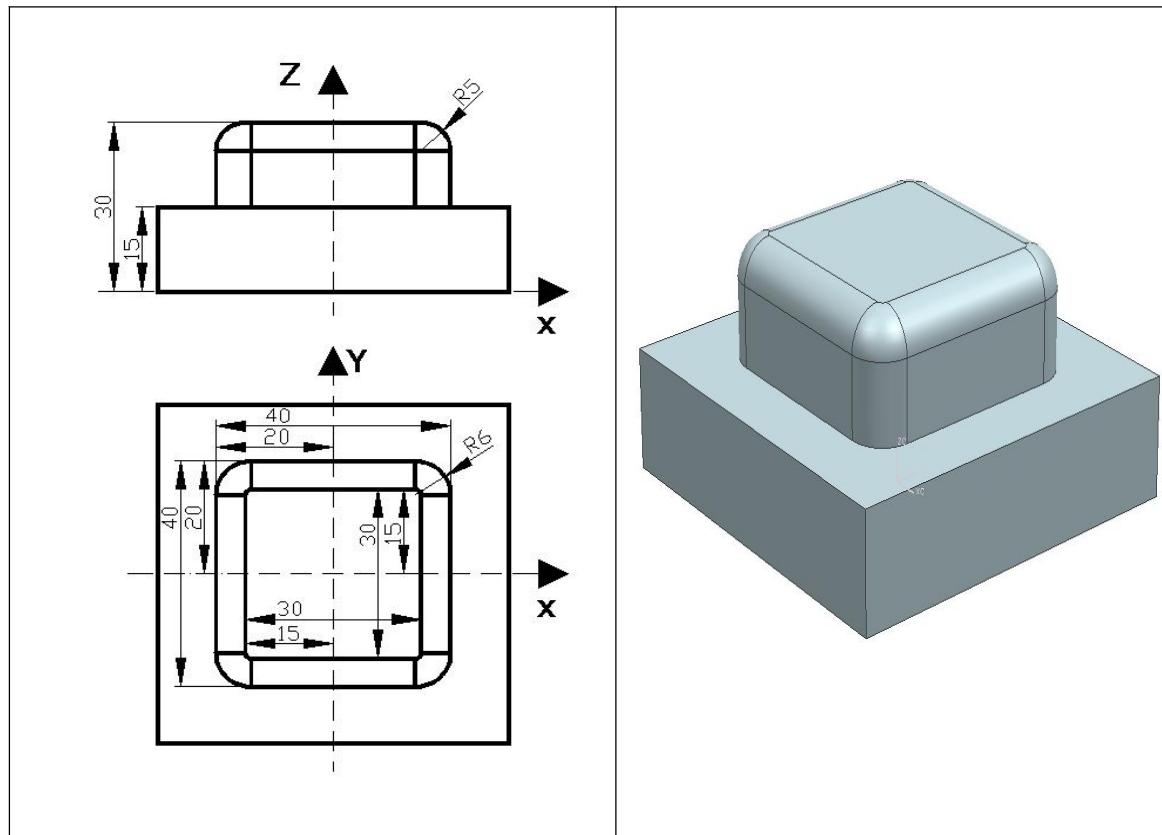
The main program uses command G1010 to call the above program.

### 18.2.6 Application Case for Macro Program



#### Application example

As shown in the figure, use a ball-end milling cutter to process the R5 fillet surface.



%0001

(The tool position point is the ball center)

G92 X-30 Y-30 Z25

```

#0=5          (Fillet radius)
#1=4          (Radius of ball-end cutter)
#2=180        (The initial value of the step angle γ. Unit: Degree)
WHILE #2 GT 90
G01 Z[25+[#0+#1]*SIN[#2*PI/180]]    (Calculate Z axis height)
#3=ABS[[#0+#1]*COS[#2*PI/180]]-#0  (Calculate radius offset)
G10 L12 P3 R[#3]
G01 G41 X-20 D3
Y14
G02 X-14 Y20 R6
G01 X14
G02 X20 Y14 R6
G01 Y-14
G02 X14 Y-20 R6
G01 X-14
G02 X-20 Y-14 R6
G01Y30
G01 X-30
G40 Y-30
#2=#2-10
ENDW
M30

```

### 18.3 Manual Subprogram Call



#### Function and Purpose

In JOG mode, users can customize the buttons on the MCP panel, set the G register to 1 by the button, and call the related supprograms, thereby realizing some more complex functions, such as tool change, spindle C/S switching, etc.

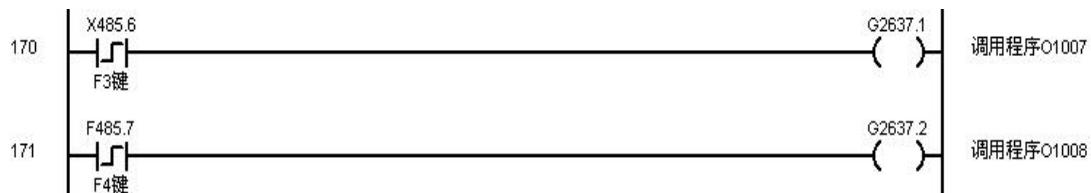
The correspondence of G register points to subprograms is shown in the following table

G register point	Canned cycle subprogram
G2637.1	Call canned cycle subprogram O1007
G2637.2	Call canned cycle subprogram O1008
G2637.3	Call canned cycle subprogram O1009
G2637.4	Call canned cycle subprogram O1010
G2637.5	Call canned cycle subprogram O1011
G2637.6	Call canned cycle subprogram O1012
G2637.7	Call canned cycle subprogram O1013
G2637.8	Call canned cycle subprogram O1014
G2637.9	Call canned cycle subprogram O1015
G2637.10	Call canned cycle subprogram O1016
G2637.11	Call canned cycle subprogram O1017
G2637.12	Call canned cycle subprogram O1018
G2637.13	Call canned cycle subprogram O1019
G2637.14	Call canned cycle subprogram O1020
G2637.15	Call canned cycle subprogram O1021
F2637.0	Status bit: subprogram is running in JOG mode



#### Description

(1) In PLC, the program can be created as shown below (users can customize the buttons based on the actual situation), the G command signal can be output, and the corresponding subprogram can be called.



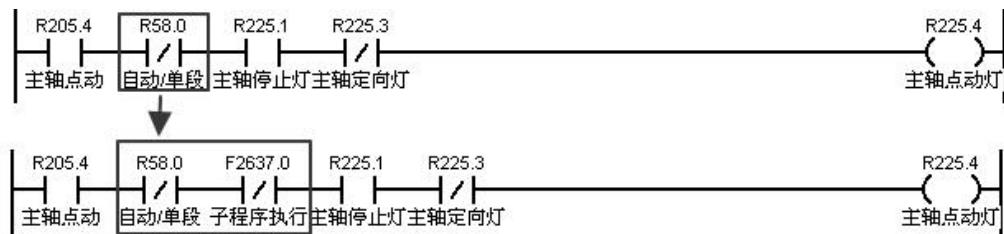
(2) In JOG mode, call the corresponding subprogram by clicking the button. Click the F3 button as shown in the figure above to call O1007 subprogram.



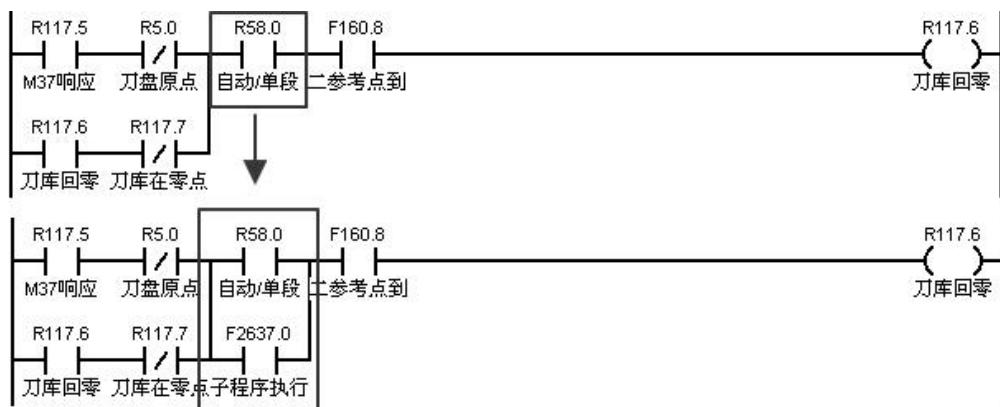
### Note

- (1) During the execution of the program, F2637.0 is always 1, and the buttons on the panel are in the shielding state except for the reset and emergency stop buttons, and the clicks are invalid; when the corresponding G register signal (e.g. G2637.1) is 0, F2637.0 is 0 after the subprogram is executed.
- (2) Currently, subprograms O1007 to O1021 must be placed in the file USERDEF.CYC. The subprogram corresponding to the O1007 program starts with %1007, and O1008 corresponds to %1008, and so on. In the line before M99 at the end of each subprogram, G80 must be added to clear the canned cycle mode.
- (3) When the subprogram is called manually, the buttons on the MCP panel should be in the shielding state except for emergency stop button, but for the PLC output control buttons (such as spindle CW, spindle CCW, cooling, etc.), PLC needs to be changed to shield these buttons.

For example, spindle CW shielding function key:



For the M command that is only executed in the auto/single-block mode, the normally open point of F2637.0 should be connected in parallel in the program, as shown in the figure below, to ensure that the M command can be executed normally during calling subprogram in JOG mode.



# 19 High-speed High-Precision Function

## 19.1 High Speed High Precision Parameter Setting



### Function and Purpose

In contour machining, for the purpose of good machining quality, in addition to the good mechanical precision, the high-speed program processing and high-speed high-precision functions are needed.



### Description

For the actual contour machining, the part machining process can be divided into roughing, semi-finishign, finishing. The breakup can be got as following based on the actual machining process and machining quality.

Machining requirement	Feature
High efficiency	Focus on machining time and improvement of free curve machining speed, without high requirements on workpiece size precision. Generally for roughing or intermediate machining process
Balance efficiency and precision	Neither excellent machining time nor good precision are required, but both of them need to be controlled within a certain range
High precision	Focus on workpiece size precision, with high requirement on surface quality. Machining efficiency is not required. Generally for finishing



### Command Format

G05.1 P\_ (E\_K\_) ; Enable high-speed high-precision

Parameter	Meaning
P0	Use the default parameter group in channel
P1-9	There are 9 levels to specify the 9 levels on high-speed high-precision setting interface
E	To reset “smoothing path deviation” with G code. This command can be output by post-processing of CAM software. When this value is inconsistent with the parameter on interface, refer to the set value.

	For example, E0.01 indicates that “smoothing path deviation” is reset to 0.01 in G code.
K	To reset “smoothing tool axis vector tolerance” in G code. This command can be output by post-processing of CAM software. When this value is inconsistent with the parameter on interface, refer to the set value. For example, K0.15 indicates that “smoothing tool axis vector tolerance” is reset to 0.15 degrees in G code.



### Precision level parameter recommendation in different machining

Command	Meaning
G05.1 P0	Disable high-speed high-precision
G05.1 P1-P2	Roughing
G05.1 P3-P4	Semi-finishing
G05.1 P5-P9	Finishing

**Example**

G01 G90 G54	
G05.1 P5 E0.003 K0.015	Enable high-speed high-precision function, select level 5 parameter, smoothing path deviation is 0.003mm, smoothing tool axis vector tolerance is 0.015°
G43.4 H1	Enable RTCP, position specification mode. Call tool 1 length compensation
G94.6 P0.1	Enable 5-axis constant feed function. Rotary axis travel is 10% of total travel
.....	.....
G49	Disable RTCP function
M30	Program ends